

The minitoc package*

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

9th January 2007

*This document corresponds to minitoc v51, dated 2007/01/09.

Summary

Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
About this document	19
I User's Manual	21
1 The minitoc package	23
2 Frequently Asked Questions	53
3 Memento	77
4 Examples of documents	86
5 Messages	141
6 Jargon	191
7 Installation	222
8 Postface	227
Acknowledgments	235
II Implementation	237
9 Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code>	239
10 Commented code of <code>mtcoff</code>	413
11 Commented code of <code>mtcmess</code>	427
12 Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class	428

<i>SUMMARY</i>	3
13 The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files	430
III Complements	522
Bibliography	524
Changes History	546
Index	576

Table of Contents

Summary	2
Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	16
List of Tables	17
About this document	19
I User's Manual	21
1 The minitoc package	23
1.1 Introduction	24
1.1.1 Important restrictions	25
1.1.2 Version	25
1.2 License	25
1.3 Using the minitoc package	26
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	26
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	26
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	28
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	32
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	33
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.7 Position of the titles	38
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	38
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	38
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	38
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles	39
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	39
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	39
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	40
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	41

1.4.12	Languages for the titles	41
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	42
1.5	Special Features	44
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	44
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	44
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	45
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	46
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	46
1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	47
1.6	The notoccite option	49
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	49
1.8	The hints option	49
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	51
1.10	Why several L ^A T _E X runs are required ?	52
1.11	The mtcoff package	52
2	Frequently Asked Questions	53
2.0	Introduction	54
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	54
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	55
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error	55
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	55
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	56
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	56
2.7	Supported document classes	56
2.8	Compatibility with L ^A T _E X versions	56
2.9	Other mini-tables	57
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	57
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	58
2.12	Incompatibility with L ^A T _E X2.09	58
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	59
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	59
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	59
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	59
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	59
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	60
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	60
2.20	Use with the appendix package	60
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	61
2.22	Use with the memoir class	62
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	63
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	63
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	63
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	67
2.27	Use with the abstract package	67
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	67
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	67

2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands	68
2.31	Use with packages for captions	69
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	69
2.33	Use with the varsects package	69
2.34	Initial font settings	69
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	71
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package	71
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package	71
2.38	Use with the fncychap package	72
2.39	Use with the quotchap package	72
2.40	Use with the romannum package	72
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package	72
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package	72
2.43	Use with the captcont package	73
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before or after parttofs, partlofs, and partlots titles	73
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable	74
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages	74
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package	76
3	Memento	77
4	Examples of documents	86
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	87
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	88
4.3	The mtc-add.tex document file	89
4.4	The mtc-ads.tex document file	94
4.5	The mtc-amm.tex document file	100
4.6	The mtc-art.tex document file	100
4.7	The mtc-bk.tex document file	106
4.8	The mtc-bo.tex document file	112
4.9	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	117
4.10	The mtc-cri.tex document file	118
4.11	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	119
4.12	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	120
4.13	The mtc-hia.tex document file	121
4.14	The mtc-hir.tex document file	122
4.15	The mtc-hop.tex document file	123
4.16	The mtc-liv.tex document file	124
4.17	The mtc-mem.tex document file	128
4.18	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	129
4.19	The mtc-mu.tex document file	130
4.20	The mtc-sbf.tex document file	132
4.21	The mtc-scr.tex document file	134
4.22	The mtc-syn.tex document file	135
4.23	The mtc-tbi.tex document file	136
4.24	The mtc-tlc.tex document file	138
4.25	The mtc-tsf.tex document file	138
5	Messages	141
5.1	Introduction	141

5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	143
5.2.1	Informative messages	143
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	151
5.2.2	Warning messages	154
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	159
5.2.3	Error messages	175
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	188
5.3.1	Warning messages	188
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	190
6	Jargon	191
7	Installation	222
8	Postface	227
8.1	The origins	228
8.2	New design in 1993	228
8.3	Developments in 1994	228
8.4	No developments in 1995	229
8.5	Developments en 1996	229
8.6	Developments in 1997	229
8.7	Developments in 1998	229
8.8	Developments in 1999	229
8.9	Developments in 2000	230
8.10	Developments in 2001	230
8.11	Developments in 2002	230
8.12	Developments in 2003	230
8.13	Developments in 2004	231
8.14	Developments in 2005	231
8.15	Developments in 2006	233
8.16	Developments in 2007	234
	Acknowledgments	235
II	Implementation	237
9	Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code>	239
9.1	Introduction	242
9.2	Identification code	243
9.3	A file descriptor to write	243
9.4	Indentation and skip	243
9.5	Tests and flags	244
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	244
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	245
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	245
9.5.4	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands	246
9.5.5	Flags to check if some commands are used	247
9.5.6	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	248
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	249

9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	249
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	249
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	250
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	250
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	250
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	250
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	253
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	253
9.10	Is the memoir class loaded ?	253
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	254
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters	255
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	256
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	256
9.15	Section level macros	257
9.16	Corrections for numbering	257
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	257
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	258
9.19	Chapter level macros	258
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	259
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	259
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	259
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	260
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	261
9.25	A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	262
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	262
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	265
9.28	Fake tables of contents	267
9.29	Depth counters for <code>minilofs</code> and <code>minilots</code>	268
9.30	Chapter level commands	268
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	268
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	270
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	270
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	271
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	271
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	272
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	275
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	278
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	281
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	282
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	282
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	283

9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	284
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	287
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	290
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	291
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	293
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	293
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	296
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	297
9.45	Part level commands	297
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	298
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	299
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	301
9.49	The part level mini-tables : <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code>	301
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	301
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	304
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	307
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	310
9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	310
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	311
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	313
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	317
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	319
9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	322
9.54	Section-level commands	322
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	323
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	323
9.57	The <code>stc@verse</code> environment	324
9.58	The <code>\secttoc</code> , <code>\sectlof</code> , and <code>\sectlot</code> commands	324
9.58.1	The <code>\secttoc</code> command	324
9.58.2	The <code>\sectlof</code> command	327
9.58.3	The <code>\sectlot</code> command	329
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	332
9.60	Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued)	332
9.61	The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings	334
9.62	End of section-level commands	343
9.63	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command	344
9.64	Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands	344
9.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	345
9.66	The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	346
9.66.1	Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	346
9.66.2	The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command	347
9.66.3	The <code>\mtcsettitlefont</code> command	352
9.66.4	The <code>\mtcsettitle</code> command	353
9.66.5	The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command	354
9.66.6	The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command	359
9.66.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	361
9.66.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	363
9.66.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	366
9.67	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	367

9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	369
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	371
9.70	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	372
9.71	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	372
9.72	The “coffee breaks”	373
9.73	Initialization of counters	374
9.74	Declarations for simple options	374
9.74.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	374
9.74.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	374
9.74.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	374
9.74.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	375
9.74.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	375
9.75	The <code>insection</code> option	375
9.76	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	376
9.77	Language options	376
9.78	The <code>hints</code> option	382
9.78.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begin</code>	382
9.78.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	383
9.78.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	383
9.78.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	383
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	383
9.78.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	384
9.78.1.6	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	384
9.78.1.7	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	385
9.78.1.8	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	386
9.78.1.9	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	386
9.78.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	387
9.78.1.11	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	387
9.78.1.12	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	387
9.78.1.13	Hint about the alteration of the sectioning commands	388
9.78.1.13.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	388
9.78.1.13.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	389
9.78.1.13.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	389
9.78.1.14	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands	390
9.78.2	Final part : <code>\mtc@hints@end</code>	391
9.78.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof|lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	391
9.78.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	391
9.78.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	393
9.78.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	395
9.78.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	398
9.78.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	399
9.78.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	399
9.78.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fnycchap</code> package	399
9.78.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	400
9.78.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	400
9.78.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	400
9.78.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	401
9.78.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alumnsec</code> package	401
9.78.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	401

9.78.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	402
9.78.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	402
9.78.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	402
9.78.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	403
9.78.2.19	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	403
9.78.2.20	Check if obsolete commands have been used	405
9.78.2.21	Check if some hints have been written	406
9.79	Processing of options	406
9.79.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	407
9.79.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	408
9.79.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	408
9.79.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	409
9.79.5	Saving the sectioning commands	409
9.80	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	410
9.81	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	412
10	Commented code of <code>mtcoff</code>	413
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ?	413
10.2	Identification of the package	414
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	414
10.4	Faking simple commands	417
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	417
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	418
10.7	Disabling the font commands	418
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	420
10.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	420
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	420
10.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	421
10.12	Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command	421
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	421
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	422
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	422
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	423
10.17	Caution for some commands	423
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	425
10.19	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	425
10.20	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and <code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> internal commands	425
10.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	425
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	426
10.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	426
11	Commented code of <code>mtcmess</code>	427
12	Patch for the memoir class	428
13	The language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	430
13.1	“Acadian” language : <code>acadian.mld</code>	434
13.2	“Acadien” language : <code>acadien.mld</code>	435
13.3	“Afrikaan” language : <code>afrikaan.mld</code>	435

13.4	“Afrikaans” language : afrikaans.mld	435
13.5	“Albanian” language : albanian.mld	436
13.6	“American” language : american.mld	436
13.7	“Arab” language : arab.mld	436
13.8	“Arab2” language : arab2.mld	437
13.9	“Arabi” language : arabi.mld	437
13.10	“Arabic” language : arabic.mld	438
13.11	“Armenian” language : armenian.mld	438
13.12	“Australian” language : australian.mld	439
13.13	“Austrian” language : austrian.mld	439
13.14	“Bahasa” language : bahasa.mld	439
13.15	“Bahasai” language : bahasai.mld	440
13.16	“Bahasam” language : bahasam.mld	440
13.17	“Bangla” language : bangla.mld	441
13.18	“Basque” language : basque.mld	441
13.19	“Bicig” language : bicig.mld	442
13.20	“Bicig2” language : bicig2.mld	442
13.21	“Bicig3” language : bicig3.mld	443
13.22	“Bithe” language : bithe.mld	444
13.23	“Brazil” language : brazil.mld	444
13.24	“Brazilian” language : brazilian.mld	445
13.25	“Breton” language : breton.mld	445
13.26	“British” language : british.mld	446
13.27	“Bulgarian” language : bulgarian.mld	446
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language : bulgarianb.mld	447
13.29	“Buryat” language : buryat.mld	447
13.30	“Buryat2” language : buryat2.mld	448
13.31	“Canadian” language : canadian.mld	448
13.32	“Canadien” language : canadien.mld	449
13.33	“Castillan” language : castillan.mld	449
13.34	“Castillian” language : castillian.mld	449
13.35	“Catalan” language : catalan.mld	449
13.36	“Chinese1” language : chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo	450
13.37	“Chinese2” language : chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo	450
13.38	“Croatian” language : croatian.mld	451
13.39	“Czech” language : czech.mld	451
13.40	“Danish” language : danish.mld	452
13.41	“Devanagari” language : devanagari.mld	452
13.42	“Dutch” language : dutch.mld	453
13.43	“English” language : english.mld	454
13.44	“English1” language : english1.mld	454
13.45	“English2” language : english2.mld	455
13.46	“Esperant” language : esperant.mld	455
13.47	“Esperanto” language : esperanto.mld	456
13.48	“Estonian” language : estonian.mld	456
13.49	“Ethiopia” language : ethiopia.mld	457
13.50	“Ethiopian” language : ethiopian.mld	458
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language : ethiopian2.mld	458
13.52	“Farsi1” language : farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo	459

13.53	“Farsi2” language : farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo	459
13.54	“Farsi3” language : farsi3.mld	460
13.55	“Finnish” language : finnish.mld	460
13.56	“Finnish2” language : finnish2.mld	461
13.57	“Francais” language : francais.mld	461
13.58	“French” language : french.mld	461
13.59	“French1” language : french1.mld	462
13.60	“French2” language : french2.mld	463
13.61	“Frenchb” language : frenchb.mld	463
13.62	“Frenchle” language : frenchle.mld	464
13.63	“Frenchpro” language : frenchpro.mld	464
13.64	“Galician” language : galician.mld	464
13.65	“German” language : german.mld	465
13.66	“Germanb” language : germanb.mld	465
13.67	“Germanb2” language : germanb2.mld	466
13.68	“Greek” language : greek.mld	466
13.69	“Greek-mono” language : greek-mono.mld	467
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language : greek-polydemo.mld	468
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language : greek-polykatha.mld	469
13.72	“Guarani” language : guarani.mld	470
13.73	“Hangul1” language : hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo	470
13.74	“Hangul2” language : hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo	471
13.75	“Hangul3” language : hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo	471
13.76	“Hangul4” language : hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo	472
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language : hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo	473
13.78	“Hanja1” language : hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo	473
13.79	“Hanja2” language : hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo	474
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language : hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo	474
13.81	“Hebrew” language : hebrew.mld	475
13.82	“Hebrew2” language : hebrew2.mld	475
13.83	“Hindi” language : hindi.mld	476
13.84	“Hindi-modern” language : hindi-modern.mld	476
13.85	“Hungarian” language : hungarian.mld	477
13.86	“Icelandic” language : icelandic.mld	477
13.87	“Indon” language : indon.mld	478
13.88	“Indonesian” language : indonesian.mld	478
13.89	“Interlingua” language : interlingua.mld	478
13.90	“Irish” language : irish.mld	479
13.91	“Italian” language : italian.mld	480
13.92	“Italian2” language : italian2.mld	480
13.93	“Japanese” language : japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	481
13.94	“Japanese2” language : japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	481
13.95	“Japanese3” language : japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	482
13.96	“Japanese4” language : japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	482
13.97	“Japanese5” language : japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo	483
13.98	“Japanese6” language : japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	483
13.99	“Kannada” language : kannada.mld	484
13.100	“Khalka” language : khalkha.mld	484
13.101	“Latin” language : latin.mld	484

13.102 “Latin2” language : latin2.mld	485
13.103 “Latvian” language : latvian.mld	485
13.104 “Letton” language : letton.mld	486
13.105 “Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld	486
13.106 “Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld	487
13.107 “Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld	487
13.108 “Magyar” language : magyar.mld	488
13.109 “Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld	488
13.110 “Magyar3” language : magyar3.mld	489
13.111 “Malay” language : malay.mld	489
13.112 “Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld	490
13.113 “Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	490
13.114 “Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld	491
13.115 “Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld	491
13.116 “Manju” language : manju.mld	492
13.117 “Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld	492
13.118 “Mongol” language : mongol.mld	492
13.119 “Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld	493
13.120 “Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld	493
13.121 “Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld	493
13.122 “Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld	494
13.123 “Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld	494
13.124 “Norsk” language : norsk.mld	495
13.125 “Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld	495
13.126 “Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld	496
13.127 “Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld	496
13.128 “Polish” language : polish.mld	497
13.129 “Polish2” language : polish2.mld	497
13.130 “Polski” language : polski.mld	498
13.131 “Portuges” language : portuges.mld	498
13.132 “Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld	499
13.133 “Romanian” language : romanian.mld	499
13.134 “Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld	500
13.135 “Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld	500
13.136 “Russian” language : russian.mld	501
13.137 “Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld	501
13.138 “Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld	502
13.139 “Russianb” language : russianb.mld	503
13.140 “Russianc” language : russianc.mld	504
13.141 “Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	505
13.142 “Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	505
13.143 “Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	506
13.144 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	506
13.145 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	507
13.146 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	507

13.147 “Samin” language : samin.mld	508
13.148 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld	508
13.149 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld	509
13.150 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld	509
13.151 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld	510
13.152 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld	510
13.153 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld	511
13.154 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld	512
13.155 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld	512
13.156 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld	513
13.157 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld	513
13.158 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld	514
13.159 “Thai” language : thai.mld and thai.mlo	514
13.160 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld	515
13.161 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld	515
13.162 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld	515
13.163 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld	516
13.164 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld	516
13.165 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld	516
13.166 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld	516
13.167 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld	517
13.168 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld	518
13.169 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld	518
13.170 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld	518
13.171 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld	519
13.172 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld	519
13.173 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld	520
13.174 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld	520
13.175 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld	521

III Complements	522
Bibliography	524
Changes History	546
Index	576

List of Figures

1.1	Float barriers	30
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	42
2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	55

List of Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	27
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	28
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	31
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	33
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	34
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	35
1.7	Available languages	36
1.8	Horizontal rules	43
1.9	Page numbers	43
1.10	Features for mini-tables	45
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	51
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	74
3.1	Package options	77
3.2	General commands	78
3.3	Commands : part level	79
3.4	Commands : chapter level	80
3.5	Commands : section level	81
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	82
3.7	Commands for page numbers	82
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	83
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	83
3.10	Adjustment commands	84
3.11	Obsolete commands	84
3.12	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	85
6.1	Category codes	197
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	197
6.3	Standard document classes	198
6.4	Depths for sectioning commands	200
6.5	Various encodings	201
6.6	Most common font encodings	212
6.7	Most common font families	213
6.8	Most common font series	213
6.9	Most common font shapes	213
6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	213
6.11	Author commands for fonts	214

<i>LIST OF TABLES</i>	18
6.12 Some systems derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$	215
7.1 List of files (<code>minitoc.1</code>)	223
7.2 A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the minitoc files	226
9.1 Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions	260

About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 22):
 - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 23, describes the essential commands to use the package;
 - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 53, may help you to solve some specific problems;
 - the “Memento” chapter, page 77, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
 - the “Examples of documents” chapter, page 86, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
 - the “Messages” chapter, page 141, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages;
 - the “Jargon” chapter, page 191, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
 - the “Installation” chapter, page 222, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
 - the “Postface” chapter, page 227, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 238, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 430, may be useful if you are interested by some language.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 523, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [105], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables.

As the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks, these tables should help you to navigate in the document.

Part I

User's Manual

Contents of the First Part

1	The minitoc package	23
2	Frequently Asked Questions	53
3	Memento	77
4	Examples of documents	86
5	Messages	141
6	Jargon	191
7	Installation	222
8	Postface	227
	Acknowledgments	235

Chapter 1

The minitoc package

Contents

1.1	Introduction	24
1.1.1	Important restrictions	25
1.1.2	Version	25
1.2	License	25
1.3	Using the minitoc package	26
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	26
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	26
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	28
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	32
1.4	Typesetting of the mini-tables	33
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.7	Position of the titles	38
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	38
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	38
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	38
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positioning of titles	39
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	39
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	39
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	40
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	41
1.4.12	Languages for the titles	41
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	42
1.5	Special Features	44
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	44
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	44
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	45
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	46
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	46

1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	47
1.6	The notoccite option	49
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	49
1.8	The hints option	49
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	51
1.10	Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?	52
1.11	The mtcoff package	52

Figures

1.1	Float barriers	30
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	42

Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	27
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	28
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	31
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	33
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	34
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	35
1.7	Available languages	36
1.8	Horizontal rules	43
1.9	Page numbers	43
1.10	Features for mini-tables	45
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	51

1.1 Introduction

The `minitoc` package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 227. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”¹) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like `book` or `report`) or sections (classes like `article`²). Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectioning commands (like `letter`). When the document class defines a “part” sectioning level (i.e., classes like `book`, `report` and `article`), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use section level

¹ The `minitoc` package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

² As the standard `proc` class, and the `ltxdoc` and `ltxnews` classes, load the standard `article` class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the `article` class.

tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

1.1.1 Important restrictions



Note: you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectioning level.



Note: the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.

1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #51. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 227) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 546.

1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L^AT_EX Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don't bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and improvements are welcome.

1.3 Using the minitoc package

1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:
`\minitoc`
`\chapter`

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
```

in the preamble of the document³. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*⁴ inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the following page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc* $\langle N \rangle$, where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter⁵. The suffix is *.mlf* $\langle N \rangle$ for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt* $\langle N \rangle$ for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending of the document class.

1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands⁶ `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc* $\langle N \rangle$, *document.mlf* $\langle N \rangle$, and
document.mlt $\langle N \rangle$ files.

³ This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectioning commands; if you modify sectioning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

⁴ “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you ask for details with a high value for `minitocdepth`.

⁵ The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

⁶ The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the `xr` package [89], by David CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dominitoc</code>	
<code>\dominilof</code>	
<code>\dominilot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\chapter{...}</code>	
<code>\minitoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

`\dosecttoc` The commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, and `\dosectlot` (for mini-tables at the section level) and `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, and `\dopartlot` (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.

`\doparttoc`

`\dopartlof` The `\mtcprepare` command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for *all* the mini-tables.

`\dopartlot`

`\mtcprepare`

`\tableofcontents`

`\listoffigures`

`\listoftables`

To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must *imperatively be put before* any command analog to the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables` commands, or their `\fake...` siblings.



It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectioning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption-like` command producing an entry in the list of figure (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot`) commands; else disorder in the mini-tables might result.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{article}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dosecttoc</code>	
<code>\dosectlof</code>	
<code>\dosectlot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\section{...}</code>	
<code>\secttoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add the section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56).

`\usepackage` As floats (figures and tables) could drift⁷ somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `\FloatBarrier` and `\sectlofs` and `\sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:



```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent `\sectlofs` and `\sectlots`. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [10] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier becomes “porous” upwards⁸ (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the following page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.

Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [162] and [189, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section. In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [171] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [159].



If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3 on page 31. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.ptc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf<N>` for partial lists of figures and is `.plt<N>` for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56).



Note: the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a `minilof` for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a `partlof` for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (`secttoc`, `sectlof`, and `sectlot`) and to the part-level mini-tables (`parttoc`, `partlof`, and `partlot`).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command

⁷ A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Donald ARSENEAU

⁸ But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

With the section option	
Command	Action
\section	<hr/> × × × × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × × × × <hr/> <hr/> Allowed Area Float inserted here Allowed Area <hr/> <hr/> × × × × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × × × × <hr/>
With the above option	
Command	Action
\section	<hr/> Allowed Area ↑ Allowed Area Float inserted here Allowed Area <hr/> <hr/> × × × × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × × × × <hr/>
With the below option	
Command	Action
\section	<hr/> × × × × × × × × × × × × <i>Forbidden Area</i> × × × × × × × × × × × × <hr/> <hr/> Allowed Area Float inserted here Allowed Area ↓ Allowed Area <hr/>
With the above and below options	
Command	Action
\section	<hr/> Allowed Area ↓ Allowed Area Float inserted here Allowed Area ↓ Allowed Area <hr/>

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>or:</code>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\doparttoc</code>	
<code>\dopartlof</code>	
<code>\dopartlot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fakelistoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fakelistoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\part{...}</code>	
<code>\parttoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\partlof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\partlot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 28) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `document.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [94, 96] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

`\addstarredpart` **NOTE:** if using `\chapter*` and a
`\addstarredchapter`
`\addstarredsection` `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}`



command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:

```

\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}

```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

`\addcontentsline` `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}`

for example, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```

\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}

```

`\adjustptc` There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):
`\adjustmtc` the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`
`\adjuststc` or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to
increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or
`\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff`
package (see section 1.11 on page 52) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others),
but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic
commands of L^AT_EX, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

```

\adjustptc[n]
\adjustmtc[n]
\adjuststc[n]

```

where n is the increment (default: 1).

Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>

`\decrementptc` There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters:
`\decrementmtc` `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`,
`\decrementstc` and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.
`\incrementptc`
`\incrementmtc`
`\incrementstc`

`\mtcaddpart` A more clever way to solve this problem is to use commands similar to:
`\mtcaddchapter`
`\mtcaddsection`

`\mtcaddchapter[title]`



This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 68 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.

1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over pages.

1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily`
`\mtcSfont` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof
`\mtcSSfont` or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are
`\mtcSSSfont` typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default. For subsections,
`\mtcPfont` subsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`,
`\mtcSPfont` `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the
`\mlffont` use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont`
`\mltfont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont`
`\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. Tables 1.5 on the following page
`\mltSfont` and 1.6 on page 35 summarize these many commands⁹.

⁹ Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables [†]	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slttitle</code> Tables [†]	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).

**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

[†]default for english; changed by the language definition files or `\renewcommand`.

All these fonts use `\rmfamily`, `\upshape`, and `\mdseries` by default.



Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed¹⁰ (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can eventually be adjusted by changing some fonts.

¹⁰This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [142]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [220]), by example, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 67.

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>

*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).
**for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

<code>\mtifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\mtifont</code> (<code>\large\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text strings
<code>\mtctitle</code>	of the titles are defined by <code>\mtctitle</code> , <code>\mlftitle</code> and <code>\mltttitle</code> , which are the strings
<code>\mlftitle</code>	“Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined
<code>\mltttitle</code>	by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	The language definition files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (the suffix <code>.mld</code> means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on the next page and section 1.4.12 on page 41) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

1. afrikaan (afrikaans)	28. dutch	50. greek- polydemo ^{c,e}	81. magyar (hungarian)	108. russian-cca1 ^{c,g,h}
2. albanian	29. english [†] (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	51. greek- polykatha ^{c,e}	82. magyar2	109. russian-lh ^{c,g,h}
3. arab (arabic) ^c		52. guarani ^h	83. magyar3	110. russian- lhcyralt ^{c,g,h}
4. arab2 ^{a,c}		53. hangul1 ^{c,d,g}	84. malayalam-keli ^c	111. russian- lhcyrkoi ^{c,g,h}
5. arabi ^{c,j}		54. hangul2 ^{c,d,g}	85. malayalam- omega ^{c,e,g,h}	112. russian- lhcyrwin ^{c,g,h}
6. armenian ^c	30. english1	55. hangul3 ^{c,d,g}	86. malayalam- rachana ^c	113. samin
7. bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) ^c	31. english2	56. hangul4 ^{c,d,g}	87. malayalam- rachana2 ^c	114. scottish
8. bahasam (malay, meyalu) ^c	32. esperant (esperanto)	57. hangul-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	88. mongol ^c	115. serbian
9. bangla ^c	33. estonian	58. hanja1 ^{c,d,g}	89. ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	116. serbianc ^c
10. basque	34. ethiopia (ethiopian) ^c	59. hanja2 ^{c,d,g}	90. ngermanb2	117. slovak
11. bicig (uighur) ^{c,i}	35. ethiopian2 ^{c,e,h}	60. hanja-u8 ^{c,e,f,g,h}	91. norsk	118. slovene
12. bicig2 (uighur2) ^{c,i}	36. fars1 ^{c,f,g}	61. hebrew ^{c,h}	92. norsk2	119. spanish (castillan, castillian)
13. bicig3 (uighur3) ^{c,i}	37. fars2 ^{c,f,g}	62. hebrew2 ^{c,h}	93. nynorsk	120. spanish2
14. bithe (manju) ^c	38. fars3 ^{c,j}	63. hindi-modern ^c	94. nynorsk2	121. spanish3 ^{e,f}
15. brazil (brazilian)	39. finnish	64. icelandic ^f	95. polish	122. spanish4
16. breton	40. finnish2	65. interlingua	96. polish2 ^{c,e}	123. swedish
17. bulgarian ^c	41. french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	66. irish	97. polski ^c	124. swedish2
18. bulgarianb ^c		67. italian	98. portuguese (portuges)	125. thai ^{c,d,f,g}
19. buryat ^c		68. italian2	99. romanian	126. turkish
20. buryat2 ^c	42. french1	69. japanese ^{c,d,g}	100. romanian2	127. ukrainian (ukraineb) ^{b,c}
21. catalan	43. french2	70. japanese2 ^{c,d,g}	101. romanian3	128. uppersorbian (usorbian)
22. chinese1 ^{c,g}	44. galician	71. japanese3 ^{c,d,g}	102. russian ^{b,c}	129. vietnam (vietnamese) ^{c,d}
23. chinese2 ^{c,g}	45. german (austrian)	72. japanese4 ^{c,d,g}	103. russianb ^{b,c}	130. welsh
24. croatian	46. germanb	73. japanese5 ^{c,d,g}	104. russianc ^{b,c}	131. xalx (khalkha) ^c
25. czech	47. germanb2	74. japanese6 ^{c,d,g}	105. russian2m ^{c,e}	132. xalx2 ^c
26. danish	48. greek ^c	75. kannada ^c	106. russian2o ^{c,e}	133. xalx3 ^c
27. devanagari (hindi) ^c	49. greek-mono ^{c,e}	76. latin	107. russian-cca ^{c,g,h}	
		77. latin2		
		78. latvian (letton) ^e		
		79. lithuanian		
		80. lowersorbian (lsorbian)		

The languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

[†] The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.

^a The `arab(ic)` and `arab2` languages require the use of the `ArabTeX` package [154, 155] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

^b The russian language is not yet supported by the `babel` system [38, 39], but `russianb` [160] is supported if you use `babel-3.6` or a higher version; `russianc` is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

^c Some languages may require specific fonts.

^d Requires the CJK package [167, 168].

^e Requires `Lambda` (Λ), the version of `LATEX` for Omega (Ω).

^f Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

^g Uses also a .mlo file.

^h Requires a specific input encoding.

ⁱ The `bicig` language is also known as `uighur`.

^j The `arabi` and `fars3` languages require the use of the `Arabi` package [135].

1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as
`\ptcCfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning
`\ptcSfont` of a parttoc, partlof or partlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.
`\ptcSSfont` Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by
`\ptcSSSfont` default. Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily`
`\ptcPfont` by default. For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands
`\ptcSPfont` `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default,
`\plffont` `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Partial lists of figures and tables
`\pltfont` are typeset in the fonts `\plffont` and `\pltfont`, which are `\normalsize\rmfamily` by
`\plfSfont` default. There are also `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.
`\pltSfont`

1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

`\ptifont` Titles are typeset in the `\ptifont` (`\LARGE\bfseries` by default) font and the text
`\ptctitle` strings of the titles are defined by `\ptctitle`, `\plftitle` and `\plttitle`, which are the
`\plftitle` strings “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title
`\plttitle` commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other
`\mtcsettitle` than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and many
`\mtcselectlanguage` others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the preceding page) are available. Read also
section 1.4.12 on page 41. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language
(see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the
`\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as
`\stcSSfont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning
`\stcSSSfont` of a secttoc, sectlof or sectlot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.
`\stcPfont` Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries`
`\stcPSfont` by default. Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is
`\slffont` `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands
`\sltfont` `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you
`\slfSfont` want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts
`\sltSfont` `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There
are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text
`\stctitle` strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\slttitle`, which are
`\slftitle`
`\slttitle`
`\mtcsettitle`
`\mtcselectlanguage`

the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsettitle` for languages other than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on page 36 and explained in section 1.4.12 on page 41) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

1.4.7 Position of the titles

1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

`\doparttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof` and `\dopartlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
`\parttoc` The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one parttoc (or partlof or partlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\parttoc` (or `\partlof` or `\partlot`).

1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

`\dominitoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for “empty” (“no” title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\minitoc` (or `\minilof` or `\minilot`).

1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

`\dosecttoc` By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof` and `\dosectlot` accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
`\secttoc` The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command `\secttoc` (or `\sectlof` or `\sectlot`).

1.4.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following
`\dopartlof` preparation commands:
`\dopartlot`
`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,
`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,
`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,
`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`
`\dosectlof`
`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positioning of the title: [l] for left (default), [c]
`\mtcprepare` for center, [r] for right, [e] or [n] for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables
(for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:
`\partlof`
`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,
`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,
`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`
`\minilot`
`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positioning only for the
`\sectlof` title of the current mini-table.
`\sectlot`

1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse`
`\tightmtctrue` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight)
`\tightmtcfalse` or more (loose) space between contents lines.

But with the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set `\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends of the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option, `parskip` option and variants).

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight`
`\ktightmtctrue` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the
`\ktightmtcfalse` default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:
`\mtcsetttitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlofs`) with the given font commands.

1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.

1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

1.4.12 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [38, 39] of Johannes BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [154, 155], `Arabi` [135], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [101], `BangTeX` (bangla) [202], `GervanTeX` (spanish) [30]. `Devanāgarī` for `TeX` [204], `ethiop` [29], `guarani` [32], `malayalam` [3] and `omal` [4], `MonTeX` (mongol) [97, 100], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [167, 168], `PLaTeX` [199, 247] (polish), `SLaTeX` [181] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` [109] (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam — latvian` (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* (Λ), i.e., the *Omega* (Ω) version of `LATeX`, (see [150]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome. See table 1.7 on page 36.



But for some oriental languages¹¹, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file¹², not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of `minitoc` package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.

¹¹Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

¹²The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

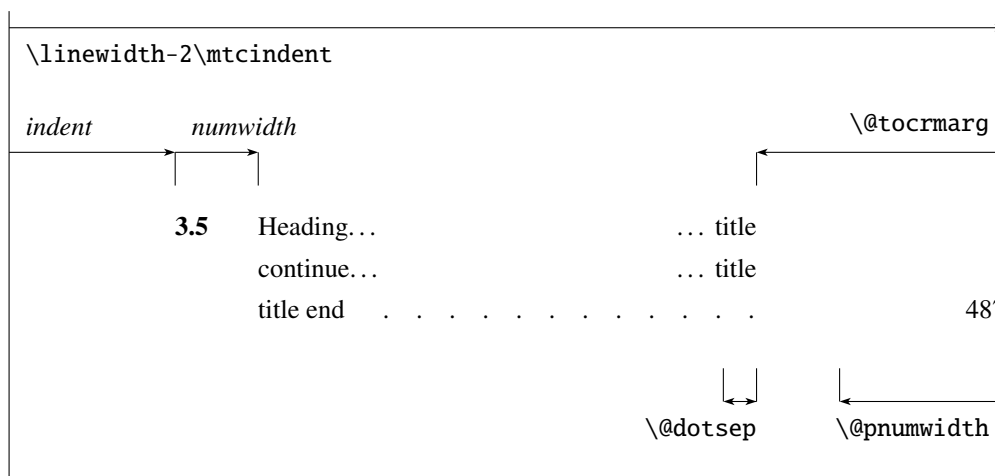


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

1.4.13 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 (this figure is adapted from [250]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but \LaTeX commands, created by $\backslash\text{newcommand}$, modifiable via $\backslash\text{renewcommand}$).

- $\backslash\text{@dotsep}$, which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- $\backslash\text{@pnumwidth}$, is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a \LaTeX command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- $\backslash\text{@tocrmarg}$, is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than $\backslash\text{@pnumwidth}$, and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

$\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}$ As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on specific mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the $\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}$ command:

$$\backslash\text{mtcsetformat}\{mini\text{-table}\}\{parameter\}\{value\}$$

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
rules in		no rules in		book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	N	N	Y
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	N	N	Y
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	N	N	Y
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	Y	Y	(NA)
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	(NA)	(NA)	Y
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	(NA)	(NA)	Y

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

`\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long.

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2 on the preceding page).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

1.5 Special Features

1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 on the page before are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms¹³:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.13 on page 42.

¹³0 and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlof	<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlot	<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
minitoc	<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before|after|pagestyle}{command}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a parttoc (or a partlof or a partlot), in a book- or report-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10, whose meaning is obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: `parttoc...` `sectlot`. *keyword* is one of the followings: `before`, `after` or `pagestyle`. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles¹⁴



The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}`, because in document classes defining the `\chapter` command, the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages. If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour comes from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the `empty` page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short example¹⁵:

```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
  {\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{thispagestyle}%
  {\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
  {\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each `parttoc`, then we set the `empty` page style for the first page of the `parttocs`, the `myheadings` page style for the following pages of the `parttocs`, and set `headings` page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

¹⁴This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [19], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the `minitoc` package.

¹⁵This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

1.5.4.1 Before version #23 (1994/11/08)

`\firstpartis` To make the minitoc package work with such documents, you must insert the command:
`\firstchapteris`
`\firstsectionis`

```
\firstchapteris{<N>}
```

before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands. $\langle N \rangle$ is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a

```
\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}
```

command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis` commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

1.5.4.2 Since version #23 (1994/11/08)

These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

1.5.5 Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index

If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the `tocbibind` package [253] by Peter R. WILSON (this package is available from the CTAN archives).

`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the `.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scartcl` KOMA-Script classes [147, 195] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`, `bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxTOTOC`). The solutions are the same ones.

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the involved
`\tableofcontents` commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.
`\listoffigures`
`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography` command.

`\printindex` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just after the `\printglossary` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixglossary      \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
                    \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
                    \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



`\printindex` For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printindex` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixindex      \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
                  \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
                  \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.



And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc(N)` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.3 on page 89) and `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 94) files distributed with `minitoc`. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.

1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [9] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run \TeX using the `unsorted` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`¹⁶. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the \TeX run. Under Unix or Linux, you can use something like:

```
cat document.maf | \tool{xargs} -i -t \rm {}
```

1.8 The hints option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file.



Your advice about this option will be welcome. This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:

- `\part` • Alteration of some of the following commands¹⁷: `\part`, `\@part`, `\@spart`, `\chapter`, `\@chapter`, `\@schapter`, `\section`, `\@sect`, and `\@ssect`. Note that the `hyperref` (see section 2.17 on page 59) package alters these commands at `\begin{document}`, hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the `hyperref` must be loaded *before* minitoc.
- `\@chapter` • Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: `amsbook` (class), `memoir` (class), `appendix`, `placeins` (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), `scrbook` (class), `scrreprt` (class), `scartcl` (class), `tocbibind`, and `tocloft`.
- `\@schapter`
- `\section`
- `\@sect`
- `\@ssect`

¹⁶This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

¹⁷The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of \TeX , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

- Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are incompatible with the `minitoc` package: `amsart` (class), `amsproc` (class), `alphanum`, `jura` (class), `titlesec`, and `titletoc`¹⁸.
- | | |
|--|---|
| <code>\parttoc</code>
<code>\doparttoc</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>
<code>\dosectlot</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code>, ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code>; or the reverse. |
| <code>\tableofcontents</code>
<code>\listoftables</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code>, ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code>. |
| <code>\sectlof</code>
<code>\sectlot</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option). |
- If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the `shorttext` package option, see section 1.9 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the `hints` package option displays a warning.
- | | |
|---|---|
| <code>abstract</code>
<code>\mtcaddchapter</code>
<code>\mtcaddsection</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the <code>abstract</code> package [251] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code>, else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your <code>abstract</code> environment. |
|---|---|
- If the `sectsty` package [182] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.
 - If the `varsects` package [228] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `fncychap` package [170] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `hangcaption` package [138] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `quotchap` package [232] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `romannum` package [259] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `sfheaders` package [172] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `alnumsec` package [152] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
 - If the `captcont` package [95] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.

¹⁸The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard L^AT_EX way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally incompatible, and it is very sad.

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$	.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$	.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$	.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$	.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$	.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$	.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$	.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$	.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$	.V $\langle N \rangle$

- If one of the caption [224], caption2¹⁹ [223], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [255] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [131] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.
- If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 28).

`\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global hint as reminder.

- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

1.9 Usage with MS-DOS



Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The `.mtc $\langle N \rangle$` extensions will become `.M $\langle N \rangle$` , where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute chapter number. The extensions `.mlf $\langle N \rangle$` and `.mlt $\langle N \rangle$` become `.F $\langle N \rangle$` and `.T $\langle N \rangle$` . The `.ptc $\langle N \rangle$` extensions become `.P $\langle N \rangle$` , where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute part number. The extensions `.plf $\langle N \rangle$` and `.plt $\langle N \rangle$` become `.G $\langle N \rangle$` and `.U $\langle N \rangle$` . The `.stc $\langle N \rangle$` extensions become `.S $\langle N \rangle$` , where $\langle N \rangle$ is the absolute section number. The extensions `.slf $\langle N \rangle$` and `.slt $\langle N \rangle$` become `.H $\langle N \rangle$` and `.V $\langle N \rangle$` . All these extensions are listed in table 1.11. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 49) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 56.

¹⁹This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.

1.10 Why several L^AT_EX runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first L^AT_EX run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third L^AT_EX run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 55).

1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the *document.log* file. At least two L^AT_EX runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the *.aux*, *.toc*, *.lof*, and *.lot* files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

Chapter 2

Frequently Asked Questions

Contents

2.0	Introduction	54
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	54
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	55
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error	55
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	55
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	56
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	56
2.7	Supported document classes	56
2.8	Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions	56
2.9	Other mini-tables	57
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files?	57
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	58
2.12	Incompatibility with L^AT_EX2.09	58
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	59
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	59
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	59
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	59
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	59
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	60
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	60
2.20	Use with the appendix package	60
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	61
2.22	Use with the memoir class	62
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	63
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	63
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	63
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	67
2.27	Use with the abstract package	67
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	67
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	67
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands	68
2.31	Use with packages for captions	69
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir	69

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	69
2.34	Initial font settings	69
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	71
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanum</code> package	71
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	71
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	72
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	72
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	72
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	72
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	72
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	73
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before or after <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	73
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	74
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	74
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	76

Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	55
-----	---	----

Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	74
-----	---	----

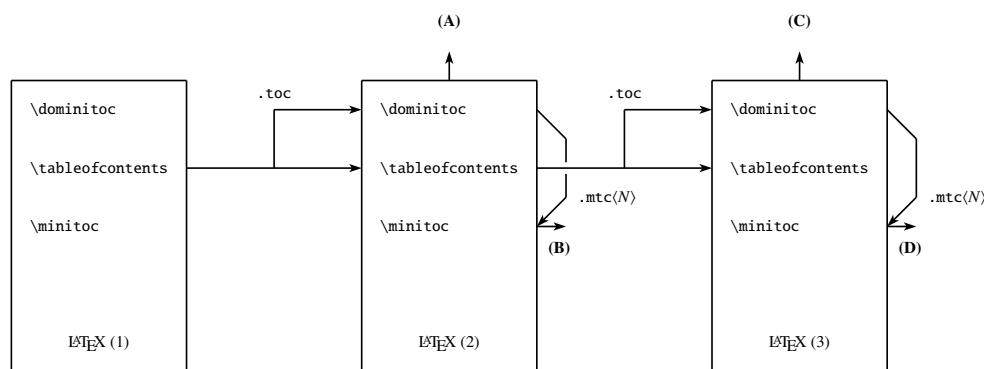
2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 51, please upgrade to version #51. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 49), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example reproducing the problem).

2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L^AT_EX manual [156]. The `needspace` package [249] may also be useful.



(A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.

(B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.

(C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.

(D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.13 on page 42.

2.3 Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error

Use `\protect\linebreak`.

2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

If you reorder chapters, havoc follows... mini-tables going in wrong chapters.

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute \LaTeX at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1. Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute \LaTeX at least three times.

2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

2.6 Playing with the chapter number



Do not cheat with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the `minitoc` package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index”, section 1.5.5 on page 47.

The same remark applies to the `part` and `section` counters.

2.7 Supported document classes

The `minitoc` package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article”. There are “part-tocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter”, which have not the classical sectioning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectioning commands with other names are not supported¹. See also section 2.24 on page 63.

2.8 Compatibility with L^AT_EX versions

Some users have failed to make `minitoc` to work. They got a message like:

¹ This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectioning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The `minitoc` package relies on the names of the standard sectioning commands and on the syntax of these commands.


```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have `minilof`, `minilot` and `minibbl`. First, “`minibbl`” is another problem, strongly related to the \LaTeX 's dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [12], `bibunits` [121], `multibib` [122], `bibtopic` [16], and `splitbib` [179] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic `minilofs` and `minilots`. `Minibbls` are not the aim of this package².

2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all `minitocs`, one for all `minilofs`, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 28) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the \LaTeX run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and `siblings`) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 49.

² See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=multibib>

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the \LaTeX run. If you run \LaTeX via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 51 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [22] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots` for the part level in `book|report`-like and `article`-like documents, `secttocs`, `sectlofs` and `sectlots` for the section level in `article`-like documents. Note that you can not have `minitocs` features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

2.12 Incompatibility with \LaTeX 2.09

`\protect` The more recent version of \LaTeX 2 ϵ adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,
`\contentsline` `.lof` and `.lot` files. The version #17 of `minitoc` attempts to be compatible with \LaTeX 2 ϵ and \LaTeX 2.09. This will be the *last* version usable with \LaTeX 2.09. Versions #18 and later are \LaTeX 2 ϵ specific, and no more compatible with \LaTeX 2.09, which is completely obsolete.

2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, `minitoc` works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195] (since version #43).

2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.13 on page 42.

2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc



Since version #31, `minitoc` works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [214], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who used the work of Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA. Hence the *minitoc-hyper* package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents. If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the \LaTeX run, then re- \LaTeX the document. There will be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from `minitoc` #30 to `minitoc` #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with `minitoc` #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* `minitoc`. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`.

2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the .aux, .toc, .lof, .lot files of the document, else the first L^AT_EX run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

2.19 A local table of contents for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices} % create a part level subdivision \parttoc % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 63.

2.20 Use with the appendix package

<code>appendices</code> <code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\adjustmtc</code> <code>\adjuststc</code>	<p>If you use the <code>appendix</code> package [252] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with minitocs in the <code>appendices</code> environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening <code>\begin{appendices}</code> hides a <code>\addcontentsline</code> command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of minitocs or secttocs. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a <code>\adjustmtc</code> or <code>\adjuststc</code> command (depending if the appendices are at the chapter or section level) after <i>each</i> <code>\begin{appendices}</code> command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble <i>after</i> the loading of the <code>appendix</code> package:</p>
--	---

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
```

```
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section.

A rather elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [250].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction³, which fortunately can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the `minitocs` in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

³ Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the minitoc section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section [2.22](#).

2.22 Use with the memoir class

The memoir class [[257](#), [258](#)] offers basically the fonctionnalités of the `appendix`, `tocbind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. WILSON), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections [2.20](#) on page [60](#), [1.5.5](#) on page [47](#), and [2.21](#) on the page before respectively). If your version of the memoir class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the memoir class *could be no more compatible* with the minitoc package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the memoir is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the memoir class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsettitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the memoir class (or of the `tocloft` package).

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the memoir class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the memoir/`tocloft` font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsettitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsettitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\slttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

2.24 Compatibility with the \mathcal{AMS} document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter` Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are incompatible with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

`mtchideinmaintoc` It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 60. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```

1 \*mtc - apx
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4 [2007/01/04]
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}
9 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
10 \begin{document}
11 \doparttoc
12 \dominitoc
13 \tableofcontents
14 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
15 \chapter{First}
16 \minitoc
17 First chapter
18 \section{First section}
19 \lipsum[1]
20 \section{Second section}
21 \lipsum[2]
22 \chapter{Second}
23 \minitoc
24 Second
25 \section{First section of second chapter}
26 \lipsum[3]
27 \section{Second section of second chapter}
28 \lipsum[4]
29 \appendix % begins the appendices
30 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
31 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
32 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
33 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the
34 % % appendices in the main TOC, but chapter-level
35 % % entries would be still visible if you use 0
36 % % in place of -1 as optional argument.
37 \chapter{First appendix}
38 \minitoc
39 First appendix
40 \section{First section}
41 \lipsum[5]
42 \section{Second section}
43 \lipsum[6]
44 \chapter{Second appendix}
45 \minitoc
46 Second appendix
47 \section{First section of second appendix}
48 \lipsum[7]
49 \section{Second section of second appendix}
50 \lipsum[8]
51 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding

```



```
52 \end{document}
53 </mtc - apx>
```

Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.



Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):

```
54 (*mtc - hi1)
55 \documentclass{report}
56 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}%
57 [2007/01/04]
58 \usepackage%
59 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
60 \begin{document}
61 \dominilof
62 \dominilot
63 \listoffigures
64 \listoftables
65 \chapter{First}
66 \minilof
67 \minilot
68 \begin{figure}
69 \caption{AAAA1}
70 \end{figure}
71 \begin{figure}
72 \caption{AAAA2}
73 \end{figure}
74 \begin{table}
75 \caption{TAAAA1}
76 \end{table}
77 \begin{table}
78 \caption{TAAAA2}
79 \end{table}
80 \chapter{Second}
81 \minilof
82 \minilot
83 %%-----
```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```
84 \begin{mtchideinmainlof}
85 \begin{mtchideinmainlot}
```

```
86 \begin{figure}
87 \caption{BBBB1}
88 \end{figure}
89 \begin{figure}
90 \caption{BBBB2}
91 \end{figure}
92 \begin{table}
93 \caption{TBBBB1}
94 \end{table}
95 \begin{table}
96 \caption{TBBBB2}
97 \end{table}
98 \chapter{Third}
```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```
99 \end{mtchideinmainlot}
100 \end{mtchideinmainlof}
101 %%-----
102 \minilof
103 \minilot
104 \begin{figure}
105 \caption{CCCC1}
106 \end{figure}
107 \begin{figure}
108 \caption{CCCC2}
109 \end{figure}
110 \begin{table}
111 \caption{TCCCC1}
112 \end{table}
113 \begin{table}
114 \caption{TCCCC2}
115 \end{table}
116 \end{document}
117 </mtc - hi1>
```

But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to

hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):

```

118 (*mtc - hi2)
119 \documentclass{report}
120 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}%
121 [2007/01/04]
122 \usepackage%
123 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
124 \begin{document}
125 \dominilof
126 \dominilot
127 \listoffigures
128 \listoftables
129 \chapter{First}
130 \minilof
131 \minilot
132 \begin{figure}
133 \caption{AAAA1}
134 \end{figure}
135 \begin{figure}
136 \caption{AAAA2}
137 \end{figure}
138 \begin{table}
139 \caption{TAAAA1}
140 \end{table}
141 \begin{table}
142 \caption{TAAAA2}
143 \end{table}
144 \chapter{Second}
145 \minilof
146 \minilot

```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.

```

147 \begin{figure}
148 \mtchideinmainlof % <--
149 \caption{BBBB1}
150 \end{figure}
151 \begin{figure}
152 \caption{BBBB2}

```

```

153 \endmtchideinmainlof % <--
154 \end{figure}
155 \begin{table}
156 \mtchideinmainlot % <--
157 \caption{TBBBB1}
158 \end{table}

```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.

```

159 \begin{table}
160 \caption{TBBBB2}
161 \endmtchideinmainlot % <--
162 \end{table}
163 \chapter{Third}
164 \minilof
165 \minilot
166 \begin{figure}
167 \caption{CCCC1}
168 \end{figure}
169 \begin{figure}
170 \caption{CCCC2}
171 \end{figure}
172 \begin{table}
173 \caption{TCCCC1}
174 \end{table}
175 \begin{table}
176 \caption{TCCCC2}
177 \end{table}
178 \end{document}
179 </mtc - hi2)

```

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

2.26 Defining your own .mld file

`\mtcsettitle` First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via `\renewcommand` or better via `\mtcsettitle`. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via `\mtcselectlanguage`. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the *language* [.mld- .mlo] pairs of language definition files.

2.27 Use with the abstract package

`abstract` If the abstract package [251] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a
`\mtcaddchapter` “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class
`\mtcaddsection` defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option
`\chapter` and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your abstract environment.

2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [182] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.

The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like `\l@part`, `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, etc.

The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the report and book classes) and lower levels, these commands are (book class, `book.cls`) by default:

```
\newcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
```

```
\newcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\newcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
```

which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of `\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard `book`, `report` and `article` classes, the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends of the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 35), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section ... \l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a `@` in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [250] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 61.
- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 39) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 35), or similar.

2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectioning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is necessary to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages.
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectioning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence

```

\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]

```

2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the caption [224], caption2⁴ [223], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [255] (by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [131] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the minitoc and hyperref [214] packages are used in a document of class memoir [257, 258], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of minitoc.

2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the varsects package [228] (by Daniel TAUPIN[†]) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the parttoc as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes⁵:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the minitoc package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each parttoc, partlof or partlot to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like

⁴ This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the caption package.

⁵ The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

`\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the `parttoc`s, `partlofs`, and `partlots`. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.



In the initialization of the `minitoc` package, we have a sequence of commands:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont       % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a `parttoc` (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the `parttoc`s, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

Note that if you say:

```
\def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont}    % (subsections)
\def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont}  % (subsubsections)
\def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont}    % (paragraphs)
\def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont}   % (subparagraphs)
\def\plffont{\ptcfont}     % (figures)
\def\plfSfont{\ptcfont}    % (subfigures)
\def\pltfont{\ptcfont}     % (tables)
\def\pltSfont{\ptcfont}    % (subtables)
```

after loading the `minitoc` package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a `minitoc` font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
  \def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
  \def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
  \def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
  \def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
  \def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
  \def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
  \def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
  \def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttocs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocs and secttocs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [147, 195], compatible with minitoc (`scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scartcl`), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 47. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are incompatible with minitoc.

2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the `babel` package [38, 39], you can automatize the loading of the `.mld` file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%  
  \addto\captionslanguage1{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *language1* is the language name for babel and *language2* the language name for minitoc; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized .mld file, by example).

2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the fncychap package [170] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the quotchap package [232] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.40 Use with the romannum package

If the romannum package [259] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.41 Use with the sfheaders package

If the sfheaders package [172] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.42 Use with the alnumsec package

If the alnumsec package [152] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [95] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

2.44 Vertical space (gap) before or after `parttoc`s, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles



These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the book and report document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttoc`s, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:

```
180 <*mtc - gap>
181 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
182 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}%
183 [2007/01/04]
184 \usepackage{vruler} % to have a vertical graduation to note positions
185 % (by Zhuhan Jiang)
186 \usepackage{txfonts}
187 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
188 \begin{document}
189 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][] % with vruler package
190 \doparttoc
191 \faketableofcontents
192 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
193 \parttoc
194 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
195 \part{Second part}
```

We set large gaps. Note the new position of the `parttoc`.

```
196 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
197 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
198 \parttoc
199 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
200 \part{Third part}
```

We set small gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
201 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
202 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
203 \parttoc
204 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
205 \end{document}
206 </mtc – gap>
```

2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the mini-table. The values should depend of the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
```

```

\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A}
\section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A}
\section{Section B}
\end{document}

```

If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a minitoc without page numbers as I wanted.

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in minitocs). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [250, pages 45-56]; `XXX` is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```

207 (*mtc - tlo)
208 \documentclass[12pt, a4paper]{book}
209 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}%
210 [2007/01/04]

```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```

211 \usepackage{tocloft}
212 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
213 \begin{document}

```

We define the global font for the minitoc entries:

```

214 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
215 \frontmatter
216 \dominitoc
217 \tableofcontents

```

For the section entries in the minitocs, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by using commands from the `tocloft` package:

```

218 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
219 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}

```

```
220 \mainmatter
221 \chapter{Chapter}
222 \section{Section A}
223 \section{Section B}
224 \chapter{Second Chapter}
225 \minitoc
226 \section{Section A}
227 \section{Section B}
228 \end{document}
229 </mtc – tlo>
```

2.47 Use with the hangcaption package

If the `hangcaption` package [138] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

Chapter 3

Memento

Tables

3.1 Package options	77
3.2 General commands	78
3.3 Commands: part level	79
3.4 Commands: chapter level	80
3.5 Commands: section level	81
3.6 Commands for horizontal rules	82
3.7 Commands for page numbers	82
3.8 Commands for mini-tables features	83
3.9 Preparation and insertion commands	83
3.10 Adjustment commands	84
3.11 Obsolete commands	84
3.12 Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	85

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
<code>shorttext</code>	<code>*NO*</code>	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
<code>loose, tight</code>	<code>loose</code>	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
<code>k-loose, k-tight</code>	<code>k-loose</code>	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>dotted, undotted</code>	<code>dotted</code>	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
<code>insection</code>	<code>*NO*</code>	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use <code>sectlofs/sectlots</code> .
<code>notoccite</code>	<code>*NO*</code>	Useful if you have <code>\cite</code> commands in sectioning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
<code>listfiles, nolistfiles</code>	<code>listfiles</code>	Lists the <code>minitoc</code> auxiliary files into <code>document.maf</code> .
<code>hints, nohints</code>	<code>hints</code>	Adds hints in the <code>document.log</code> file. Useful to detect some problems.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 36. Default: `english`.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <code>language.mld</code> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before|after|pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval|pagenumwidth|tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc|partlof|partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc|minilof|minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mlttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\mtcfont`.

Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc|sectlof|sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

** : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{<i>mini-table</i> | *}{on|off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{<i>mini-table</i> | *}{on|off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<hr/>		
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before|after|pagestyle}{commands}</code>		Modifies the features for a mini-table.

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominilof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\minilof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	.....<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument p , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument p has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by n .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by n .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by n .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for index in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main table of contents.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of tables.

Table 3.11: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	N is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	N is the number of the first section.

These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).

Table 3.12: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	50	[251]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	50	[152]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	71	[85]
* C	amsart	<i>AMS</i>	63	[6]
C	amsbook	<i>AMS</i>	63	[6]
* C	amsproc	<i>AMS</i>	63	[6]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	60	[252]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	50	[95]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	51	[224, 225]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	51	[223]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	51	[255]
P	fnycchap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	72	[170]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	76	[138]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	59	[196, 214, 215]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	71	[85]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	51	[131]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	62	[257, 258]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	49	[9]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	29	[10]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	50	[232]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	50	[259]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and screprt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	71	[147, 195]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	67	[182]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	72	[172]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	31	[96]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	31	[94]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	50	[33]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	50	[33]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	47	[253]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	61, 74	[250]
P	varsects	Daniel TAUPIN [†]	50	[228]

* Incompatible with minitoc.

C Class.

P Package.

Chapter 4

Examples of documents

Contents

4.1	The <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> document file	87
4.2	The <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> document file	88
4.3	The <code>mtc-add.tex</code> document file	89
4.4	The <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> document file	94
4.5	The <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> document file	100
4.6	The <code>mtc-art.tex</code> document file	100
4.7	The <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> document file	106
4.8	The <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> document file	112
4.9	The <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> document file	117
4.10	The <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> document file	118
4.11	The <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> document file	119
4.12	The <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> document file	120
4.13	The <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> document file	121
4.14	The <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> document file	122
4.15	The <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> document file	123
4.16	The <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> document file	124
4.17	The <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> document file	128
4.18	The <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> document file	129
4.19	The <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> document file	130
4.20	The <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> document file	132
4.21	The <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> document file	134
4.22	The <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> document file	135
4.23	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	136
4.24	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	138
4.25	The <code>mtc-tsf.tex</code> document file	138

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 64, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 65, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 66, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 73, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 75.

4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [186] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a `minitoc` is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

```

230 <*mtc - 2c>
231 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
232   {report}
233 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}%
234   [2007/01/04]
235 \usepackage{multicol}
236 \usepackage{lipsum}
237 \usepackage%
238   [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc}
239 \usepackage[latin]{babel}
240 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
241 \begin{document}
242 \dominitoc
243 \tableofcontents

```

Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a `minitoc` on one full width column, then the body of the chapter on two columns:

```

244 \chapter{Primum capitulum}
245 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
246 \section{Prima sectio}
247 \lipsum[1-2]
248 \section{Secunda sectio}
249 \lipsum[3-4]
250 \end{multicols}
251 \chapter{Secundum capitulum}
252 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
253 \section{Prima sectio}

```

```

254 \lipsum[5-6]
255 \section{Secunda sectio}
256 \lipsum[7-8]
257 \section{Tertia sectio}
258 \lipsum[9-10]
259 \end{multicols}

```

A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the `minitoc` are in the first column:

```

260 \begin{multicols}{2}
261 \chapter{Tertium capitulum}
262 \minitoc
263 \section{Prima sectio}
264 \lipsum[11-12]
265 \section{Secunda sectio}
266 \lipsum[13-14]
267 \section{Tertia sectio}
268 \lipsum[15-16]
269 \end{multicols}

```

A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the `minitoc` and the chapter body on two columns (the `minitoc` is in the first column):

```

270 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum}
271 \begin{multicols}{2}
272 \minitoc
273 \section{Prima sectio}
274 \lipsum[16-17]
275 \section{Secunda sectio}
276 \lipsum[18-19]
277 \section{Tertia sectio}
278 \lipsum[20-21]
279 \end{multicols}
280 \end{document}
281 </mtc - 2c>

```

4.2 The `mtc-2nd.tex` document file

This document tests the `french2.mld` minitoc language definition file (section 13.60 on page 463) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the `french2` minitoc package language option¹:

```

282 (*mtc - 2nd)
283 %% Test de french2.mld:
284 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
285 %% compilez 3 fois.
286 \documentclass{report}
287 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
288 [2007/01/04]
289 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
290 \usepackage[french]{babel}
291 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
292 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
293 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
294 \usepackage{mypatches}
295 \begin{document}

```

We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (zero, one, three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```

296 \ifmtcsecondpart
297 Il n’y a que 2 parties: seconde.
298 \else
299 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
300 \fi
301 \clearpage

```

The body of the document, with two parts:

```

302 \doparttoc
303 \faketableofcontents
304 \part{P1}
305 \parttoc
306 \chapter{P1C1}
307 \chapter{P1C2}
308 \part{P2}
309 \parttoc
310 \chapter{P2C1}
311 \chapter{P2C2}

```

If you want also a third part, comment out this line and recompile 3 times:

```

312 %% Commentez la ligne suivante puis recompilez 2 ou 3 fois.
313 \end{document}

```

¹ The `franc`, `frnew` and `mypatches` packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.


```
335 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
336 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

```
337 \makeindex
338 \begin{document}
```

We call the mini-table preparation commands:

```
339 \dominitoc
340 \dominilof
341 \dominilot
```

We are using the `tocbibind` package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 47:

```
342 \tableofcontents
343 \mtcaddchapter
344 \listoffigures
345 \mtcaddchapter
346 \listoftables
347 \mtcaddchapter
```

For a chapter, we want a `minitoc`, a `minilof` and a `minilot`:

```
348 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
349 \minitoc
350 \mtcskip
351 \minilof
352 \mtcskip
353 \minilot
```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```
354 \section{First section}
355
356 \begin{figure}[tp]
357 \caption{First figure}
358 \end{figure}
359 \begin{table}[tp]
360 \caption{First table}
361 \end{table}
362
363 \section{Second section}
364 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
365 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
366 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
367 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
368 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
369 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
370 \index{would}\index{yes}%
```

```

371 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
372 But I imagine that he would, yes.}\
373 \hbox{}\hfill
374 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
375 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
376
377 \begin{figure}[tp]
378 \caption{Second figure}
379 \end{figure}
380 \begin{table}
381 \caption{Second table}
382 \end{table}

```

A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

383 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
384 \index{chapter!starred}
385 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
386 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
387 %%\mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
388 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{x}
389 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{x}
390 %%\mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
391 %%\mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
392 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{x}
393 \index{tests}
394
395 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
396 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
397 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
398 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
399 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
400 and at this chapter.
401 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
402 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
403 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
404 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
405 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
406 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
407 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
408 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
409 \index{variations}\index{you}%
410 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
411
412 \chapter{Third chapter}
413 \index{chapter!normal}
414 \minitoc
415 \mtcskip
416 \minilof
417 \mtcskip

```

```

418 \minilot
419 \section{Third section}
420
421 \begin{figure}
422 \caption{Third figure}
423 \end{figure}
424 \begin{table}
425 \caption{Third table}
426 \end{table}
427
428 \section{Fourth section}
429
430 \begin{figure}
431 \caption{Fourth figure}
432 \end{figure}
433 \begin{table}
434 \caption{Fourth table}
435 \end{table}

```

As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

```

436 \nocite*
437 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
438 \bibliographystyle{plain}
439 \bibliography{mtc-add}
440 \adjustmtc

```

As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

```

441 \printindex
442 %%\mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
443 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
444 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
445 \mtcaddchapter
446 %%
447
448 \appendix
449 \chapter{App.~1}
450 \index{chapter!appendix}
451 \minitoc
452 \mtcskip
453 \minilof
454 \mtcskip
455 \minilot
456 \section{Fifth section}
457
458 \begin{figure}
459 \caption{Fifth figure}
460 \end{figure}

```

```

461 \begin{table}
462 \caption{Fifth table}
463 \end{table}
464
465 \section{Sixth section}
466
467 \begin{figure}
468 \caption{Sixth figure}
469 \end{figure}
470 \begin{table}
471 \caption{Sixth table}
472 \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

473 \chapter{App.~2}
474 \index{chapter!appendix}
475 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
476 \minitoc
477 \mtcskip
478 \minilof
479 \mtcskip
480 \minilot
481 \section{Seventh section}
482 \begin{figure}
483 \caption{Seventh figure}
484 \end{figure}
485 \begin{figure}
486 \caption{Eighth figure}
487 \end{figure}
488
489 \section{Eighth section}
490
491 \begin{figure}
492 \caption{Ninth figure}
493 \end{figure}
494 \begin{figure}
495 \caption{Eleventh figure}
496 \end{figure}
497
498 \end{document}
499 </mtc - add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [107]:

```

500 <*mtc - addbib>
501 @MISC{minitoc,
502 TITLE="The {\texttt{minitoc}} package",
503 AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
504 ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",

```

```

505     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
506     MONTH=jan,
507     YEAR=2007}
508

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [106]:

```

509     @MISC{fminitoc,
510         TITLE="Le paquetage {\texttt{minitoc}}",
511         AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
512         ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
513         NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
514         MONTH=jan,
515         YEAR=2007}
516

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [105]:

```

517     @MISC{shorttoc,
518         TITLE="The {\texttt{shorttoc}} package",
519         AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
520         ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
521         NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx}}",
522         MONTH=aug,
523         YEAR=2002}
524

```

- a novel [15] from which a short citation is taken:

```

525     @BOOK{dark,
526         TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",
527         AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
528         PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
529         ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
530         YEAR=1993}
531     </mtc – addbib>

```

4.4 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocibind package [253] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

532 <*mtc – ads>
533 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
534 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
535     [2007/01/04]
536 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
537 \makeatletter
538 \newif\ifscan@allowed
539 \scan@allowedtrue

```

```

540 \makeatother
541 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
542 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
543         \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
544 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
545 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
546 \makeindex

```

The preparation commands:

```

547 \begin{document}
548 \doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot
549 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot

```

The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the `tocbibind` package, we must add some `\mtcaddsection` commands:

```

550 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
551 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
552 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
553 \tableofcontents
554 \mtcaddsection
555 \listoffigures
556 \mtcaddsection
557 \listoftables
558 \mtcaddsection

```

The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.

```

559 \part{Part~1}
560 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
561
562 \section{First section}
563 \index{section!normal}
564 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
565 \subsection{First subsection}
566
567 \begin{figure}[tp]
568 \caption{First figure}
569 \end{figure}
570 \begin{table}[tp]
571 \caption{First table}
572 \end{table}
573
574 \subsection{Second subsection}
575 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\!
576 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
577 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
578 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
579 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
580 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%

```

```

581 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
582 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
583 But I imagine that he would, yes.\\
584 \hbox{\hfill Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}}%
585 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}%
586 \index{background}
587 \begin{figure}[tp]
588 \caption{Second figure}
589 \end{figure}
590 \begin{table}
591 \caption{Second table}
592 \end{table}

```

Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several solutions (good or bad).

```

593 \section*{Second section, starred}
594 \index{section!starred}
595 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
596 \mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
597 %%\mtcaddsection[] % BAD
598 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
599 %%\mtcaddsection % BAD
600 %%%
601 \index{tests}
602
603 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
604 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
605 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
606 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
607 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
608 and at this section.
609 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
610 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
611 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
612 \index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
613 \index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
614 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
615 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
616 \index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
617 \index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
618 \index{variations}\index{you}%
619 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
620
621 \section{Third section}
622 \index{section!normal}
623 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
624 \subsection{Third subsection}
625
626 \begin{figure}
627 \caption{Third figure}
628 \end{figure}
629 \begin{table}

```



```

630 \caption{Third table}
631 \end{table}
632
633 \subsection{Fourth subsection}
634
635 \begin{figure}
636 \caption{Fourth figure}
637 \end{figure}
638 \begin{table}
639 \caption{Fourth table}
640 \end{table}
641
642 \subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
643 \subsubsection{And yet another one}
644
645 \part{Part~2}
646 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
647
648 \section{Fourth section}
649 \index{section!normal}
650 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
651 \subsection{Fifth subsection}
652
653 \begin{figure}[tp]
654 \caption{Fifth figure}
655 \end{figure}
656 \begin{table}[tp]
657 \caption{Fifth table}
658 \end{table}
659
660 \subsection{Sixth subsection}
661 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
662 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
663 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
664 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
665 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
666 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
667 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
668 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
669 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
670 \hbox{}\hfill
671 Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
672 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}%
673 \index{dark}\index{background}
674
675 \begin{figure}[tp]
676 \caption{Sixth figure}
677 \end{figure}
678 \begin{table}
679 \caption{Sixth table}
680 \end{table}
681
682 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
683 \index{section!starred}

```

```

684 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
685 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
686 %%\mtcaddsection[] % OK
687 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
688 %%\mtcaddsection % OK
689 %%%
690 \index{tests}
691
692 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
693 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
694 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
695 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
696 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
697 and at this section.\index{a}%
698 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
699 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
700 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
701 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
702 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
703 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
704 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
705 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
706 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
707 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
708 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
709
710 \section{Sixth section}
711 \index{section!normal}
712 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
713 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
714
715 \begin{figure}
716 \caption{Seventh figure}
717 \end{figure}
718 \begin{table}
719 \caption{Seventh table}
720 \end{table}
721
722 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
723
724 \begin{figure}
725 \caption{Eighth figure}
726 \end{figure}
727 \begin{table}
728 \caption{Eighth table}
729 \end{table}

```

The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [253] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

730 \nocite*
731 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
732 \bibliographystyle{plain}

```

```
733 \bibliography{mtc-add}
734 \adjuststc
```

The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [253] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```
735 \printindex
736 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 2 following lines
737 %%\addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
738 %%\addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
739 %%\mtcaddsection
740
741 \appendix
742 \section{App.~1}
743 \index{section!appendix}
744 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
745 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
746
747 \begin{figure}
748 \caption{Ninth figure}
749 \end{figure}
750 \begin{table}
751 \caption{Ninth table}
752 \end{table}
753
754 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
755
756 \begin{figure}
757 \caption{Tenth figure}
758 \end{figure}
759 \begin{table}
760 \caption{Tenth table}
761 \end{table}
762
763 \section{App.~2}
764 \index{section!appendix}
765 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
766 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
767 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
768
769 \begin{figure}
770 \caption{Eleventh figure}
771 \end{figure}
772 \begin{figure}
773 \caption{Twelfth figure}
774 \end{figure}
775
776 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
777
778 \begin{figure}
779 \caption{Thirteenth figure}
780 \end{figure}
781 \begin{figure}
```

```

782 \caption{Fourteenth figure}
783 \end{figure}
784
785 \end{document}
786 </mtc – ads>

```

4.5 The mtc-amm.tex document file

This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

```

787 (*mtc – amm)
788 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
789 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}%
790 [2007/01/04]
791 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
792 \usepackage%
793 [tight]{minitoc}
794 \begin{document}
795 \dominitoc
796 \tableofcontents
797 \adjustmtc
798 \chapter{First chapter}
799 \minitoc
800 \lipsum[1]
801 \section{First section}
802 \lipsum[2]

```

The appendices are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

```

803 \begin{appendices}
804 \addappheadtotoc
805 \chapter{Afterthought}
806 \minitoc
807 \lipsum[3]
808 Afterthought appendix
809 \section{Further remarks}
810 \lipsum[4]
811 \end{appendices}
812 \chapter{Conclusion}
813 \minitoc
814 \section{Bye}
815 \lipsum[5]
816 \end{document}
817 </mtc – amm>

```

4.6 The mtc-art.tex document file

This is a basic document using the `minitoc` package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

818 (*mtc – art)
819 %% mtc-art.tex
820 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #51
821 %% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
822 %% article (\section must be defined)
823 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
824 \ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
825 [2007/01/04]
826 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text

```

```

827%%\usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
828 \usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
829 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
830 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
831 \setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
832 %% % font for secttocs, default
833 \renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
834 %% % font for secttocs, subsections
835 %%\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sfont}%
836 %% you can make experiments with \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
837 %% but it is ‘fontomania’...
838 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent of the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

839%%% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
840%%% resetting section number in each part
841%%\makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
842%%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
843 \begin{document}
```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

844 \dosecttoc
845 \dosectlof[c] % center titles of the sectlofs
846 \dosectlot
847 \doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
848 \dopartlof % added in version #15
849 \dopartlot % added in version #15

```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

850 \faketableofcontents % or \tableofcontents
851 \fakelistoffigures % to check compatibility
852 \fakelistoftables % to check compatibility

```

There is the text of the document, with its sectioning commands; we define a part, with a parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:

```

853 \part{First Part}
854 \parttoc
855 \partlof[r]
856 \partlot

```

A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).

```

857 \twocolumn\sloppy           % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
858                             % but works. Ideas to make it better?
859 \section{AAAAA}             % a section with a lot of sections
860 \secttoc[r]                 % secttoc title on the right
861 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
862 \lipsum[1]
863 \subsection{S1}
864 \lipsum[2]
865 \subsection{S2}
866 \lipsum[3]
867 \subsection{S3}
868 \lipsum[4]
869 \subsection*{S4}
870 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}
871 \lipsum[5]
872 \subsection{S5}
873 \lipsum[6]
874 \subsection{S6}
875 \lipsum[7]
876 \subsection{S7}
877 \lipsum[8]
878 \subsection{S8}
879 \lipsum[9]
880 \subsection{S9}
881 \lipsum[10]
882 \subsection{S10}
883 \lipsum[11]
884 \subsection{S11}
885 \lipsum[12]
886 \subsection{S12}
887 \lipsum[13]
888 \subsection{S13}
889 \lipsum[14]
890 \subsection{S14}
891 \lipsum[15]
892 \subsection{S15}
893 \lipsum[16]
894 \subsection{S16}
895 \lipsum[17]
896 \subsection{S17}
897 \lipsum[18]
898 \subsection{S18}
899 \lipsum[19]
900 \subsection{S19}
901 \lipsum[20]
902 \subsection{S20}
903 \lipsum[21]
904 \subsection{S21}
905 \lipsum[22]
906 \subsection{S22}
907 \lipsum[23]

```

```

908 \subsection{S23}
909 \lipsum[24]
910 \subsection{S24}
911 \lipsum[25]
912 \subsection{S25}
913 \lipsum[26]
914 \subsection{S26}
915 \lipsum[27]
916 \subsection{S27}
917 \lipsum[28]
918 \subsection{S28}
919 \lipsum[29]
920 \subsection{S29}
921 \lipsum[30]
922 \subsection{S30}
923 \lipsum[31]

```

We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are subsections and figures). The `insection` package option should ensure that floating objects (like figures) do not drift outside their section.

```

924 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
925 \section{BBBBB}
926 \secttoc
927 \mtcskip                   % put some skip here
928 \sectlof                   % a sectlof
929 \lipsum[32]
930 \subsection{T1}
931 \lipsum[33]
932 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
933 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
934 \begin{picture}(100,50)
935 \end{picture}
936 \caption{F1}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
937 \end{figure}
938 \FloatBarrier
939 \subsubsection[tt1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectioning command
940 \lipsum[34]
941 \paragraph{TTT1}
942 \lipsum[35]
943 \subparagraph{TTTT1}
944 \lipsum[36]
945 \begin{figure}[t]
946 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
947 \begin{picture}(100,50)
948 \end{picture}
949 \caption[f2]{F2}          % tests optional arg. of a caption
950 \end{figure}
951 \FloatBarrier
952 \subsection{T2}
953 \lipsum[37]
954 \section*{CCCCC}         % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
955 %%\addstarredsection{CCCCC}

```

```

956 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
957 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
958 \lipsum[38]
959 \subsection{U1}
960 \lipsum[39]
961 \subsubsection{UU1}
962 \lipsum[40]
963 \paragraph{UUU1}
964 \lipsum[41]
965 \subparagraph{UUUU1}
966 \lipsum[42]
967 \subsection{U2}
968 \lipsum[43]
969 \part{Second Part}
970 \parttoc
971 \partlof[c]
972 \partlot
973 %%                                % the following section should have no secttoc,
974 \section{DDDDD}                  % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
975 %%\secttoc
976 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
977 %                                % the secttoc appears
978 \lipsum[44]
979 \subsection{V1}
980 \lipsum[45]
981 \subsubsection{VV1}
982 \lipsum[46]
983 \paragraph{VVV1}
984 \lipsum[47]
985 \subparagraph{VVVV1}
986 \lipsum[48]
987 \begin{figure}[t]                % tests compatibility with floating bodies
988 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
989 \begin{picture}(100,50)
990 \end{picture}
991 \caption{F3}                      % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
992 \end{figure}
993 \FloatBarrier
994 \lipsum[49]
995 \subsection{V2}
996 \lipsum[50]

```

We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

997 \section{EEEEEE}                % this section should have a secttoc
998 {%                               % left brace, see below
999 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3}    % depth of sect table of contents;
1000                                % try with different values.
1001 \secttoc
1002 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1003 }                                % right brace
1004 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1005 %% on secttocdepth.

```



```

1006 \lipsum[51]
1007 \subsection{W1}                % with the given depth
1008 \lipsum[52]
1009 \subsubsection{WW1}
1010 \lipsum[53]
1011 \paragraph{WWW1}
1012 \lipsum[54]
1013 \begin{figure}[t]              % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1014 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1015 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1016 \end{picture}
1017 \caption{F4}                    % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1018 \end{figure}
1019 \FloatBarrier
1020 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
1021 \subparagraph{WWW1}
1022 \lipsum[55]
1023 \subsection{W2}
1024 \lipsum[56]
1025 \chapter*{}
1026 \part{Appendices}
1027 \parttoc
1028 \mtcskip
1029 \partlof
1030 \mtcskip
1031 \partlot
1032 \FloatBarrier
1033 \appendix
1034 \section{Comments}
1035 \lipsum[57]
1036 \secttoc
1037 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1038 \subsection{C1}
1039 \lipsum[58]
1040 \subsection{C2}
1041 \lipsum[59]
1042 \subsection{C3}
1043 \lipsum[60]
1044 \begin{figure}[hb]              % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1045 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1046 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1047 \end{picture}
1048 \caption{F5}                    % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1049 \end{figure}
1050 \FloatBarrier
1051 \subsection{C4}
1052 \lipsum[61]
1053 \FloatBarrier
1054 \section{Evolution}
1055 \secttoc
1056 \sectlof % empty
1057 \sectlot % empty
1058 \lipsum[62]
1059 \subsection{D1}

```

```

1060 \lipsum[63]
1061 \subsection{D2}
1062 \lipsum[64]
1063 \subsection{D3}
1064 \lipsum[65]
1065 \subsection{D4}
1066 \lipsum[66]
1067 \end{document}
1068 </mtc - art>

```

4.7 The mtc-bk.tex document file

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

1069 < *mtc - bk>
1070 %%% A example file (differs from previous versions)
1071 %% mtc-bk.tex
1072 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #51
1073 %% package file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
1074 %% book/report (\chapter must be defined).
1075 %% You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc
1076 %% commands and parameters.
1077 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
1078 %%\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
1079 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
1080 [2007/01/04]
1081 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
1082 %%\usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
1083 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
1084 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
1085 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectioning commands
1086 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
1087 \setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
1088 \renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
1089 \renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
1090 %%\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
1091 %% you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
1092 %% but it is ‘fontomania’...
1093 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent of the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

1094 %% TEST: uncomment the 3 next lines to test
1095 %% resetting chapter number in each part

```

```

1096%%\makeatletter
1097%%\@addtoreset{chapter}{part}
1098%%\makeatother
1099%%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

1100 \begin{document}
1101 \mtcpagenumbers
1102 \noptcrule
1103 %% \nomtcrule % suppresses minitoc rules
1104 %% \nomtcpagenumbers % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1105 %% \nomlfpagenumbers % ----- minilof ---- -----
1106 %% \nomltpagenumbers % ----- minilot ---- -----

```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

1107 \dominitoc
1108 \dominilof[c] % centers title of minilof's
1109 \dominilot
1110 \doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
1111 \dopartlof % added in version #15
1112 \dopartlot % added in version #15

```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

1113 \tableofcontents % or \faketableofcontents
1114 \listoffigures % or \fakelistoffigures
1115 \fakelistoftables % or \listoftables

```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```

1116%%\addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0

```

There is the text of the document, with its sectioning commands:

```

1117 \part{First Part}
1118 \parttoc
1119 \partlof[r]
1120 \partlot[r]

```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```

1121 \twocolumn\sloppy % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1122 \chapter{AAAAA} % a chapter with a lot of sections
1123 \minitoc[r] % minitoc title on the right
1124 \lipsum[1]
1125 \section{S1}

```

```
1126 \lipsum[2]
1127 \section{S2}
1128 \lipsum[3]
1129 \section{S3}
1130 \lipsum[4]
```

A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:

```
1131 \section*{S4}
1132 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
1133 \lipsum[5]
1134 \section{S5}
1135 \lipsum[6]
1136 \section{S6}
1137 \lipsum[6]
1138 \section{S7}
1139 \lipsum[7]
1140 \section{S8}
1141 \lipsum[9]
1142 \section{S9}
1143 \lipsum[10]
1144 \section{S10}
1145 \lipsum[11]
1146 \section{S11}
1147 \lipsum[12]
1148 \section{S12}
1149 \lipsum[13]
1150 \section{S13}
1151 \lipsum[14]
1152 \section{S14}
1153 \lipsum[15]
1154 \section{S15}
1155 \lipsum[16]
1156 \section{S16}
1157 \lipsum[17]
1158 \section{S17}
1159 \lipsum[18]
1160 \section{S18}
1161 \lipsum[19]
1162 \section{S19}
1163 \lipsum[20]
1164 \section{S20}
1165 \lipsum[21]
1166 \section{S21}
1167 \lipsum[22]
1168 \section{S22}
1169 \lipsum[23]
1170 \section{S23}
1171 \lipsum[24]
1172 \section{S24}
1173 \lipsum[25]
1174 \section{S25}
1175 \lipsum[26]
```

```

1176 \section{S26}
1177 \lipsum[27]
1178 \section{S27}
1179 \lipsum[28]
1180 \section{S28}
1181 \lipsum[29]
1182 \section{S29}
1183 \lipsum[30]
1184 \section{S30}
1185 \lipsum[31]
1186 \subsection{SS1}
1187 \lipsum[32]
1188 \section{S31}
1189 \lipsum[33]

```

We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

1190 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
1191 \chapter{BBBBB}
1192 \minitoc
1193 \mtcskip                     % put some skip here
1194 \minilof                     % a minilof
1195 \mtcskip                     % put some skip here
1196 \minilot                     % a minilot
1197 \lipsum[34]
1198 \section{T1}
1199 \lipsum[35]
1200 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1201 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1202 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1203 \end{picture}
1204 \caption{F1}                 % (tables are similar)
1205 \end{figure}
1206 \begin{table}[b]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1207 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1208 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1209 \end{picture}
1210 \caption{T1}                 % (tables are similar)
1211 \end{table}
1212 \clearpage
1213 \subsection[tt1]{TT1}       % tests optional arg. of a sectioning command
1214 \lipsum[36]
1215 \subsubsection{TTT1}
1216 \lipsum[37]
1217 \paragraph{TTT1}
1218 \lipsum[38]
1219 \begin{figure}
1220 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1221 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1222 \end{picture}
1223 \caption[f2]{F2}           % tests optional arg. of a caption
1224 \end{figure}
1225 \section{T2}

```

1226 \lipsum[39]

A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectioning commands must also be starred.

```

1227 \chapter*{CCCCC}           % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
1228 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
1229 \lipsum[40]
1230 \section*{U1}
1231 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1232 \lipsum[41]
1233 \subsection*{UUU1}
1234 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UUU1}
1235 \lipsum[42]
1236 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
1237 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1238 \lipsum[43]
1239 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1240 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1241 \lipsum[44]
1242 \section*{U2}
1243 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1244 \lipsum[45]
1245 \part{Second Part}
1246 \parttoc
1247 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment \minitoc, the minitoc will appear.

```

1248 %%                               % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1249 \chapter{DDDDD}                   % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1250 %%\minitoc                         % the minitoc appears
1251 \lipsum[46]
1252 \section{V1}
1253 \lipsum[47]
1254 \subsection{VV1}
1255 \lipsum[48]
1256 \subsubsection{VVV1}
1257 \lipsum[49]
1258 \paragraph{VVVV1}
1259 \lipsum[50]
1260 \begin{figure}[t]                 % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1261 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1262 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1263 \end{picture}
1264 \caption{F3}                       % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1265 \end{figure}
1266 \lipsum[51]
1267 \section{V2}
1268 \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1269 \chapter{EEEEEE}           % this chapter should have a minitoc
1270 {%                          % left brace, see below
1271 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3} % depth of mini table of contents;
1272                             % try with different values.
1273 \minitoc
1274 }                             % right brace
1275 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1276 %% on minitocdepth.
1277 \lipsum[53]
1278 \section{W1}                 % with the given depth
1279 \lipsum[54]
1280 \subsection{WW1}
1281 \lipsum[55]
1282 \subsubsection{WWW1}
1283 \lipsum[56]
1284 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1285 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1286 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1287 \end{picture}
1288 \caption{F4}                % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1289 \end{figure}
1290 \lipsum[57]
1291 \paragraph{WWWW1}
1292 \lipsum[58]
1293 \subparagraph{WWWWW1}
1294 \lipsum[59]
1295 \section{W2}
1296 \lipsum[60]

```

Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its parttoc:

```

1297 \appendix
1298 \part{Appendices}
1299 \parttoc

```

Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional argument:

```

1300 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1301 \chapter{Comments}
1302 \minitoc
1303 \section{C1}
1304 \lipsum[61]
1305 \section{C2}
1306 \lipsum[62]
1307 \section{C3}
1308 \lipsum[63]
1309 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies

```

```

1310 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1311 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1312 \end{picture}
1313 \caption{F5}           % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1314 \end{figure}
1315 \section{C4}
1316 \chapter{Evolution}
1317 \minitoc
1318 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1319 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1320 \section{D1}
1321 \lipsum[64]
1322 \section{D2}
1323 \lipsum[65]
1324 \section{D3}
1325 \lipsum[66]
1326 \section{D4}

```

We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1327 %% this line closes the omitted part
1328 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1329 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC
1330 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1331 \lipsum[67]
1332 \end{document}
1333 </mtc - bk>

```

4.8 The `mtc-bo.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the `tocloft` package [250]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a `minitoc` and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads some useful packages for the french language, the `geometry` package [237], which defines the global page layout, the `multicol` package [186], the `color` package [91], because we want a colored background for the `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package [250], to change some parameters of the `minitoc`, and, at least, the `minitoc` package.

```

1334 (*mtc - bo)
1335 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1336 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1337 [2007/01/04]
1338 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1339           lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1340 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1341 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1342 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1343 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}

```



```

1344 \usepackage{mypatches}
1345 \usepackage{multicol}
1346 \usepackage{color}

```

We use the `tocloft` package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the `minitoc`:

```

1347 \usepackage{tocloft}
1348 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
1349 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
1350 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
1351 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1352 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1353 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1354 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the `minitoc`, we must use the commands from `tocloft`:

```

1355 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1356 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

We load the `minitoc` package and change the indentation, suppress the rules and change the `minitoc` title. The `hyperref` package [215] can also be loaded (*after* `minitoc`).

```

1357 \usepackage[français,tight]{minitoc}
1358 \usepackage{hyperref}
1359 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1360 \nomtcrule           % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1361 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1362 %                   (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1363 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

This code redefines the format of the chapter head:

```

1364 %%%%%%%%%%%
1365 %  MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT RENCONTRE AU LIEU DE CHAPITRE
1366 %  Sans saut de ligne
1367 %  (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ)
1368 %%%%%%%%%%%
1369 \makeatletter
1370 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1371   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1372   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1373     \interlinepenalty\@M
1374     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1375       \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1376       \fi
1377     \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1378     \vskip 10\p@
1379 }}

```

```

1380 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1381   \vspace*{10\p@}%
1382   {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1383     \interlinepenalty\@M
1384     \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1385     \vskip 10\p@
1386 }} \makeatother

```

We define an environment (`pageUn`) for the block placed at the beginning of a chapter. This block contains a minitoc, then a sequence of informations given by the 6 parameters of the environment. The block uses a `multicols` environment to typeset on two columns. Some decorations are added: rules, colored background for the minitoc.

```

1387 %%%%%%%%%%%
1388 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES
1389 %%%%%%%%%%%
1390 % param1: date de la rencontre
1391 % param2: nombre de périodes
1392 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1393 % param4: messages
1394 % param5: lecture
1395 % param6: exercices
1396 %%%%%%%%%%%
1397 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1398 \parindent = 0.0in
1399 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1400 \begin{multicols}{2}
1401     {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1402     \textit{(#2)}}
1403     \vfill\columnbreak
1404     \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1405     #1
1406 \end{multicols}
1407 \vspace{-18pt}
1408 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1409
1410 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt}
1411 \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1412 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1413
1414 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1415 \colorbox{cmyk}{.1,0,0,0}{%
1416     \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1417         \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1418         \minitoc%
1419     }}
1420 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1421
1422 \mtcskip
1423
1424 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1425
1426 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}

```

```

1427 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1428
1429 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1430
1431 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1432 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1433
1434 %: LECTURE
1435 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1436
1437 % EXERCICES
1438 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1439
1440 %\newpage
1441 \end{multicols}%
1442 }
1443 %{\newpage}
1444 {\hrule}
1445
1446 %\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1447
1448 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1449 %\parindent = 0.0in
1450 \parskip = 0.1in
1451
1452 %%%%%%%%%%%
1453 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS
1454 %%%%%%%%%%%
1455 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1456 %\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1457

```

The body of the document:

```

1458 %%%%%%%%%%%
1459 %: BEGIN
1460 %%%%%%%%%%%
1461 \begin{document}
1462 \dominitoc
1463 \faketableofcontents
1464 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1465 %\minitoc
1466 \begin{pageUn}
1467     {%1      Date du cours
1468             lundi 25 août
1469             }
1470     {%2      Durée du cours
1471             2 périodes
1472             }
1473     {%3      Liste des documents à distribuer
1474             \item Plan de cours
1475             \item Fiche d'identification
1476             \item Grille horaire

```

```

1477         \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1478         }
1479     {%4     Ne pas oublier
1480         \item Acheter le livre de référence
1481         \item Apporter une disquette
1482         }
1483     {%5     Lecture
1484         Lire les pages ppp à ppp et ppp à ppp
1485         }
1486     {%6     Exercice
1487         Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1488         }
1489 \end{pageUn}
1490
1491 %%%%%%%%%%%
1492 \section{Titre de la section}
1493 %%%%%%%%%%%
1494
1495 Texte dans la section
1496
1497 %%
1498 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1499 %%
1500 Bla bla bla
1501
1502 %%
1503 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1504 %%
1505 Bla bla bla
1506
1507
1508 %%%%%%%%%%%
1509 \section{Titre d'une autre section}
1510 %%%%%%%%%%%
1511
1512 Texte dans la section
1513
1514 %%
1515 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1516 %%
1517 Bla bla bla
1518
1519 %%
1520 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1521 %%
1522 Bla bla bla
1523
1524
1525 %%%%%%%%%%%
1526 \section{Encore une autre section}
1527 %%%%%%%%%%%
1528
1529 Texte dans la section
1530

```

```
1531 \end{document}
1532 </mtc - bo>
```

4.9 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

```
1533 <*mtc - ch0>
1534 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1535 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1536 [2007/01/04]
1537 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1538 \begin{document}
1539 \dominitoc
1540 \tableofcontents
```

The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:

```
1541 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1542 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1543 \minitoc
1544 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1545 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1546 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1547 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1548
1549 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1550 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1551 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1552 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1553 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1554 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1555 things by halves around here.
1556
1557 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1558 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1559 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1560 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1561
1562 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1563 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1564 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1565 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1566 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1567 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1568 things by halves around here.
```

The second chapter is normal:

```

1569 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1570 \minitoc
1571 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1572 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1573 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1574 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1575
1576 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1577 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1578 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1579 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1580 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1581 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1582 things by halves around here.
1583 \end{document}
1584 </mtc - ch0>

```

4.10 The mtc-cri.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file.

```

1585 (*mtc - cri)
1586 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
1587 {report}
1588 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}%
1589 [2007/01/04]
1590 \usepackage[français]{babel}
1591 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1592 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1593 \usepackage%
1594 [french2,tight]%
1595 {minitoc}
1596
1597 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}
1598
1599 \begin{document}
1600 \doparttoc
1601 \dominitoc
1602 \tableofcontents
1603 \part*{Présentation générale}
1604 \mtcaddpart[Présentation générale]

```

```

1605 \adjustptc[-2]
1606 \parttoc
1607
1608 Texte de la
1609 présentation générale\ldots
1610
1611 \chapter*{Les auteurs}
1612 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs]
1613 Présentation des auteurs\ldots
1614
1615 \chapter*{Les lecteurs}
1616 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs]
1617 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots
1618
1619 \part{Première partie}
1620 \parttoc
1621 \chapter*{Introduction}
1622 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
1623 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
1624 \minitoc
1625 \section{Première section~A}
1626 \section{Deuxième section~A}
1627 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
1628 \minitoc
1629 \section{Première section~B}
1630 \section{Deuxième section~B}
1631
1632 \part{Deuxième partie}
1633 \parttoc

```

<pre>1634 \chapter{Premier chapitre} 1635 \minitoc 1636 \section{Première section~C} 1637 \section{Deuxième section~C} 1638 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}</pre>	<pre>1639 \minitoc 1640 \section{Première section~D} 1641 \section{Deuxième section~D} 1642 \end{document} 1643 </mtc - cri></pre>
---	--

4.11 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

```
1644 <*mtc - fo1>
1645 \documentclass{report}
1646 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
1647 [2007/01/04]
1648 \usepackage{lipsum}
1649 \usepackage{txfonts}
1650 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1651 \begin{document}
1652 \doparttoc
1653 \dominitoc
1654 \tableofcontents
1655 \part{Introduction}
1656 \clearpage
```

A first copy, with default fonts:

```
1657 \parttoc
```

A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

```
1658 \clearpage
1659 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1660 \parttoc
```

A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

```
1661 \clearpage
1662 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1663 \parttoc
```

A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

```
1664 \clearpage
1665 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1666 \parttoc
```

```

1667 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1668 \minitoc
1669 \lipsum[1]
1670 \section{First section}
1671 \lipsum[2]
1672 \subsection{Alpha}
1673 \lipsum[3]
1674 \subsection{Beta}
1675 \lipsum[4]
1676 \section{Second section}
1677 \lipsum[5]
1678 \subsection{Gamma}
1679 \lipsum[6]
1680 \subsection{Delta}
1681 \lipsum[7]
1682 \end{document}
1683 </mtc - fo1>

```

4.12 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of `mtc-fo1.tex` (see section 4.11 on the preceding page).

```

1684 (*mtc - fo2)
1685 \documentclass{report}
1686 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1687 [2007/01/04]
1688 \usepackage{lipsum}
1689 \usepackage{txfonts}
1690 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

We declare the fonts with the old method:

```

1691 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
1692 \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
1693 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
1694 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
1695 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
1696 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
1697 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
1698 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
1699 \begin{document}
1700 \doparttoc
1701 \dominitoc
1702 \tableofcontents
1703 \part{Introduction}
1704 \clearpage

```


A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```
1705 \parttoc
1706 \clearpage
```

A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```
1707 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1708 \parttoc
1709 \clearpage
```

A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```
1710 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1711 \parttoc
1712 \clearpage
```

A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```
1713 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1714 \parttoc
1715 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1716 \minitoc
1717 \lipsum[1]
1718 \section{First section}
1719 \lipsum[2]
1720 \subsection{Alpha}
1721 \lipsum[3]
1722 \subsection{Beta}
1723 \lipsum[4]
1724 \section{Second section}
1725 \lipsum[5]
1726 \subsection{Gamma}
1727 \lipsum[6]
1728 \subsection{Delta}
1729 \lipsum[7]
1730 \end{document}
1731 </mtc – fo2>
```

4.13 The mtc-hia.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class.

```
1732 <*mtc – hia>
1733 \documentclass%
1734 [oneside,a4paper]{article}
1735 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}%
1736 [2007/01/04]
1737 \usepackage{lipsum}
1738 \usepackage%
```

```

1739 [tight,insection]%
1740     {minitoc}
1741 \dosectlot
1742 \begin{document}
1743 \listoftables
1744 \section{First section}
1745 \sectlot
1746 \lipsum[1]
1747 \begin{table}[hb]
1748 \caption{My first visible table}
1749 \end{table}
1750 \lipsum[2]
1751 \begin{table}[ht]
1752 \caption{A second visible table}
1753 \end{table}
1754 \lipsum[3]

```

For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```

1755 \begin{table}[hb]
1756 \mtchideinmainlot
1757 \caption{My first hidden table}
1758 \end{table}
1759 \lipsum[4-6]
1760 \begin{table}[ht]

```

```

1761 \caption{A second hidden table}
1762 \end{table}
1763 \lipsum[7]
1764 \section{Second section}
1765 \sectlot
1766 \lipsum[8]

```

For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

```

1767 \begin{table}[hb]
1768 \caption{My last hidden table}
1769 \endmtchideinmainlot
1770 \end{table}
1771 \lipsum[9]
1772 \begin{table}[ht]
1773 \caption{A third visible table}
1774 \end{table}
1775 \lipsum[10]
1776 \begin{table}[hb]
1777 \caption{A fourth visible table}
1778 \end{table}
1779 \lipsum[11]
1780 \end{document}
1781 </mtc - hia>

```

4.14 The `mtc-hir.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the `report` class.

```

1782 <*mtc - hir>
1783 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
1784 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}%
1785 [2007/01/04]
1786 \usepackage{lipsum}
1787 \usepackage%
1788 [tight]{minitoc}
1789 \dominilot
1790 \begin{document}
1791 \listoftables
1792 \chapter{First chapter}
1793 \minilot
1794 \lipsum[1]

```

```

1795 \begin{table}[hb]
1796 \caption{My first visible table}
1797 \end{table}
1798 \lipsum[2]
1799 \begin{table}[ht]
1800 \caption{A second visible table}
1801 \end{table}
1802 \lipsum[3]

```

For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```

1803 \begin{table}[hb]
1804 \mtchideinmainlot % <--
1805 \caption{My first hidden table}
1806 \end{table}
1807 \lipsum[4-6]
1808 \begin{table}[ht]
1809 \caption{A second hidden table}

```

```

1810 \end{table}
1811 \lipsum[7]
1812 \chapter{Second chapter}
1813 \minilot
1814 \lipsum[8]

For the last hidden table, we add
\endmtchideinmainlot after its
caption:

1815 \begin{table}[hb]
1816 \caption{My last hidden table}

```

```

1817 \endmtchideinmainlot % <--
1818 \end{table}
1819 \lipsum[9]
1820 \begin{table}[ht]
1821 \caption{A third visible table}
1822 \end{table}
1823 \lipsum[10]
1824 \begin{table}[hb]
1825 \caption{A fourth visible table}
1826 \end{table}
1827 \lipsum[11]
1828 \end{document}
1829 </mtc - hir>

```

4.15 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class scrbook.

```

1830 <*mtc - hop>
1831 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1832 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1833 [2007/01/04]
1834 \usepackage{lipsum}
1835 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1836 \begin{document}

```

We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF file is prepared):

```

1837 \dominitoc
1838 \dominilof
1839 \tableofcontents
1840 \fakelistoffigures

```

A starred part with its entry in the TOC:

```

1841 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1842 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:

```

1843 \chapter{Chapter 1}
1844 \minitoc
1845 \minilof
1846 \section{Section one of first chapter}
1847 \lipsum[1]
1848 \begin{figure}

```

```

1849 \centering
1850 Test
1851 \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1852 \end{figure}
1853
1854 \section{Section two of first chapter}
1855 \lipsum[2]
1856 \begin{figure}
1857 \centering
1858 Test
1859 \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1860 \end{figure}
1861
1862 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1863 \minitoc \minilof
1864
1865 \section{Section one of second chapter}
1866 \lipsum[3]
1867 \begin{figure}
1868 \centering
1869 Test
1870 \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1871 \end{figure}
1872 \cleardoublepage
1873 \section{Section two of second chapter}
1874 \lipsum[4]
1875 \begin{figure}
1876 \centering
1877 Test
1878 \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1879 \end{figure}
1880 \end{document}
1881 </mtc - hop>

```

4.16 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1882 <*mtc - liv>
1883 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1884 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%
1885 [2007/01/04]

```

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine `\cleardoublepage`:

```

1886 \makeatletter
1887 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%

```

```

1888 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
1889 \if@twoside
1890 \ifodd\c@page\else
1891 \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
1892 \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
1893 \fi
1894 \fi
1895 }%
1896 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1897 \makeatother

```

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```

1898 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1899 \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}

```

We load two packages, `tocloft` [250], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [182], to customize the sectionning commands:

```

1900 \usepackage{tocloft}
1901 \usepackage{sectsty}

```

We load the `minitoc` package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```

1902 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
1903 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
1904 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1905 \usepackage{mypatches}
1906 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}

```

We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:

```

1907 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
1908 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
1909 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
1910 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
1911 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
1912 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
1913 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
1914 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)

```

Some informations for the title page:

```

1915 \title{Systèmes d'occultation}
1916 \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}

```

And the document body²:

```

1917 \begin{document}
1918
1919 \maketitle
1920
1921 \dominitoc
1922 \tableofcontents
1923
1924 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à-faire}
1925 \label{chap+controle}
1926 \minitoc
1927
1928 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
1929 \index{taylorisme}
1930 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}-siècle que la vision du travail comme
1931 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
1932 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}-siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
1933 industrielle.
1934
1935 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
1936 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
1937 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
1938 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
1939 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
1940 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
1941
1942 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
1943 Le travail a vocation à-produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
1944 son destinataire.
1945
1946 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
1947 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
1948 services publics à-des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
1949 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
1950 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
1951 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
1952 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
1953
1954 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
1955 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
1956 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
1957
1958 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
1959 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
1960 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
1961 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]
1962
1963 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a-priori}}
1964 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle
1965 \emph{a-priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public
1966 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]

```

² The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

1967
1968 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}
1969 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés
1970 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes
1971 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]
1972
1973 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}
1974 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système
1975 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître
1976 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un
1977 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les
1978 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]
1979
1980 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}
1981 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un
1982 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de
1983 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent
1984 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]
1985
1986 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}
1987 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne
1988 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]
1989
1990 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}
1991 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion
1992 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]
1993
1994 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}
1995
1996 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons
1997 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup
1998 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du
1999 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]
2000
2001 \chapter{Le travail informatique}
2002 \minitoc
2003
2004 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}
2005
2006 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}
2007 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin
2008 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des
2009 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,
2010 on pensait~[...]
2011
2012 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}
2013 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du
2014 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus
2015 au sujet de la programmation.
2016
2017 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
2018 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres
2019 principes. Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la
2020 préserver~[...]

```

2021
2022 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}
2023 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}
2024
2025 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
2026 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
2027 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{\oe}ur de notre
2028 préoccupation.
2029
2030 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
2031 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
2032 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires
2033 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
2034 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]
2035
2036 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
2037 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
2038 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
2039 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
2040
2041 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
2042 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
2043 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
2044 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
2045 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
2046
2047 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
2048 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
2049 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
2050 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
2051
2052 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
2053 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
2054 modèle~[...]
2055 \end{document}
2056 </mtc – liv)

```

4.17 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

```

2057 < *mtc – mem)
2058 \documentclass%
2059 [oneside]{memoir}
2060 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}%
2061 [2007/01/04]
2062 \usepackage{lipsum}
2063 %%\usepackage{hyperref}

```

```

2064 %%\usepackage{memhfixc}
2065 \usepackage%
2066 [tight]{minitoc}
2067 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
2068 \begin{document}

```

We use the starred form `\tableofcontents*` specific of the memoir class. Note that the the

`\chapter` command has *two* optional arguments in the memoir class.

```

2069 \dominitoc
2070 \tableofcontents*
2071
2072 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC}
2073 \minitoc
2074 \lipsum[1]
2075 \newpage
2076 \lipsum[2]
2077 \section{S-1-one}
2078 \lipsum[3]
2079 \section{S-1-two}
2080 \lipsum[4]
2081
2082 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC}
2083 \minitoc
2084 \lipsum[4]
2085 \newpage
2086 \lipsum[5]
2087 \section{S-2-one}
2088 \lipsum[6]
2089 \section{S-2-two}
2090 \lipsum[7]
2091 \end{document}
2092 </mtc – mem>

```

4.18 The `mtc-mm1.tex` document file

This example shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a memoir class document and shows some of the adaptations necessary for fonts. First, the preamble:

```

2093 (*mtc – mm1)
2094 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
2095 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
2096 [2007/01/04]
2097 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text

```

We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```

2098 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2099 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}

```

Then we redefine them:

```

2100 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
2101 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}

```

We load the `minitoc` package and try to use some `minitoc` font commands, without success:

```

2102 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
2103 %% \usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref} \usepackage{memhfixc}
2104 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2105 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
2106 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape

```

But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```

2107 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2108 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
2109 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
2110 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}

```

But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```

2111 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
2112 %% this is working beautifully ->
2113 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}

```

The document body:

```

2114 \begin{document}
2115 \dominitoc
2116 \tableofcontents*
2117
2118 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
2119 \minitoc
2120 \section{This section}
2121 \lipsum[1]
2122 \section{Second section}
2123 \lipsum[2]
2124 \section{Third section}
2125 \lipsum[3]
2126 \end{document}
2127 </mtc - mm1>

```

4.19 The mtc-mu.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted in the text with the wrapfig package [11].

```

2128 (*mtc - mu)
2129 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2130 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
2131 [2007/01/04]
2132 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2133 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
2134 \usepackage{wrapfig}
2135 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
2136 \begin{document}
2137 \dominitoc
2138 \tableofcontents

```

A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:

```

2139 \chapter{Mulspren}\label{chapter+mulspren}
2140 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
2141 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
2142 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
2143 \minitoc
2144 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
2145 \end{minipage}
2146 \end{wrapfigure}

```

The remaining of the text:

```

2147 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
2148 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
2149 These gulfs were often created when programming environments used
2150 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
2151 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
2152 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
2153 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
2154 notations helped users understand programs.
2155 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2156 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2157 programming gulfs.
2158 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2159 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2160 programming gulfs.
2161
2162 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
2163 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
2164 benefits of multiple notations.
2165 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
2166 similar to conventional code.
2167 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
2168 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
2169 This is programming using dual notations.
2170 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
2171 Mulspren's language signature is \LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}.
2172
2173 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
2174 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.
2175
2176 \section{section 1}
2177 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2178 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2179 \section{section 3}
2180 \section{section 4}
2181 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2182 bla bla bla bla bla}

```

I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

```

2183 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
2184 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
2185 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.

```

```

2186 \newblock Mulspre: a multiple language simulation programming
2187 environment.
2188 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
2189 on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
2190 page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
2191
2192 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
2193 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2194 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.
2195 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
2196 conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
2197 Australia, 2005.
2198 Australian Computer Society, Inc.
2199 \end{thebibliography}
2200 \end{document}
2201 </mtc - mu>

```

4.20 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfigure package [94]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2202 (*mtc - sbf)
2203 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2204 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2205 [2007/01/04]
2206 \usepackage{subfigure}
2207 \makeatletter
2208 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{%
2209 \@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2210 \makeatother

```

We load the varioref package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```

2211 \usepackage{varioref}
2212 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:

```

2213 \newcommand{\goodap}{%
2214 \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
2215 \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
2216 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2217 \begin{document}

```

We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:

```

2218 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2219 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2220 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2221 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2222 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2223 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2224 %% no tables in this document
2225 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2226 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2227 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2228 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:

```

2229 \dominilof
2230 \tableofcontents
2231 \listoffigures

```

A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:

```

2232 \chapter{First Chapter}
2233 \minilof
2234 \mtcskip
2235 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2236 \minilof

```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```

2237 \begin{figure}
2238 \centering
2239   \fbox{%
2240     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2241       \raggedright
2242       \begin{center}
2243         \subfigure[First]{%
2244           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2245           \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2246         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2247           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}\}
2248         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2249           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}\}
2250         \caption{Three subfigures.}%
2251         \label{3figs}%
2252       \end{center}
2253       \vspace{4pt}%
2254       This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2255       Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2256     \end{minipage}}
2257 \end{figure}
2258 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘subfigures’ and

```

```

2259 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2260 \end{document}
2261 </mtc – sbf>

```

4.21 The mtc-scr.tex document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package with a KOMA-Script document class [147, 195], `scrreprt`. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2262 <*mtc – scr>
2263 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2264 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2265 [2007/01/04]
2266 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2267 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2268 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2269 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The `hyperref` package, if used, must be loaded *before* `minitoc`:

```

2270 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

With a KOMA-Script class [147, 195], use the `k-tight` package option in place of `tight`; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:

```

2271 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2272 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2273 \begin{document}
2274 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2275 \dominitoc
2276 \tableofcontents

```

In this document class, with the `liststotoc` class option, the `\listoftables` macro adds a chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add `\mtcaddchapter` after `\listoftables`:

```

2277 \listoftables
2278 \mtcaddchapter

```

With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the `tocbind` package.

```

2279 \clearpage
2280 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits
2281 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1
2282

```

```

2283 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}
2284
2285 Text.
2286
2287 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}
2288
2289 \begin{table}
2290   \centering
2291   \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2292     \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} & \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft
2293   \\
2294     \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2295     Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort
2296   \end{longtable}
2297   \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2298 \end{table}
2299
2300 Text.
2301
2302 \appendix
2303 \chapter{Dokumente}
2304 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2305
2306 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2307 Text.\\
2308 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2309 \end{document}
2310 </mtc - scr>

```

4.22 The mtc-syn.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2311 (*mtc - syn)
2312 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2313 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2314   [2007/01/04]
2315 \usepackage{minitoc}
2316 \begin{document}
2317 \dominitoc

```

Some starred chapters, with calls to `\mtcaddchapter` to synchronize. The optional argument is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2318 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2319 \mtcaddchapter          % Added for a starred chapter

```

```

2320                                     % without entry in the ToC
2321 Dedication goes here
2322
2323 \chapter*{Abstract}
2324 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2325                                     % with an entry in the ToC
2326 Abstract goes here
2327
2328 \chapter*{Declaration}
2329 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2330                                     % with an entry in the ToC
2331 Declaration goes here

```

The table of contents comes here. Looking at the *document.log* file shows that the minitoc files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```

2332 \tableofcontents
2333 \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

```

The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

```

2334 \chapter{Chapter One}
2335 \minitoc
2336
2337 \section{Section 1}
2338 Some text.
2339
2340 \section{Section 2}
2341 Some text.
2342
2343 \chapter{Chapter Two}
2344 \minitoc
2345
2346 \section{Another Section 1}
2347 Some more text.
2348
2349 \section{Another Section 2}
2350 Some more text.
2351
2352 \end{document}
2353 </mtc - syn>

```

4.23 The mtc-tbi.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document using the tocbibind package [253].

```

2354 < *mtc - tbi>
2355 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
2356 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}%
2357 [2007/01/04]

```


We dont want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option `nottoc` for the `tocbibind` package:

```
2358 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind}
2359 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2360 \begin{document}
2361 \dominitoc
2362 \tableofcontents
```

As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction³:

```
2363 %% tocbibind compatibility
2364 %% not used if nottoc option :
2365 %% \mtcaddchapter[]
```

A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;

```
2366 \chapter*{Introduction}
2367 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
```

Some normal chapters:

```
2368 \chapter{Title of chapter~1}
2369 \minitoc
2370 \section{as1}
2371 \section{as2}
2372 \chapter{Title of chapter~2}
2373 \minitoc
2374 \section{bs1}
2375 \section{bs2}
2376 \chapter{Title of chapter~3}
2377 \minitoc
2378 \section{cs1}
2379 \section{cs2}
2380 \chapter{Title of chapter~4}
2381 \minitoc
2382 \section{ds1}
2383 \section{ds2}
```

Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:

```
2384 \chapter*{Conclusion}
2385 \mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]
```

Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC:

```
2386 \chapter*{Appendices}
2387 \mtcaddchapter[Appendices]
2388 \minitoc
2389 \section*{first appendix}
2390 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
2391 {first appendix}
2392 \section*{second appendix}
2393 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
2394 {second appendix}
```

The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the `tocbibind` package), so a correction must be applied:

```
2395 \listoffigures
2396 %% tocbibind compatibility
2397 \mtcaddchapter
```

The `tocbibind` package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the recommended correction:

```
2398 \begin{thebibliography}{3}
2399 \bibitem {s1}{title ...}
2400 \end{thebibliography}
2401 %% tocbibind compatibility
2402 \adjustmtc
2403 \end{document}
2404 </mtc - tbi>
```

³ It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

4.24 The `mtc-tlc.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document of the `article` class. It is the example of [189, page 58], modernized.

```
2405 <*mtc - tlc>
2406 \documentclass{article}
2407 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}%
2408 [2007/01/04]
```

Dimensions of the text on the page:

```
2409 \setlength{\textwidth}%
2410 {124.20126pt}
2411 \setlength{\textheight}%
2412 {19\baselineskip}
```

We load the `minitoc` package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for the `secttoc`:

```
2413 \usepackage{minitoc}
2414 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}
2415 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%
2416 {\footnotesize}
2417 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}
```

We prepare the `secttocs`, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:

```
2418 \begin{document}
2419 \dosecttoc[e]
2420 \faketableofcontents
2421
2422 \section{Afghanistan}
2423 \secttoc
2424 \subsection{Geography}
2425 \subsubsection{Total area}
2426 647,500 km2
2427 \subsubsection{Land area}
2428 647,500 km2
2429 \subsection{History} \ldots
2430
2431 \section{Albania}
2432 \secttoc
2433 \subsection{Geography}
2434 \subsubsection{Total area}
2435 28,750 km2
2436 \subsubsection{Land area}
2437 27,400 km2
2438 \subsection{History} \ldots
2439 \end{document}
2440 </mtc - tlc>
```

4.25 The `mtc-tsf.tex` document file

This document⁴ shows the use of the `minitoc` package with a document containing subfigures (here with the `subfig` package [96]). We show how to use `minilofs` and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the `subfig` package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```
2441 <*mtc - tsf>
2442 \documentclass{report}
2443 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}%
2444 [2007/01/04]
2445 \usepackage{fullpage}
2446 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2447 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
```

⁴ It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the `subfig` package [96].

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2448 \newdimen\testtemp
2449 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2450   \testtemp #1%
2451   \advance\testtemp .5pt%
2452   \divide\testtemp 2%
2453   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2454     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2455   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2456   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2457     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt}\hfil}}
2458 %%
2459 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2460 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2461   \fbox{%
2462     \vbox to 1in{%
2463       \vfil
2464       \hbox to 2in{%
2465         \parbox{2in}{%
2466           \centering
2467           #1}}%
2468       \vfil
2469       \vbox to 0pt{%
2470         \vss
2471         \hbox to 2in{%
2472           \hfil
2473           \ru{1.1in}%
2474           \hfil}}}}}}

```

The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and the list of figures:

```

2475 \begin{document}
2476 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2477 \dominilof
2478 \listoffigures
2479 \newpage

```

A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print a minilof twice, with different depths:

```

2480 \chapter{Reference Test}
2481 \minilof
2482 \mtcskip
2483 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2484 \minilof
2485
2486 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2487   \centering
2488   \subfigure{%
2489     \label{fig+A}%
2490     \figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\

```

```

2491         (no opt)}}
2492 \quad
2493 \subfigure[]{%
2494   \label{fig+B}%
2495   \figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\
2496     (empty opt)}}\\
2497
2498 \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2499   \label{fig+C}%
2500   \figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\
2501     (opt)}}
2502 \quad
2503 \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2504   \label{fig+D}%
2505   \figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\
2506     (empty opt and opt)}}
2507 \quad
2508 \subfigure[][]{%
2509   \label{fig+E}%
2510   \figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\
2511     (both empty opt)}}\\
2512
2513 \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2514   \label{fig+F}%
2515   \figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\
2516     (both opt)}}
2517 \quad
2518 \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][]{%
2519   \label{fig+G}%
2520   \figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\
2521     (opt and empty opt)}}
2522
2523 \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2524 \label{fig+main}%
2525 \end{figure}
2526
2527 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2528 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2529 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2530 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2531 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2532
2533 \section{Centering Test}
2534 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2535 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2536 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned
2537 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2538 have centered labels.
2539 \end{document}
2540 </mtc - tsf>

```

Chapter 5

Messages

Contents

5.1	Introduction	141
5.2	Messages from the minitoc package	143
5.2.1	Informative messages	143
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	151
5.2.2	Warning messages	154
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	159
5.2.3	Error messages	175
5.3	Messages from the mtcoff package	188
5.3.1	Warning messages	188
5.4	Message from the mtcpatchmem package	190

5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and its associates, mtcoff and mtcpatchmem¹.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation, but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).
- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcoff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L^AT_EX does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.

¹ The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may differ.

- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but \LaTeX stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
 - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
 - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.
 - *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
 - *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
 - *command* The name of the command.
 - *counter* The name of a \LaTeX counter.
 - *document* The name of your document, without its *.tex* extension.
 - *extension* The extension part of the name of a file.
 - *file* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the *document.toc* file, the *document.lof* file, or the *document.lot* file).
 - *internal_name* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
 - *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
 - *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
 - *new_title* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsettitle`.
 - *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
 - *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
 - *sequence* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
 - *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
 - *value* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 427.

5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

5.2.1 Informative messages

```
Package: minitoc 2007/01/09 v51 Package minitoc (JPF)
```

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPF” are my initials. This message has no identifier because it is emitted by `\ProvidesPackage`.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0001>
(minitoc)          *** minitoc package, version 51 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0002>
(minitoc)          Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0003>
(minitoc)          chapter level macros available.
```

The `\chapter` sectioning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0004>
(minitoc)          chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The `\chapter` sectioning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the `\section` sectioning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0005>
(minitoc)           compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the hyperref package.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0006>
(minitoc)           document.extension is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the checkfiles option is active, it is skipped.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0007>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0008>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0009>
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the `document.maf` file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 49. This option is the default since version #48.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0010>
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.
```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language² by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0011>
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0012>
(minitoc)                Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.
```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0013>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)                "counter" as "value" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *value*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0014>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)                "internal_name" as
(minitoc)                "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

² The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro `internal_name` with the given *sequence*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0015>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "macro" as "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *sequence* of font commands.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0016>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0017>
(minitoc)           \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "new_title" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0018>
(minitoc)           \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\internal_name` macro which the given *sequence*.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0019>
(minitoc(hints))           No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))           in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0020>
(minitoc)                 old version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0021>
(minitoc)                 Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)                 for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0022>
(minitoc)                 Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)                 for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0023>
(minitoc)                 part level macros available.
```

The `\part` sectioning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0024>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINITOCs FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0025>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0026>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *file*.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0027>
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0028>
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectioning command is available but the `\chapter` sectioning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0029>
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectioning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0030>
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.

```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0031>
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0032>
(minitoc)             This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)             a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)             incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)             We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0033>
(minitoc)             Writing document.extension.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0034>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0035>
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dopartlof` command prepares the `partlof` auxiliary files for partlofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0036>
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dosectlof` command prepares the `sectlof` auxiliary files for sectlofs from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0037>
(minitoc) PREPARING MINILOTS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dominilot` command prepares the `minilot` auxiliary files for minilots from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0038>
(minitoc) PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dopartlot` command prepares the `partlot` auxiliary files for partlots from *file*.

Package minitoc Info: <I0039>
(minitoc) PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM *file* on input line *LINE*.

A `\dosectlot` command prepares the `sectlot` auxiliary files for sectlots from *file*.

5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0040>
(minitoc(hints))           The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))           loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))           You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))           documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.27 on page 67.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0041>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.24 on page 63.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0042>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 60.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0043>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 47. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195] compatible with `minitoc`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0044>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the memoir class, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 62.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0045>
(minitoc(hints))          The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))          has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))          on input line LINE.
```

A minitoc preparation command has been invoked more than once.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0046>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 47.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0047>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 61.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0048>
(minitoc(hints))           Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))           hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))           because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))           commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))           without any previous check.

```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0049>
(minitoc(hints))           ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))           Some hints are eventually given below.

```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <I0050>
(minitoc)                  The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                  The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                  will not be available.
(minitoc)                  Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                  or from the CTAN archives.

```

The `LANGUAGE.mld` has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the `LANGUAGE` language option will not be available.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <I0051>
(minitoc)                  The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                  The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                  will not be available.
(minitoc)                  Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                  or from the CTAN archives.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

5.2.2 Warning messages

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0001>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectioning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0002>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectioning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0003>
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0004>
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0005>
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.

```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0006>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.

```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0007>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.

```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0008>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0009>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0010>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0011>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0012>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0013>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0014>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0015>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0016>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.

```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0017>
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.

```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0018>
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

```

Package minitoc Warning: <W0019>
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.

```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0020>
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```



You are using an obsolete version of \LaTeX , but the `minitoc` package will try to continue. It would be better to update your \LaTeX installation.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```



Your version of \LaTeX is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the `minitoc` package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your \LaTeX installation as soon as possible.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0093>
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The list of the missing files is given in the W0094 warning message.

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0094>
(minitoc)                Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)                ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0023>
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectioning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The hyperref package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectioning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 59.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0024>
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))          in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the *document.log* file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0025>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `alphanum` package which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0026>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsart` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0027>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0028>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \chapter command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0029>
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0030>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The \part command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0031>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))           without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))           but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))           which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))           loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))           You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))           ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0032>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))           too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))           dated of 2005/04/18 at least.
```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0033>
(minitoc(hints))           The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0034>
(minitoc(hints))           The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The caption2 package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69. Note that the caption2 package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the caption package.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0035>
(minitoc(hints))           The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0036>
(minitoc(hints))           The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0037>
(minitoc(hints))           The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 67.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0038>
(minitoc(hints))           The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 69.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0039>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The \section command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0040>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))           with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. See note 18 on page 50.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0041>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0042>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0043>
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0044>
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0045>
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0046>
(minitoc(hints))                You have attempted to insert
                                empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0047>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                             empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0048>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                             empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0049>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                             empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0050>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                             command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0051>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                             command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0052>
(minitoc(hints))                You have invoked an obsolete
(minitoc(hints))                command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0053>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0054>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0055>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))                and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0056>
(minitoc(hints))                You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))                \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))                hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))                option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page 29.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0057>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some `minilofs` (via `\minilof`), but the `minilofs` have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0058>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some `minilots` (via `\minilot`), but the `minilots` have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0059>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some `minitocs` (via `\minitoc`), but the `minitocs` have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0060>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))                but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some `partlofs` (via `\partlof`), but the `partlofs` have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0061>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0062>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0063>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0064>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0065>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0066>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))           but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the `document.lof` file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0067>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))           \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the `document.lot` file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0068>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))           \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))           nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the `document.toc` file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0069>
(minitoc(hints))           You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))           \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))           nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the `document.lof` file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0070>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the `document.lot` file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0071>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the `document.toc` file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0072>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the `document.lof` file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0073>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the `document.lot` file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0074>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0075>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))                but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0076>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))                but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0077>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))                but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0078>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))                but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0079>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))                but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0080>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))                but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0081>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))                but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0082>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))                but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0083>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))                but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0084>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))      use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is incompatible with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0085>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is incompatible with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.



```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0086>
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 72.

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0087>
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 72.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0088>
(minitoc(hints))           The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The romannum package alters the numbering of some sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.40 on page 72.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0089>
(minitoc(hints))           The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.41 on page 72.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0090>
(minitoc(hints))           The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.42 on page 72.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0091>
(minitoc(hints))           The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The captcont package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.43 on page 73.

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0092>
(minitoc(hints))           The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))           loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The hangcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.47 on page 76.

5.2.3 Error messages

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0001>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectioning command available to use the `\mtcfixglossary` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0002>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectioning command available to use the `\mtcfixindex` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0003>
(minitoc)                Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0004>
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0005>
(minitoc)           Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0006>
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)           Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN
```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0007>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0008>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG!depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0009>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG!).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0010>
(minitoc) \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0011>
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc) (ARG1).
(minitoc) It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc) (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0012>
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc) (ARG2).
(minitoc) It should be a feature param
(minitoc) (before, after, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, or `thispagestyle`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0013>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0014>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0015>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc, ...`, `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0016>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)          pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0017>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)          argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0018>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)          argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists³ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0019>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0020>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists³ :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

³ O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0021>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0022>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0023>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are incompatible. You should verify them.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0024>
(minitoc)           The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)           first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectioning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a `minitoc` or a `secttoc`).

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0025>
(minitoc)           The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)           first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are incompatible. One is likely to be misspelt.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0026>
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to `chapter`) or be `part`, `chapter`, or `section`.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0027>
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfixindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section
```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0028>
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.
```

Your version of the memoir class is really incompatible with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0029>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0030>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect
```


A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0031>
(minitoc)          Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0032>
(minitoc)          You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)          outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0033>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a `minitoc` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `sectoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0034>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0035>
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0036>
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue

```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0037>
(minitoc)           The \command command is incompatible
(minitoc)           with the document class.
```

```
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
```

```
...
```

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
```

```
Correct the source code.
```

```
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (*\command*) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0038>
(minitoc)           Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)           A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)           LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)           We will try to continue with
(minitoc)           current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory *LANGUAGE.mld* language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

5.3 Messages from the `mtcoff` package

The `mtcoff` package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

5.3.1 Warning messages

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0001>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0002>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0003>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0004>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0005>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0006>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0007>
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the `document.log` file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0008>
(mtcoff)                The macro \string\kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

```
Package mtcpatchmem Info: <M0001>
Package mtcpatchmem Info: mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class.
```

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter 12 on page 428.

Chapter 6

Jargon

Tables

6.1	Category codes	197
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	197
6.3	Standard document classes	198
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	200
6.5	Various encodings	201
6.6	Most common font encodings	212
6.7	Most common font families	213
6.8	Most common font series	213
6.9	Most common font shapes	213
6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	213
6.11	Author commands for fonts	214
6.12	Some systems derived from T _E X and L ^A T _E X	215

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages, and from [3, 4, 97, 100, 146, 147, 157, 163, 164, 165, 176, 177, 180, 189, 195, 197, 198, 244].

- .aux** The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a L^AT_EX document. It carries some information from a L^AT_EX run to the next.
- .cls** The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via `\documentclass`.
- .dtx** The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a L^AT_EX package or class. This file is often associated with a `.ins` file to generate the package or class. Compiling a `.dtx` file with L^AT_EX generates the documentation.
- .F** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Fnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .G** The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Gnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.

- .H** The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Hnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.
- .ins** The suffix of the name for an installation file of a L^AT_EX package or class. When compiled with L^AT_EX, it extracts the files of the package or class from an *.dtx* file.
- .lof** The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
- .log** The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
- .lot** The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
- .M** The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Mnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minitoc.
- .maf** The suffix of the name of the file generated by the `listfiles` package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
- .mld** The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
- .mlf** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.mlfnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .mlo** The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a *.mld* file; hence the *.mld* file must load a *.mlo* file.
- .mlt** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.mltmn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .mtc** The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.mtcmn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the minitoc.
- .P** The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Pnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the parttoc.
- .plf** The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.plfnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.
- .plt** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.pltmn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
- .ptc** The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.ptcmn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the parttoc.
- .S** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.Snn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.
- .slf** The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.slfnn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlof.
- .slt** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.sltmn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.
- .stc** The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is *.stcmn* where *nn* is the absolute number of the secttoc.

- .sty** The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.
 - .T** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Tnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
 - .tex** The suffix of the name of a \TeX or \LaTeX normal source file.
 - .toc** The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
 - .U** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Unn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
 - .V** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Vnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.
- absolute numbering** The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.
- abstract** The abstract package [251] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.
- adjustment** Some `minitoc` commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`, `\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.
- after** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.
- alnumsec** The `alnumsec` package [152] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. It’s output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [85]), but you can use the standard \LaTeX sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.42 on page 72).
- alphanum** The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [85], by Felix BRAUN, is incompatible with the `minitoc` package.
- AMS** The American Mathematical Society. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with the `minitoc` package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.



amsart, amsart.cls A document class for articles, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is incompatible with the `minitoc` package.

amsbook, amsbook.cls A document class for books, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). This class is compatible with the `minitoc` package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 63.

amsproc, amsproc.cls A document class for conference proceedings, provided by the American Mathematical Society (\mathcal{AMS}). Unfortunately, this class is incompatible with the `minitoc` package.

Antomega Antomega [150] (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* (Λ), based on the original `omega.sty` file of the Omega project (Ω). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (`.mld`) use titles taken from Antomega: `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `latvian.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, `russian2o.mld`, and `spanish3.mld`.

appendices See appendix below.

appendix The appendix package [252] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for example, for per chapter/section appendices. If this package is used with `minitoc`, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 60).

Arabi `Arabi` [135] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` come from the `arabic.ldf` and `farsi.ldf` files of this system.

ArabTeX `ArabTeX` [154, 155] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in `arab.mld` (or `arabic.mld`), `arab2.mld` and `hebrew.mld` come from `ArabTeX`, while those of `hebrew2.mld` come from `babel` [38, 39].

ArmTeX `ArmTeX` [101] is a package (prepared by Serguei D'ACHIAN, Arak DALALYAN and Vardan AKOPIAN) to prepare \LaTeX documents in the armenian language. The titles in `armenian.mld` come from `ArmTeX`.

article A standard \LaTeX document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

\AtBeginDocument This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

- \AtEndDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.
- autoconfiguration** Since version #28, `minitoc` detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.
- auxiliary** During the preparation of a document, the \LaTeX system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are `document.aux` (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), `document.toc` for the table of contents, `document.lof` for the list of figures, and `document.lot` for the list of tables. The `minitoc` package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are `document.extension`, the table 1.11 on page 51 lists the possible extensions.
- babel** The `babel` package [38, 39] (by Johannes BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write \LaTeX documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the `babel` package.
- BangTeX** A package for typesetting documents in the `bangla` language using the \TeX/\LaTeX systems; see [202].
- before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.
- BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in \LaTeX documents. Distributed with \LaTeX . See [180, 206, 207].
- bibtopic** A \LaTeX package [16] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.
- bibunits** The `bibunits` package [121] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, `,` and KOMA-Script classes [147, 195].
- book** A standard \LaTeX document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).
- cappuccino** See “minutes” below.
- captcont** The `captcont` package [95] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [96] in particular.

caption The `caption` package [224] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such `figure` and `table` and cooperates with many other packages.

caption2 The¹ `caption2` package [223] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular `caption` package [224] and has been superseded by the new release of the regular `caption` package version 3.0 in December 2003. `caption2` is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the `caption` package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the `caption2` package should be used instead of the `caption` package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

CATALOG A plain text file which contains basic infos about the `minitoc` package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

catcode Short for “category code”. In² the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1 on the following page. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ book*” led you to believe that there were just two types—the escape character and the others—and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols `{` and `}`. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

ccaption The `ccaption` package [255] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

Chapter 0 Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the `minitoc` package: the `minitocs` appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (`\firstchapteris` and `co.`). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in `minitoc` version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 46.

chapterbib The `chapterbib` package [12] allows multiple bibliographies in a $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ document, including items `\cite'd` in more than one bibliography. Despite the name

¹ This text comes from the documentation of the `caption` package. The `caption` and `caption2` packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

² This definition is taken from “*The $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ book*” [143].

Table 6.1: Category codes

Category	Meaning
0	Escape character (\ usually)
1	Beginning of group ({ usually)
2	End of group (} usually)
3	Math shift (\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab (& usually)
5	End of line (<i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter (# usually)
7	Superscript (^ usually)
8	Subscript (_ usually)
9	Ignored character (<i>null</i> usually)
10	Space (␣ usually)
11	Letter (A, . . . , Z and a, . . . , z)
12	Other character (none of the above or below)
13	Active character (~ usually)
14	Comment character (% usually)
15	Invalid character (<i>delete</i> usually)

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

“chapterbib”, the bibliographies are for each included file, not necessarily for each chapter.

checkfiles A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.74.2 on page 374.

CJK The CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare L^AT_EX documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into T_EX since some of the

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, . . .
proc	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltxnews	For preparing the announcement of a L ^A T _E X release; analog to the article class.
report	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, . . .
book	For real books.
letter	For letters; as this class has no sectioning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT _E X ^a instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

^a <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

values used for the encodings' second bytes are reserved for control characters: '{', '}', and '\'. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in L^AT_EX; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [176, 177]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the .mlo files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.12 on page 41.

class The **class**³ is the first information L^AT_EX needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

```
\documentclass[options]{class}
```

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes. The L^AT_EX 2_ε distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 56.

CMR For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in english.

Computer Modern A set of fonts [142] designed by Donald KNUTH for T_EX. Initially they were built with METAFONT [102, 144] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

³ This note is extracted from [198], then adapted.

counter A \TeX register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in \TeX , but \LaTeX uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from \TeX , $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$ [87], allows more counters. Omega (Ω) also offers more counters.

CTAN The *Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the \TeX related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are:

- `ftp.dante.de` (Koeln, Germany)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.dante.de/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de`
- `ftp.tex.ac.uk` (Cambridge, England, UK)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
 - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/`
 - NFS mountable from `nfs.tex.ac.uk:/tex-archive`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.tex.ac.uk/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk`
- `tug.ctan.org` (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
 - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/archive)`
 - World Wide Web access on `http://www.ctan.org/`
 - Administrator: `mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org`

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

de.comp.text.tex The Usenet news group about \TeX and \LaTeX , in german.

depth In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectioning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectioning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the `secnumdepth` counter), and the entries for a given sectioning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectioning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 on the next page for the depths of the sectioning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the `parttoes`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

descriptor (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For \TeX (and \LaTeX), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectioning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

devanagari.sty The *Devanāgarī for T_EX* (Devanāgarī) package [204] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with T_EX. Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for T_EX.

duplex2v.pro A PostScript header file, which tries to activate recto-verso printing. It works with some HP and Canon PostScript printers.

em A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

emk An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the minitoc package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 9 on page 224.

en-bst.bst A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [118] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

encoding This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended T_EX). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [93, 104, 238]), etc. See table 6.5 on the next page and [166].

environment An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env} ... \end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

ethiop A L^AT_EX package [29] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [38, 39].

extension The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
<code>ansinew</code>	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
<code>applemac</code>	Macintosh encoding.
<code>ascii</code>	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
<code>cp1250</code>	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
<code>cp1251</code>	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
<code>cp1252</code>	Synonym for <code>ansinew</code> .
<code>cp437</code>	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
<code>cp437de</code>	IBM 437 code page (German version).
<code>cp850</code>	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
<code>cp852</code>	IBM 852 code page.
<code>cp855</code>	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
<code>cp865]</code>	IBM 865 code page.
<code>cp866]</code>	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
<code>decmulti</code>	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
<code>latin1</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
<code>latin2</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
<code>latin3</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, <code>latin5</code> is the preferred character set for Turkish.
<code>latin4</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
<code>latin5</code>	Is essentially the same as <code>latin1</code> , except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
<code>next</code>	Next encoding.

8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 51 and 2.5 on page 56. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

farsi.sty See Farsi \TeX below.

Farsi \TeX A package [109] to typeset a document in the `farsi` (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for \LaTeX 2.09. See also sections 13.52 on page 459 and 13.53 on page 459.

features A feature (for the `minitoc` package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Three features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the mini-table), and a “thispagestyle” feature, which is exe-

cuted with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

filecontents A special \LaTeX environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.12 on page 41) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

\firstchapteris An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 46.

\firstpartis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\firstsectionis Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

\FloatBarrier A macro from the `placeins` package [10]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

fminitoc.bib A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

fminitoc.dtx The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.ist This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.lan A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

fminitoc.pdf The french documentation in PDF format.

fminitoc.ps The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `fmk` and `pmk` scripts).

fmk An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 9 on page 224.

fncychap The `fncychap` package [170] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard \LaTeX 2 ϵ document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.38 on page 72).

- fr.comp.text.tex** The Usenet newsgroup about T_EX and L^AT_EX, in french.
- franc.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- frbib.sty** A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- fr-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [118] tool to add an URL field.
- frnew.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- guarani** A L^AT_EX package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [32] and section 13.72 on page 470.
- hangcaption** The `hangcaption` package [138] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992, L^AT_EX2.09).
- Hindi** For the Hindi language, see the Devanāgarī package [204] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available.
- hint** An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).
- hints** An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the consistency between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).
- HL^AT_EX** A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* (Λ) (see below). Written by KO^AUNGH^I Un [146, in korean]. It uses special Hangŭl or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.
- hyperlink** In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamically found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.
- hyperref** The `hyperref` package [214] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in L^AT_EX to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for HyperT_EX dvi processors, for embedded `pdfmark` commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (`dvips` and `dvipson`), for `dvipwindo`, for `pdfTEX`, for `TEX4ht`, and for V_TE_X's pdf and HTML backends.

This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the HyperTeX project, described at <http://xxx.lanl.gov/hypertext/>. It extends the functionality of all the L^AT_EX cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

- ifmtarg** The `ifmtarg` package [260] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty (“empty” meaning zero or more spaces only).
- imk** An example of shell script, which prepares the `minitoc` package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`. See item 9 on page 224.
- insection** The `insection` package option loads the `placeins` package [10] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use `sectlofs` or `sectlots` in your document. See section 1.2 on page 28.
- insertion** The insertion commands of the `minitoc` package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are:
- ```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```
- INSTALL** A text file describing the installation of the `minitoc` package. See chapter 7 on page 222.
- \jobname** A T<sub>E</sub>X primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by T<sub>E</sub>X (or L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.
- jura** The `jura` class [85], by Felix BRAUN, is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. It is used for german judicial documents.
- k-loose** A `minitoc` package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `loose` package option for standard classes.
- k-tight** A `minitoc` package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the `tight` package option for standard classes.
- KOMA-Script** KOMA-Script [147, 195] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (`scrartcl`, `scrbook`, `scrletter`, `scrletter2`, and `scrreprt`) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

The `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl` classes are compatible with the `minitoc` package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 47). The `scrlettr` and `scrlettr2` have no sectioning commands, so the `minitoc` package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the  $\LaTeX$  kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard  $\LaTeX$  classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains replacements for the three standard classes `book`, `report`, and `article`. There is also a replacement for the standard class `letter`.

**Lambda** The  $\LaTeX$  format (in the  $\TeX$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega ( $\Omega$ ) is called “*Lambda*” ( $\Lambda$ ).

**Lamed** The  $\LaTeX$  format (in the  $\TeX$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of *Aleph* ( $\aleph$ ) is called “*Lamed*” ( $\beth$ ).

**$\LaTeX$**   $\LaTeX$  [156] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books.  $\LaTeX$  uses  $\TeX$  [143, 145] as its formatting engine (from [198]).

In fact,  $\LaTeX$  is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout.  $\LaTeX$  was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [156]. It uses the  $\TeX$  formatter as its typesetting engine. These days  $\LaTeX$  is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the  $\LaTeX$  package was (deeply) updated by the  $\LaTeX3$  team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of  $\LaTeX2.09$  some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ .

$\LaTeX$  is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to  $\LaTeX$  in an ASCII environment, you type `LaTeX`.  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed `LaTeX2e`.

**$\LaTeX2.09$**  An obsolete version of the  $\LaTeX$  program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it<sup>4</sup>. Use the current version of  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ , which is supported and much more efficient.

**$\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$**  The current version of the  $\LaTeX$  program, after 1994; it is supported.

**$\LaTeX3$**  The future version of  $\LaTeX$ , whose development is still in progress.

**leaders** A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regulary spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

**letter** A standard document class to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectioning commands nor structure, the `minitoc` package is pointless (hence incompatible) with them.

<sup>4</sup> Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.

- lipsum** The lipsum package [123] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).
- listfiles** An option of the minitoc package. It creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run) in the *document.maf* file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 49.
- LOF** An acronym for “list of figures”.
- lofdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.
- loose** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.
- LOT** An acronym for “list of tables”.
- lotdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.
- LPPL** The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at <http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>
- Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.
- ltxdoc** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class, for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the *article* document class; see above.
- ltxnews** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class, for preparing the announcement of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the *article* document class; see above.
- \makeatletter** and **\makeatother** Many<sup>5</sup> internal commands of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands **\makeatletter** and **\makeatother** make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands should never be used in a package or class file.
- makefile** A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.
- mcaption** The mcaption package [131] provides a *margincap* environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

---

<sup>5</sup> Informations from [189, page 843].

- memoir, memoir.cls** A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [257, 258]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 62.
- mini-bibliography** See **minibbl** below.
- mini-list** Synonym for “mini-table” below.
- mini-lof** See “minilof” below.
- mini-lot** See “minilot” below.
- mini-table** This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only table of contents for chapters.
- mini-toc** See “minitoc” below.
- minibbl** Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 57.
- minilof** A list of figures for a chapter.
- minilofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.
- minilot** A list of tables for a chapter.
- minilotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.
- minitoc** A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).
- minitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.bug** A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 53.
- minitocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.
- minitoc.dtx** The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.
- minitoc-hyper.sty** A special version of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA to work with the powerful hyperref package [214]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*



- minitoc.ins** The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with  $\LaTeX$  produces most of the files of the minitoc package.
- minitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.l** A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in `minitoc.l` are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.
- minitoc.lan** A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.pdf** The english documentation in PDF format.
- minitoc.pre** This file contains a  $\LaTeX$  preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.ps** The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `emk` and `pmk` scripts).
- minitoc.sty** This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- minitoc.sum** A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 77.
- minitoc-texmf.zip** A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.
- minutes** The minutes package [169] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☹ in the installation chapter!
- MonTeX** MonTeX [97, 100] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russianc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [99]. The following description is extracted from [100].  
 MonTeX is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).
- Mongolian** The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.



**Xalx** or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

**Buryat** is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, `\xa1x{H/h}`) for marking the difference to /s/.

**Bicig** (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root `bicig` whereas the Manju commands have the name root `bithe`.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

**Manju** Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [98] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

**MS-DOS** (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the `minitoc` point of view, its main drawback is the use of filenames with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

**mtc-2c.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a two columns page layout.

**mtc-2nd.tex** An example of document using the `minitoc` package and its `french2` language option.

**mtc-add.bib** A small bibliographic data base for the `mtc-add.tex` and `mtc-ads.tex` example documents.

- mtc-add.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the `tocbibind` package [253] with `minitoc`. See section 4.3 on page 89.
- mtc-ads.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the `tocbibind` package [253] with `minitoc`. See section 4.4 on page 94. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.
- mtc-amm.tex** An example file showing the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document with the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-apx.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices.
- mtc-art.tex** An example of document (article class) using the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-bk.tex** An example of document (book or report class) using the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-bo.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a two columns page layout and using the `tocloft` package [250].
- mtc-ch0.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a starred first chapter.
- mtc-cri.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with starred parts and chapters.
- mtc-fo1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-fo2.tex** Another example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-gap.tex** An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- mtc-hi1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments.
- mtc-hi2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:
- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
  - `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.
- mtc-hia.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an article class document.
- mtc-hir.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a report class document.
- mtc-hop.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `scrbook` document class.
- mtc-liv.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a book with customized table of contents an `minitocs`.

- mtc-mem.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class.
- mtc-mm1.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the memoir class, if you want to change some fonts.
- mtc-mu.tex** A document using a minitoc set in a wrapfigure environment with the wrapfig package [11].
- mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [94].
- mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class [147, 195], scrreprt.
- mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is predated by some starred chapters.
- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocbibind package [253].
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [189, page 58], modernized.
- mtc-tlo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [250] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables.
- mtc-tsfc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [96].
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for a unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
- mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version incompatible with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode (`\mu` means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.
- multibib** The multibib package [122] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [121] or chapterbib [12], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.
- needspace** The needspace package [249] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

| Encoding      | Description                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| T1            | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X extended text (“Cork”)            |
| TS1           | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X symbols (Latin)                   |
| T2A, T2B, T2C | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (Cyrillic)                   |
| T3            | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X phonetic alphabet                 |
| TS3           | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols) |
| T4            | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (African languages)          |
| T5            | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (Vietnamese)                 |
| T7            | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (reserved for Greek)         |
| OT1           | T <sub>E</sub> X text (as defined by Donald K <sub>N</sub> UTH)   |
| OT2           | T <sub>E</sub> X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)           |
| OT3           | International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)                        |
| OT4           | T <sub>E</sub> X text with extensions for the Polish language     |
| OT6           | T <sub>E</sub> X text with extensions for the Armenian language   |
| OML           | T <sub>E</sub> X math italic (Donald K <sub>N</sub> UTH)          |
| OMS           | T <sub>E</sub> X math symbols (Donald K <sub>N</sub> UTH)         |
| OMX           | T <sub>E</sub> X math large symbols (Donald K <sub>N</sub> UTH)   |
| X2            | L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X extended text (Cyrillic)          |
| U             | Unknown                                                           |
| L<xx>         | A local encoding                                                  |
| LTH           | Encoding used for the Thai language                               |
| LV1           | Encoding used with some V <sub>T</sub> E <sub>X</sub> fonts       |
| LY1           | Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software                      |

**NFSS** The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> font selection system [165] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Every text font in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X has five *attributes*:

**encoding** This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X are K<sub>N</sub>UTH’s “T<sub>E</sub>X text” encoding (OT1), and the “T<sub>E</sub>X text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the T<sub>E</sub>X Users Group members during a T<sub>E</sub>X Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [166].

**family** The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For example, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K<sub>N</sub>UTH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

**series** How heavy or expanded a font is. For example, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

**shape** The form of the letters within a font family. For example, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

**size** The design size of the font, for example “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6.

Table 6.7: Most common font families

| Family            | Description                     |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <code>cmr</code>  | Computer Modern Roman           |
| <code>cmss</code> | Computer Modern Sans            |
| <code>cmtt</code> | Computer Modern Typewriter      |
| <code>cmm</code>  | Computer Modern Math Italic     |
| <code>cmsy</code> | Computer Modern Math Symbols    |
| <code>cmex</code> | Computer Modern Math Extensions |
| <code>ptm</code>  | Adobe Times                     |
| <code>phv</code>  | Adobe Helvetica                 |
| <code>pcr</code>  | Adobe Courier                   |

Table 6.8: Most common font series

| Series          | Description   |
|-----------------|---------------|
| <code>m</code>  | Medium        |
| <code>b</code>  | Bold          |
| <code>bx</code> | Bold extended |
| <code>sb</code> | Semi-bold     |
| <code>c</code>  | Condensed     |

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

| Shape           | Description                           |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>n</code>  | Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”) |
| <code>it</code> | Italic                                |
| <code>sl</code> | Slanted (or “oblique”)                |
| <code>sc</code> | Caps and small caps                   |

Table 6.10: The five font parameters for some fonts

| $\LaTeX$ specification         | Font                                 | $\TeX$ name                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| OT1 <code>cmr m n 10</code>    | Computer Modern Roman 10 point       | <code>cmr10</code>         |
| OT1 <code>cmss m sl 1pc</code> | Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica  | <code>cmssi12</code>       |
| OML <code>cmm m it 10pt</code> | Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point | <code>cmmi10</code>        |
| T1 <code>ptm b it 1in</code>   | Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch       | <code>ptmb8t at 1in</code> |

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for example a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for example `10pt` or `1.5in` or `3mm`; if no unit is specified, `pt` is assumed. These five parameters specify every  $\LaTeX$  font, see table 6.10, for example.

These five parameters are displayed whenever  $\LaTeX$  gives an overfull box warning, for example:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 6.11: Author commands for fonts

| Author command                                    | Attribute | Value in article class |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| <code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code> | family    | cmr                    |
| <code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code> | family    | cmss                   |
| <code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code> | family    | cmtt                   |
| <code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code> | series    | m                      |
| <code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code> | series    | bx                     |
| <code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>  | shape     | n                      |
| <code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>  | shape     | it                     |
| <code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>  | shape     | sl                     |
| <code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>  | shape     | sc                     |
| <code>\tiny</code>                                | size      | 5pt                    |
| <code>\scriptsize</code>                          | size      | 7pt                    |
| <code>\footnotesize</code>                        | size      | 8pt                    |
| <code>\small</code>                               | size      | 9pt                    |
| <code>\normalsize</code>                          | size      | 10pt                   |
| <code>\large</code>                               | size      | 12pt                   |
| <code>\Large</code>                               | size      | 14.4pt                 |
| <code>\LARGE</code>                               | size      | 17.28pt                |
| <code>\huge</code>                                | size      | 20.74pt                |
| <code>\Huge</code>                                | size      | 24.88pt                |

The table 6.11 lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes<sup>6</sup>.

**nocheckfiles** A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

**nohints** A package option of minitoc. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

**nolistfiles** An option of the minitoc package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 49.

**notoccite** This option of the minitoc package loads the `notoccite` package [9] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 49.

**Omega** The Omega typesetting system<sup>7</sup> ( $\Omega$ ) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of  $\TeX$  that is aimed primarily at improving  $\TeX$ 's multilingual abilities.

When the  $\TeX$  program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then  $\TeX$  has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze  $\TeX$ , mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the  $\TeX$  code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

<sup>6</sup> The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

<sup>7</sup> Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [125, 126, 129, 212, 213].

Table 6.12: Some systems derived from T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

$$\begin{array}{rcccl}
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Omega} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Lambda} \\
 & & + & & & & + \\
 \text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\
 \hline
 & & \mathbf{\aleph} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\beth}
 \end{array}$$

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of T<sub>E</sub>X. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for T<sub>E</sub>X users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X format (in the T<sub>E</sub>X meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” (Λ). Extending Omega with the ε-T<sub>E</sub>X extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” (ℵ) [34, 119] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTI. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for *Aleph* is known as “*Lamed*” (beth).

**package** Packages<sup>8</sup> are a very important feature of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. These are extensions to the basic L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands that are written to files with names that end with .sty and are loaded with the command `\usepackage` in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.


- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- **AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society, should be in any installation<sup>9</sup>.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X usage, but all are useful.

**partlof** A list of figures for a part.

**partlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

<sup>8</sup> This info is taken from [148, page 12–13] and adapted.

<sup>9</sup> They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

- partlot** A list of tables for a part.
- partlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.
- parttoc** A table of contents for a part.
- parttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the parttoCs.
- PDF** Portable Document Format [115]. A descendant of the Postscript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.
- placeins** The `placeins` package [10] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flatter` package (described in [162] and [189, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 28.
- placeins.txt** A plain text file containing the documentation of the `placeins` package [10].
-  **PLATEX** A version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the polish (`polski`) language. See [199, 247]. But the *same* name refers also to a version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the japanese language, P<sub>ε</sub>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>ε</sub>X [133].
- pmk** An example of shell script to prepare the `minitoc` package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 9 on page 224.
- PostScript** A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.
- preamble** In the main file of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.
- preparation** The preparation commands of the `minitoc` package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are:
- ```
\doparttoc, \dopartlof, \dopartlot, (part level)
\dominitoc, \dominilof, \dominilot, (chapter level)
\dosecttoc, \dosectlof, \dosectlot, (section level)
\mtcprepare&(all levels)
```
- proc** A standard L^AT_EX document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the `minitoc` package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.
- pseudo-chapter** Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the `minitoc` package. See section 1.3.4 on page 32.

quotchap The quotchap package [232] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard L^AT_EX 2_ε document classes: book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.39 on page 72).

README is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

report A standard L^AT_EX document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

rmk An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 9 on page 224.

romannum The romannum package [259] changes the numbers (for sectioning commands) generated by L^AT_EX from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [248]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.40 on page 72).

rubber `rubber` [22] is a wrapper for L^AT_EX and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a L^AT_EX source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B_WT_EX**, **makeindex**, **Metapost**, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

scartcl See KOMA-Script above.

scrbook See KOMA-Script above.

scrreprt See KOMA-Script above.

sectioning commands These are the L^AT_EX commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectioning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the article and proc classes), some have no sectioning commands (like the letter class). In the later case, the minitoc package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the minitoc commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the minitoc commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the minitoc package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the minitoc commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 25. In non-standard document classes, sectioning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the minitoc package.


sectlof A list of figures for a section.

sectlofdepth This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlofs.

sectlot A list of tables for a section.

- sectlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlots.
- sectsty** The `sectsty` package [182] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard \LaTeX 2 ϵ document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.28 on page 67).
- secttoc** A table of contents for a section.
- secttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the secttocs.
- sfheaders** The `sfheaders` package [172] (for \LaTeX 2 ϵ) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.41 on page 72).
- shell** In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**cs**h), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).
- shorttext** An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 56.
- shorttoc** The `shorttoc` package [105] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.
- SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [167, 168].
- \LaTeX** A version of \LaTeX customized for the swedish language. See [181].
- splitbib** A \LaTeX package [179] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...
- stdclsdv** The `stdclsdv` package [248] is intended to be used by the authors of \LaTeX packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.
- strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.
- subfig** The `subfig` package [96] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.

- subfigure** The subfigure package [94] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [96].
- suffix** See “extension” above.
- TDS** The T_EX Directory Structure [235, 236]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T_EX system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T_EX files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.
- T_EX** T_EX is a computer program created by Donald K_NUTH [143]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. K_NUTH started writing the T_EX typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T_EX as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T_EX is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T_EX is converging to π and is now at 3.141592.
- T_EX is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T_EX becomes TeX.
- thailatex** The thailatex package [183] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [167, 168].
- thispagestyle** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.
- tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is loose.
- titlesec** The titlesec package [33] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.
- titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.
- The `titletoc.sty` file is not part of the titlesec package; it’s an independent package, but it’s described in the titlesec package documentation [33].
- tmk** A script file which creates a TDS hierarchy [235, 236] (to be adjusted to your system).
- TOC** Acronym for “table of contents”.
- tocbibind** The tocbibind package [253] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 47.

- tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.
- tocloft** The `tocloft` package [250] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the `tocloft` package and the `minitoc` package, see section 2.21 on page 61 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.
- TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
-  **token** A token¹⁰ is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “category code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about \TeX ’s tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for \TeX to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For example, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{₁’ already inside token lists of \TeX would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{₁₂’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. \TeX ’s digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.
- UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the `minitoc` point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).
- UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.
- urlbst** A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [118], to add a `webpage` \BibTeX entry type, and add support for general `url` and `lastchecked` fields, to (most) \BibTeX .bst files. Optionally adds basic support for `eprint` and `doi` fields, and `hypertext/hyperref` support, too.
- UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with \TeX . See table 6.2 on page 197.
- varsects** The `varsects` package [228] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard \LaTeX 2_ε document classes:

¹⁰This definition is taken from “*The \TeX book*” [143].

article, book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.33 on page 69).

- wrapfig** The `wrapfig` package [11] provides the `wrapfigure` and `wratable` environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.
- xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.
- xr** The `xr` package [89] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the `minitoc` package to implement the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc`). If you use also the `hyperref` package [214], use `xr-hyper` [90] in place of the `xr` package.

Chapter 7

Installation

Tables

7.1 List of files (<code>minitoc.l</code>)	223
7.2 A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files	226

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #51).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.l`. See table 7.1 on the following page. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

(0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.



(1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself¹.

The table 1.7 on page 36 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where $\text{L}^{\text{T}}\text{E}^{\text{X}} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds the `.sty` files.

(2) Informative text files:

¹ The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the `minitoc` package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1)

<p>class (0) : -<code>minitoc.ins</code> -<code>minitoc.dtx</code> -<code>fminitoc.dtx</code></p> <p>class (1) : -<code>minitoc.sty</code> -<code>mtcoff.sty</code> -<code>mtcmess.sty</code> -<code>mtcpatchmem.sty</code> -<code>acadian.mld</code> -<code>acadien.mld</code> -<code>afrikaan.mld</code> -<code>afrikaans.mld</code> -<code>albanian.mld</code> -<code>american.mld</code> -<code>arab.mld</code> -<code>arab2.mld</code> -<code>arabi.mld</code> -<code>arabic.mld</code> -<code>armenian.mld</code> -<code>australian.mld</code> -<code>austrian.mld</code> -<code>bahasa.mld</code> -<code>bahasai.mld</code> -<code>bahasam.mld</code> -<code>bangla.mld</code> -<code>basque.mld</code> -<code>bicig.mld</code> -<code>bicig2.mld</code> -<code>bicig3.mld</code> -<code>bithe.mld</code> -<code>brazil.mld</code> -<code>brazilian.mld</code> -<code>breton.mld</code> -<code>british.mld</code> -<code>bulgarian.mld</code> -<code>bulgarianb.mld</code> -<code>buryat.mld</code> -<code>buryat2.mld</code> -<code>canadian.mld</code> -<code>canadien.mld</code> -<code>castillan.mld</code> -<code>castillian.mld</code> -<code>catalan.mld</code> -<code>chinese1.mld, chinese1.mlo</code> -<code>chinese2.mld, chinese2.mlo</code> -<code>croatian.mld</code> -<code>czech.mld</code> -<code>danish.mld</code> -<code>devanagari.mld</code> -<code>dutch.mld</code> -<code>english.mld</code> -<code>english1.mld</code> -<code>english2.mld</code> -<code>esperant.mld</code> -<code>esperanto.mld</code> -<code>estonian.mld</code> -<code>ethiopia.mld</code> -<code>ethiopian.mld</code> -<code>ethiopian2.mld</code> -<code>farsi1.mld, farsi1.mlo</code> -<code>farsi2.mld, farsi2.mlo</code> -<code>farsi3.mld</code> -<code>finnish.mld</code></p>	<p>-<code>finnish2.mld</code> -<code>français.mld</code> -<code>french.mld</code> -<code>french1.mld</code> -<code>french2.mld</code> -<code>frenchb.mld</code> -<code>frenchle.mld</code> -<code>frenchpro.mld</code> -<code>galician.mld</code> -<code>german.mld</code> -<code>germanb.mld</code> -<code>germanb2.mld</code> -<code>greek.mld</code> -<code>greek-mono.mld</code> -<code>greek-polydemo.mld</code> -<code>greek-polykatha.mld</code> -<code>guarani.mld</code> -<code>hangul1.mld, hangul1.mlo</code> -<code>hangul2.mld, hangul2.mlo</code> -<code>hangul3.mld, hangul3.mlo</code> -<code>hangul4.mld, hangul4.mlo</code> -<code>hangul-u8.mld,</code> -<code>hangul-u8.mlo</code> -<code>hanja1.mld, hanja1.mlo</code> -<code>hanja2.mld, hanja2.mlo</code> -<code>hanja-u8.mld, hanja-u8.mlo</code> -<code>hebrew.mld</code> -<code>hebrew2.mld</code> -<code>hindi.mld</code> -<code>hindi-modern.mld</code> -<code>hungarian.mld</code> -<code>icelandic.mld</code> -<code>indon.mld</code> -<code>indonesian.mld</code> -<code>interlingua.mld</code> -<code>irish.mld</code> -<code>italian.mld</code> -<code>italian2.mld</code> -<code>japanese.mld, japanese.mlo</code> -<code>japanese2.mld,</code> -<code>japanese2.mlo</code> -<code>japanese3.mld,</code> -<code>japanese3.mlo</code> -<code>japanese4.mld,</code> -<code>japanese4.mlo</code> -<code>japanese5.mld,</code> -<code>japanese5.mlo</code> -<code>japanese6.mld,</code> -<code>japanese6.mlo</code> -<code>kannada.mld</code> -<code>khalkha.mld</code> -<code>latin.mld</code> -<code>latin2.mld</code> -<code>latvian.mld</code> -<code>letton.mld</code> -<code>lithuanian.mld</code> -<code>lowersorbian.mld</code> -<code>lsorbian.mld</code> -<code>magyar.mld</code> -<code>magyar2.mld</code> -<code>magyar3.mld</code> -<code>malay.mld</code> -<code>malayalam-keli.mld</code> -<code>malayalam-omega.mld,</code> -<code>malayalam-omega.mlo</code></p>	<p>-<code>malayalam-rachana.mld</code> -<code>malayalam-rachana2.mld</code> -<code>manju.mld</code> -<code>meyalu.mld</code> -<code>mongol.mld</code> -<code>naustrian.mld</code> -<code>newzealand.mld</code> -<code>ngerman.mld</code> -<code>ngermanb.mld</code> -<code>ngermanb2.mld</code> -<code>norsk.mld</code> -<code>norsk2.mld</code> -<code>nynorsk.mld</code> -<code>nynorsk2.mld</code> -<code>polish.mld</code> -<code>polish2.mld</code> -<code>polski.mld</code> -<code>portuges.mld</code> -<code>portuguese.mld</code> -<code>romanian.mld</code> -<code>romanian2.mld</code> -<code>romanian3.mld</code> -<code>russian.mld</code> -<code>russianb.mld</code> -<code>russianc.mld</code> -<code>russian2m.mld</code> -<code>russian2o.mld</code> -<code>russian-cca.mld,</code> -<code>russian-cca.mlo</code> -<code>russian-cca1.mld,</code> -<code>russian-cca1.mlo</code> -<code>russian-lh.mld,</code> -<code>russian-lh.mlo</code> -<code>russian-lhcyralt.mld,</code> -<code>russian-lhcyralt.mlo</code> -<code>russian-lhcyrkoi.mld,</code> -<code>russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo</code> -<code>russian-lhcyrwin.mld,</code> -<code>russian-lhcyrwin.mlo</code> -<code>samin.mld</code> -<code>scottish.mld</code> -<code>serbian.mld</code> -<code>serbianc.mld</code> -<code>slovak.mld</code> -<code>slovene.mld</code> -<code>spanish.mld</code> -<code>spanish2.mld</code> -<code>spanish3.mld</code> -<code>spanish4.mld</code> -<code>swedish.mld</code> -<code>swedish2.mld</code> -<code>thai.mld, thai.mlo</code> -<code>turkish.mld</code> -<code>uighur.mld</code> -<code>uighur2.mld</code> -<code>uighur3.mld</code> -<code>UKenglish.mld</code> -<code>ukraineb.mld</code> -<code>ukrainian.mld</code> -<code>uppersorbian.mld</code> -<code>USenglish.mld</code> -<code>usorbian.mld</code> -<code>vietnam.mld</code> -<code>vietnamese.mld</code> -<code>welsh.mld</code></p>	<p>-<code>xalx.mld</code> -<code>xalx2.mld</code> -<code>xalx3.mld</code></p> <p>class (2) : -<code>INSTALL, README, TODO,</code> -<code>CATALOG</code> -<code>minitoc.l</code></p> <p>class (3) : -<code>mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-gap.tex, mtc-art.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex,</code> -<code>mtc-tsf.tex</code></p> <p>class (4) : -<code>minitoc.bug</code> -<code>minitoc.sum</code></p> <p>class (5) : -<code>minitoc.ins</code> -<code>minitoc.dtx</code> -<code>minitoc.bib</code> -<code>minitoc.ist</code> -<code>minitoc.lan</code> -<code>minitoc.pre</code> -<code>en-mtc.bst</code> -<code>lamed.eps, lamed.pdf,</code> -<code>lamed.tex</code></p> <p>class (6) : -<code>minitoc.dtx</code> -<code>fminitoc.dtx</code> -<code>fminitoc.bib</code> -<code>fminitoc.ist</code> -<code>fminitoc.lan</code> -<code>minitoc.pre</code> -<code>franc.sty, frbib.sty,</code> -<code>frnew.sty</code> -<code>fr-mtc.bst</code></p> <p>class (7) : -<code>minitoc.pdf</code></p> <p>class (8) : -<code>fminitoc.pdf</code></p> <p>class (9) : -<code>imk, emk, fmk, pmk, xmk,</code> -<code>rmk, tmk</code> -<code>duplex2v.pro</code></p> <p>class (10) : -<code>minitoc-texmk.zip</code></p>
---	---	---	--

- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
 - `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See table 7.1 on the preceding page.
 - `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
 - `CATALOG` contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
 - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mm1.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsf.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated `.pdf` files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 53) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 77).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english, `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` are images to include, `lamed.tex` is the source code². `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.
- (6) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french³.
- (7) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (8) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (9) `pmk` is a shell script⁴ to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’ .imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts⁵ (to be adapted):
- `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files

² Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package (both obsolete), plus conversion into EPS or PDF; hence I prefer to provide also the image files.

³ This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some `.sty` files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

⁴ You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

⁵ In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk`.

necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/whoami/.imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;

- `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
- `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
- `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
- `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
- `tmk`, which creates a TDS-conformant hierarchy [235, 236] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.2 on the next page; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc-texmf.zip`.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but these scripts prepare it (using the `duplex2v.pro` PostScript header file to try printing recto-verso).

- (10) `minitoc-texmf.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the `minitoc` package.

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ finds `.sty` files;
4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (9) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
5. the files of (7) and (8) must be installed as on-line documentation;
6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/whoami/.rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.

- **with `tmk`:**

1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file⁶ of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;
4. the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/whoami/.tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;



⁶ The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc-texmf.zip` file.

Table 7.2: A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the minitoc files

texmf/							
bibtex/		doc/	dvips/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	minitoc/	minitoc/	(H)
(A)	(B)	(C)			(F)	(G)	
		examples/					
		(I)					
(A) <code>fminitoc.bib</code> , <code>minitoc.bib</code> ;		(F) <code>emk</code> , <code>fmk</code> , <code>imk</code> , <code>pmk</code> , <code>rmk</code> , <code>tmk</code> , <code>xmk</code> ;			<code>mtc-art.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-art.tex</code> , <code>mtc-bk.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-bk.tex</code> , <code>mtc-bo.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-bo.tex</code> , <code>mtc-ch0.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-ch0.tex</code> , <code>mtc-cri.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-cri.tex</code> , <code>mtc-fo1.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-fo1.tex</code> , <code>mtc-fo2.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-fo2.tex</code> , <code>mtc-gap.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-gap.tex</code> , <code>mtc-hi1.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-hi1.tex</code> , <code>mtc-hi2.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-hi2.tex</code> , <code>mtc-hia.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-hia.tex</code> , <code>mtc-hir.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-hir.tex</code> ,	<code>mtc-hop.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-hop.tex</code> , <code>mtc-liv.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-liv.tex</code> , <code>mtc-mem.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-mem.tex</code> , <code>mtc-mm1.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-mm1.tex</code> , <code>mtc-mu.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-mu.tex</code> , <code>mtc-sbf.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-sbf.tex</code> , <code>mtc-scr.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-scr.tex</code> , <code>mtc-syn.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-syn.tex</code> , <code>mtc-tbi.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> , <code>mtc-tlc.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> , <code>mtc-tlo.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> , <code>mtc-tsf.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-tsf.tex</code> ;	
(B) <code>en-mtc.bst</code> , <code>fr-mtc.bst</code> ;		(G) <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> , <code>minitoc.dtx</code> , <code>minitoc.ins</code> ;					
(C) <code>INSTALL</code> , <code>README</code> , <code>TODO</code> , <code>CATALOG</code> , <code>fminitoc.lan</code> , <code>fminitoc.pdf</code> , <code>lamed.eps</code> , <code>lamed.pdf</code> , <code>lamed.tex</code> , <code>minitoc.bug</code> , <code>minitoc.l</code> , <code>minitoc.lan</code> , <code>minitoc.pdf</code> , <code>minitoc.pre</code> , <code>minitoc.sum</code> , <code>franc.sty</code> , <code>frbib.sty</code> , <code>frnew.sty</code> ;		(H) <code>minitoc.sty</code> , <code>mtcmess.sty</code> , <code>mtcpatchmem.sty</code> , <code>mtccoeff.sty</code> , <code>*.mld</code> , <code>*.mlo</code> .					
(D) <code>duplex2v.pro</code> ;		(I) <code>mtc-2c.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-2c.tex</code> , <code>mtc-2nd.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-2nd.tex</code> , <code>mtc-add.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-add.tex</code> , <code>mtc-ads.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-ads.tex</code> , <code>mtc-amm.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-amm.tex</code> , <code>mtc-apx.pdf</code> , <code>mtc-apx.tex</code> ,					
(E) <code>fminitoc.ist</code> , <code>minitoc.ist</code> ;							

5. the file `minitoc-texmf.zip` (10) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.

- **with `pmk`:**

1. the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
2. the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’`. `rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’`. `tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
3. the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc-texmf.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the minitoc package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using minitoc with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

Chapter 8

Postface

Contents

8.1	The origins	228
8.2	New design in 1993	228
8.3	Developments in 1994	228
8.4	No developments in 1995	229
8.5	Developments en 1996	229
8.6	Developments in 1997	229
8.7	Developments in 1998	229
8.8	Developments in 1999	229
8.9	Developments in 2000	230
8.10	Developments in 2001	230
8.11	Developments in 2002	230
8.12	Developments in 2003	230
8.13	Developments in 2004	231
8.14	Developments in 2005	231
8.15	Developments in 2006	233
8.16	Developments in 2007	234

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 546. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite` command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under L^AT_EX (in fact, by the underlying T_EX program itself). As some descriptors are already used by L^AT_EX, writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the mtcoff (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of minitoc to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the minilofs and minilots were added.

8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the formatting of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (parttocs, partlofs, partlots) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (secttocs, sectlofs, sectlots).

With the emergence of L^AT_EX 2_ε, replacing the ageing L^AT_EX 2.09, some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *minitoc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the babel package [38, 39], by Johannes BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.

An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with another project.

8.5 Developments in 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectioning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectioning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtocoff` to keep its name short.

8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for file names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectioning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` command is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [214], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA and Bernd JAEHNE.

Some corrections about the starred sectioning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectioning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [253] is documented.

Aliases for some languages are added.

8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [10] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [257, 258].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [9].

8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the .mld files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [252].

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the \mathcal{AMS} classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [251].

The minitoc package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (sectsty package [182], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [147, 195] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class [257, 258].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the \LaTeX compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the `varsects` package [228].

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [118]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

Added hints about the `fncychap` [170], `quotchap` [232], `romannum` [259], `sfheaders` [172], `alnumsec` [152], and `captcont` [95] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 86.

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanase6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [138].

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tmk` script and a table describing a TDS structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc-texmf.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

8.16 Developments in 2007

Corrections of minor bugs and in the documentation.

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples¹, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups², and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Alex AJ, Vardan AKOPIAN, Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON, Tim ARNOLD, Donald ARSENEAU, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN, Philipp BACHMANN, Gonvcal BADENES, Marin BALGARENSKY, Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI, Emmanuel BEFFARA, József BÉRCES, Karl BERRY, Javier BEZOS, Giuseppe BILOTTA, Árpád BÍRÓ, Denis BITOUZÉ, Laurent BLOCH, Georgi BOSHPANOV, Patrice BOUGETTE, Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Victor BOYKO, Johannes BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN, Mustafa BURC, Olivier CARDI, David CARELLA, David CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jana CHLEBIKOVA, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN, Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Serguei D'ACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Éric DEPARDIEU, Ben DE RYDT, Dorjpalam DORJ, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ĚEHAJA, Victor EIJKHOUT, Danie ELS, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Karl F. EVERITT, Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Jeff FESSLER, Ulrike FISCHER, Daniel FLIPO, Peter FLYNN, Jim FOX, Danny M. FÜRNISS, Diego GARCÍA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Mohammad GHODSI, Markus GLEISZNER, Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, Norman GRAY, Loïc GRENON, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD, Marion GUNN, Hans HAGEN, Boumediene HAMZI, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS, Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS, Danny HEAP, André HEIDER, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Haavard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL, Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Dave W. HUSEBY, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Youssef JABRI, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Regnor JERNSLETTEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES, Christophe JORSSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-JOO KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald KNUTH, Markus KOHM, Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOVIAK, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Alexej M. KRYOKOV, Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiki KUMAZAWA, Frank KÜSTER, Stéphane LABORDE, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR,

¹ And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

² Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or english).

Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Pierre LOBEL, Milos LOKAJICEK, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Vincent LOZANO, Dan LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Terry MART, Vadim MASLOV, Henri MASSIAS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben MCKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBACH, Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAUMOV, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Mariusz OLKO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Oren PATASHNIK, Matthias PELGER, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Bruno PIGUET, John PLAICE, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, CV RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, A.J. “Tony” ROBERTS Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michel RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Morgan SANGEUX, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALUECK, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Martin SCHRÖDER, JUNGSHIK Shin, Ali SHOUKAT, Andriy M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Jankovic SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Arjen STEINER, D.P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Dung TA QUANG, Daniel TAUPIN[†], Hàn Thê THÀNH, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Ton ’T LAM, Sigita TOLUSIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Horst UMSTATTER, KOAUNGI Un, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Vincent VAQUIN, Didier VERNA, Sylvain VESCO, Alexandre VIAL, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, Nigel WARD, Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Peter R. WILSON, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C.S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV, Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŽLAJPAH.

Part II

Implementation

Contents of the Second Part

9	Commented code of <code>minitoc.sty</code>	239
10	Commented code of <code>mtcoff</code>	413
11	Commented code of <code>mtcmess</code>	427
12	Patch for the memoir class	428
13	The language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files	430

Chapter 9

Commented code of `minitoc.sty`

`minitoc.sty`

Contents

9.1	Introduction	242
9.2	Identification code	243
9.3	A file descriptor to write	243
9.4	Indentation and skip	243
9.5	Tests and flags	244
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	244
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	245
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	245
9.5.4	Presence or absence of some sectioning commands	246
9.5.5	Flags to check if some commands are used	247
9.5.6	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	248
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option	249
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options	249
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code>	249
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages	250
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	250
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	250
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	250
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	251
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	252
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	253
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	253
9.10	Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?	253
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file	254

9.12	Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters	255
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	256
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	256
9.15	Section level macros	257
9.16	Corrections for numbering	257
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	257
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	258
9.19	Chapter level macros	258
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	259
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	259
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	259
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	260
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of \LaTeX	261
9.25	A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	262
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	262
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	265
9.28	Fake tables of contents	267
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	268
9.30	Chapter level commands	268
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	268
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	270
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	270
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	271
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code>, <code>\minilof</code>, and <code>\minilot</code> commands	271
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	272
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	275
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	278
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	281
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	282
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	282
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	283
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	284
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	287
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	290
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	291
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	293
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	293
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	296
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	297
9.45	Part level commands	297
9.46	Fonts for the parttoCs	298
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	299
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	301
9.49	The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code>, <code>\partlof</code>, and <code>\partlot</code>	301
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	301
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	304
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	307
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttoCs	310
9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	310
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	311
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttoCs	313
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	317
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	319

9.53	Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots	322
9.54	Section-level commands	322
9.55	Fonts commands for secttocs and co.	323
9.56	Internal macros for title positioning	323
9.57	The stc@verse environment	324
9.58	The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands	324
9.58.1	The \secttoc command	324
9.58.2	The \sectlof command	327
9.58.3	The \sectlot command	329
9.59	Auxiliary internal commands, section level	332
9.60	Patching the \section command (continued)	332
9.61	The \dosecttoc command and siblings	334
9.62	End of section-level commands	343
9.63	The \mtcprepare command	344
9.64	Necessary \l@... commands	344
9.65	The horizontal rules and their default values	345
9.66	The \mtcset... commands	346
9.66.1	Keywords for the \mtcset... commands	346
9.66.2	The \mtcsetfont command	347
9.66.3	The \mtcsetttitlefont command	352
9.66.4	The \mtcsetttitle command	353
9.66.5	The \mtcsetformat command	354
9.66.6	The \mtcsetpagenumbers command	359
9.66.7	The \mtcsetrules command	361
9.66.8	The \mtcsetfeature command	363
9.66.9	The \mtcsetdepth command	366
9.67	The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings	367
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	369
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	371
9.70	The \mtcselectlanguage command	372
9.71	The \mtcloadmlo internal command	372
9.72	The “coffee breaks”	373
9.73	Initialization of counters	374
9.74	Declarations for simple options	374
9.74.1	Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose	374
9.74.2	Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles	374
9.74.3	Options dotted and undotted	374
9.74.4	Option notoccite	375
9.74.5	Option shorttext	375
9.75	The insection option	375
9.76	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	376
9.77	Language options	376
9.78	The hints option	382
9.78.1	First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc	382
9.78.1.1	Hint about the alphanum package	383
9.78.1.2	Hint about the appendix package	383
9.78.1.3	Hint about the tocibind package	383
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	383
9.78.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package	384
9.78.1.6	Hint about the titletoc package	384
9.78.1.7	Hint about the placeins package	385
9.78.1.8	Hint about the memoir class	386
9.78.1.9	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes	386
9.78.1.10	Hint about the amsbook class	387

9.78.1.11 Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	387
9.78.1.12 Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	387
9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectioning commands	388
9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of <code>\part</code>	388
9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	389
9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of <code>\section</code>	389
9.78.1.14 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands	390
9.78.2 Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	391
9.78.2.1 Hint about <code>\sect-lof|lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	391
9.78.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests	391
9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	393
9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	395
9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	398
9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	399
9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	399
9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the <code>fnycchap</code> package	399
9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	400
9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	400
9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	400
9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the <code>sheaders</code> package	401
9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the <code>alumnsec</code> package	401
9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	401
9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	402
9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	402
9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	402
9.78.2.18 Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	403
9.78.2.19 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	403
9.78.2.20 Check if obsolete commands have been used	405
9.78.2.21 Check if some hints have been written	406
9.79 Processing of options	406
9.79.1 Processing the <code>insection</code> option	407
9.79.2 Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	408
9.79.3 Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	408
9.79.4 Processing the <code>hints</code> option	409
9.79.5 Saving the sectioning commands	409
9.80 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	410
9.81 The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	412

9.1 Introduction

This long chapter presents the code of the `minitoc` package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file¹ are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

¹ The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.

Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```

1 (*minitoc)

\NeedsTeXFormat This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is
\ProvidesPackage written in the document.log file. This package will not work with LATEX2.09.
\mtcPackageInfo
\RequirePackage 2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
3 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
4 [2007/01/09 v51 Package minitoc (JPDFD)]
5 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
6 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0001>]{minitoc}%
7 {*** minitoc package, version 51 ***\@gobble}

```

9.3 A file descriptor to write

```

\tf@mtc A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is \tf@mtc.
\newwrite
8 \newwrite\tf@mtc

```

9.4 Indentation and skip

```

\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default:
\mtcskipamount \bigskipamount).
\parskip
9 \newlength\mtcindent
10 \newskip\mtcskipamount
11 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
12 % %%%\def\mtcskip{\leavevmode\unskip\removelastskip%
13 % %%% {\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}
14 \def\mtcskip{{\parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}}

```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
`\mtcgapafterheads`

```
15 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
16 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}
```

`\@ifundefined` We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via `\renewcommand`.

```
\kernafterparttoc
\kernafterpartlof
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 17 \ifundefined{part}{}%
\kernaftersectlof 18 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 19 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 20 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 21 }%
\kernafterminilot 22 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
23 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
24 }%
25 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
26 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
27 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
28 }%
29 }%
30 }%
31 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
32 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
33 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
34 }%
```

9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags² (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.78 on page 382) or to allow the definition of some `minitoc` commands).

```
\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@
```

9.5.1 Flags for the `hints` option

But first, we define some flags for the `hints` option:

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).

² Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native \TeX engine (much more with $\varepsilon\text{-}\TeX$, but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure than a code programmed with counters, мнѡ .

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectioning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

```
35 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
36 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
37 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false
```

9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
  \dosectlof
  \dosectlot
38 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false
```

9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is an
  \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ enough recent version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc). We
    \if@mtc@memoirnew@ do the same for some caption-related packages and the varsects package and other packages
  \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ altering the sectioning commands.
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@captionLoaded@
  \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@
  \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@
  \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@
  \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@
  \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@
  \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@
  \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@
  \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@
  \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
  \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
39 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
40 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
41 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
42 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
43 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
44 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
45 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
46 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
47 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
48 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
49 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
50 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
51 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
52 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
53 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
54 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
55 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
56 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
57 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
58 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
59 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
60 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
61 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
```

```

62 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
63 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
64 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
65 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false
66 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
67 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:

```

\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 68 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 69 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 70 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 71 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 72 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 73 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 74 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 75 \newif\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ \@mtc@empty@secttoc@false
76 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
76 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

9.5.4 Presence or absence of some sectioning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectioning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

\if@mtc@part@def@ The part counter:

```

77 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
78 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ The chapter counter:

```

79 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
80 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ The section counter:

```

81 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
82 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}

```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The part counter:

```
83 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
84  \@ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapter counter:

```
85 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
86  \@ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The section counter:

```
87 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
88  \@ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

9.5.5 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.78 on page 382).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

```
\if@partlof@used@
\if@partlot@used@ 89 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false
\if@doparttoc@used@ 90 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false
\if@dopartlof@used@ 91 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false
\if@dopartlot@used@ 92 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false
93 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false
94 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false
```

`\if@minitoc@used@` For the chapter level:

```
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 95 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 96 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 97 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 98 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
99 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
100 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false
```

```

\if@secttoc@used@ For the section level:
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 101 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 102 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 103 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 104 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
105 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
106 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false

```

```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 107 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
108 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
109 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

9.5.6 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
110 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

111 \AtBeginDocument{%
112   \ifmtcsecondpart
113   \global\mtcsecondparttrue
114   \else
115   \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
116   \fi}

```

`\AtEndDocument` At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the `.aux` file:

```

\ifmtcsecondpart
  \\\@mainaux 117 \AtEndDocument{%
118 \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
119   \mtcsecondparttrue
120 \else
121   \mtcsecondpartfalse
122 \fi
123 \if@filesw
124   \ifmtcsecondpart
125     \immediate\write\@mainaux
126     {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%

```



```

127 \else
128   \immediate\write\@mainaux
129     {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
130 \fi
131 \fi}

```

So we need two \LaTeX runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.60 on page 463) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 88.

9.6 Preparation for the `notoccite` option

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command (redefinable command) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`, used by this option (this has been requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [9]). See section 1.6 on page 49.

```

132 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
133 \@ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
134   {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}

```

9.7 Preparation for the `tight` and `k-tight` options

`\iftightmtc` We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and `\ifktightmtc` k-loose options):

```

135 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
136 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse

```

9.8 Preparation to work with `hyperref`

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the `hyperref` package [214]. A flag is defined, then this preparation is performed in a `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This action defines some commands for the `hyperref` package.

```

137 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0005>]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
138 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
139 \AtBeginDocument{%
140   \@ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
141     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
142     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%

```

```

143 \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
144 \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
145 \def\toclevel@xsection{1000}%
146 \let\toclevel@starpert\toclevel@part
147 \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
148 \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
149 \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
150 \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
151 \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
152 \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
153 }{}}

```

9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

```

\AtBeginDocument We must test if the sectsty package [182] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ loaded. See section 9.78.2.6 on page 399.
\ifpackageloaded
154 \ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}
155 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

```

\ifpackageloaded We must test if the varsects package [228] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.7 on page 399.
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
156 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
157 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [170] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.8 on page 399.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
158 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}
159 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [138] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.9 on page 400.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
```

```
160 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}
161 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}{}}
```

9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [232] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.10 on page 400.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
```

```
162 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}
163 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}{}}
```

9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [259] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.11 on page 400.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
```

```
164 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}
165 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}{}}
```

9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```
\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [172] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.12 on page 401.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
```

```
166 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}
167 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}{}}
```

9.9.8 Check if the `alnumsec` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [152] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.13 on page 401.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
168 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}
169 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.9 Check if the `captcont` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [95] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\AtBeginDocument minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ loaded. See section 9.78.2.14 on page 401.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
170 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}
171 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.10 Check if the `caption` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [224] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\AtBeginDocument minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ loaded. See section 9.78.2.15 on page 402.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
172 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}
173 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.11 Check if the `caption2` package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [223] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.16 on page 402.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
174 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}
175 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [255] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.17 on page 402.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

176 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}
177 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [131] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.18 on page 403.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

178 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}
179 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir [257, 258] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility adjust-
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ ments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see chap-
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ ter 12 on page 428). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ memoir.cls.

```

```

180 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
181 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
182     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0030>]{minitoc}%
183     {the memoir class is loaded:
184     \MessageBreak
185     compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
186     {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
187 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
188 \@ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
189     {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[<I0020>]{minitoc}%
190     {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
191     {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[<I0027>]{minitoc}%
192     {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}
193     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0032>]{minitoc}%
194     {This version of the memoir class uses
195     \MessageBreak
196     a version of \string\chapter\space which is
197     \MessageBreak
198     incompatible with the minitoc package.

```

```

199         \MessageBreak
200         We try to patch\@gobble}%
201     \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
202 \fi

```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ And now the patch:

```

203 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
204 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
205     \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{}{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
206     \mtePackageError[<E0028>]{minitoc}%
207         {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
208         {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
209 \fi

```

9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

\mtc@ifmtarg Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package ifmtarg [260], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [246]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.

```

\mtc@ifmtarg
\mtc@xifmtarg
\mtc@EndWhile
\mtc@WhilePreCondition
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While
\mtc@WhileNext
210 \begingroup
211 \catcode'\Q=3
212 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
213 \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
214 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
215 \endgroup
216 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
217 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
218     \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
219     \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
220     \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
221     \mtc@@While
222 }
223 \def\mtc@@While{%
224     \mtc@WhilePreCondition
225     \mtc@WhileCondition
226     \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
227         \mtc@WhileBody
228         \mtc@@While
229     }%
230 \else
231     \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
232 \fi
233 \mtc@WhileNext
234 }

```

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue
\if@mtc@FE if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the is file not empty. An inexistent file is empty.
\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an
\mtc@endWhile eternity (33 s for 106 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.
\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline 235 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\tf@mtc 236 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\@inputcheck 237 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
238 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to
239 \mtc@Rline\relax
240 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
241 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
242 \def\mtc@Rline{}
243 \else
244 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
245 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}%
246 {\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
247 \fi
248 }
249 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
250 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
251 \if@mtc@checkfiles
252 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
253 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
254 \mtc@While}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}%
255 {\mtc@Body}%
256 \mtc@endWhile}%
257 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
258 \else
259 \@mtc@FEfalse%
260 \fi}
261 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
262 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
263 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
264 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
265 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
266 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
267 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
268 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

```

\mtc@onebackpart It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
\mtc@onebackchapter macros are:
\mtc@onebacksection
\addtocounter 269 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}

```

```
270 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
271 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}
```

9.13 Patching the `\part` command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and
`\mtc@svspart` a warning is displayed³. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version)
`\mtc@svpart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the
`\@spart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 310.
`\@part`
`\part`
`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14) is also skipped if `\part` is not defined.

```
272 \@ifundefined{part}{%
273   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0018>]{minitoc}%
274   {part level macros NOT available}
275 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
276   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0023>]{minitoc}%
277   {part level macros available\@gobble}
278   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
279   \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
280   \let\mtc@svpart\@part
281   \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}
```

9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an
`\mtc@ifmtarg` optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.
`\contentsline`
`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omit-
`\adjustptc` ted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty,
`\l@xpart` we add a `\contentsline{part}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a
`\l@part` `\contentsline{xpart}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the ptc
 counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 297). Using `xpart` as first argu-
 ment of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print
 the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will
 never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
282 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
283   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}}%
284   {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}%
285   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}%
286   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}}
```

³ Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.


```
287 \adjustptc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```
288 }%
```

9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` `\section` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the `minitoc` package with the class of your document.

```
289 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtePackageInfo[<I0004>]{minitoc}%
290     {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
291 \@ifundefined{section}{\mtePackageInfo[<I0029>]{minitoc}%
292     {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
293 \mtePackageWarningNoLine[<W0017>]{minitoc}%
294     {no section or chapter level macros available
295     \MessageBreak
296     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
297 {\mtePackageInfo[<I0028>]{minitoc}%
298     {section level macros available\@gobble}%
```

9.16 Corrections for numbering

`\mte@onebacksect` `\tableofcontents` `\listoffigures` `\listoftables` As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement the `sectoc` counter (`stc`) via `\mte@onebacksect` when the corresponding commands are executed. Hence we patch these commands.

```
\mtecsv@tableofcontents 299 \let\mtecsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtecsv@listoffigures    300 \let\mtecsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtecsv@listoftables     301 \let\mtecsv@listoftables\listoftables
302 \def\tableofcontents{\mtecsv@tableofcontents\mte@onebacksect}
303 \def\listoffigures{\mtecsv@listoffigures\mte@onebacksect}
304 \def\listoftables{\mtecsv@listoftables\mte@onebacksect}
```

9.17 Patching the `\section` command

`\mte@svsection` `\mte@svss` `\@sect` `\@sect` `\section` `\stepcounter` If the `\section` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@sect` (for the unstarred version)

or `\@ssect` (for the starred version, `\section*`): we add `\stepcounter{stc}` to increment the `secttoc` counter `stc`, only in the unstarred case (the version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter).

```
305 \let\mtc@svsection\section
306 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
307 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect
```

9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

`\mtcaddsection` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the `\mtcaddsection` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}`... line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{section}{title...}`... line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xsect` `\contentsline{xsect}{}`... line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `\l@xsection` `stc` counter, via `\adjuststc` (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 322). Using `\l@section` `xsect` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xsect` will be invoked in place of `\l@section` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
308 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][ ]{%
309 \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}}%
310 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}%
311 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}%
312 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}%
313 \adjuststc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```
314 }}%
315 {%
```

9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`.

```
316 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0003>]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}
```

9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\mtc@svchapter` `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\stepcounter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 281).

```
317 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter
318 \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}
```

9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xchapter` `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 268). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
319 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][{}]{%
320   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}%
321   {\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
322   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
323   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
324   \adjustmtc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\@ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 257.

```
325 }%
```

9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

`\newread` The `\newread` command must be redeclared as being `\outer` (as Donald ARSENEAU told me).
`\newtoks` We need a token register (`\mtc@toks`), a temporary string (`\mtc@string`), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (`\mtc@zrule`) and a command discouraging page breaks (`\mtc@BBR`, for “bad break”).
`\mtc@toks`
`\mtc@string`
`\mtc@strut`
`\mtc@strutbox`
`\mtc@hstrut`
`\mtc@hstrutbox`
`\mtc@v`
`\mtc@zrule`
`\mtc@BBR`

Table 9.1: Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc1</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(1)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to follow the current font.

```

326 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@n}
327 \newtoks\mtc@toks
328 \def\mtc@string{\relax}
329 \newbox\mtc@strutbox
330 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}
331 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox
332           \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}
333 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox
334 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}
335 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox
336           \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}
337 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}
338 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}
339 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}

```

9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a hack to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files⁴. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the `document.log` file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

⁴ It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the `minitoc` package. All files written by `minitoc` use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the `document.log` file. In fact, `minitoc` writes also in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that `minitoc` itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TeX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\@starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As `minitoc` writes into only one file at a time (and in the `document.log` file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The `minitoc` package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectioning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

```

\if@longextensions@ (0) First, a message and a new flag:
  \tf@mtc
  \openout 340 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0002>]{minitoc}%
  \write 341 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
  \closeout 342 \newif\if@longextensions@\@longextensions@false
  \input (1) We write “\@longextensions@true” in \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short
  \jobname extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
  343 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
  344 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@true}
  345 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

  (2) We write “\@longextensions@false” in \jobname.mtc.
  346 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
  347 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@false}
  348 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

  (3) We read \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
  be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
  349 \input{\jobname.mtc1}

  (4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from \jobname.mtc1, but false if we read from
  \jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.
  350 \if@longextensions@
  351 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0012>]{minitoc}%
  352 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used\@gobble}
  353 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0031>]{minitoc}%
  354 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
  355 \MessageBreak
  356 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names\@gobble}%
  357 \else
  358 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0019>]{minitoc}%
  359 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
  360 \MessageBreak
  361 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
  362 \MessageBreak
  363 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
  364 \fi

  (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as
  a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 254).
  365 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
  366 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  367 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
  368 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L^AT_EX

`\@inputcheck` This code detects old versions of the L^AT_EX kernel that are no more supported and with which the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L^AT_EX

`\reset@font`



commands, `\@inputcheck` and `\reset@font`. If you get one of these messages, you are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L^AT_EX installation, which is rusting since... many years!

```

369 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
370   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0021>]{minitoc}%
371     {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
372       \MessageBreak
373       Trying to continue..}\newread@inputcheck\relax}{}}
374 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
375   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0022>]{minitoc}%
376     {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
377       \MessageBreak
378       Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
379   \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```

9.25 A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

`\@undottedtocline` The (internal) macro `\@undottedtocline` is a modified version of the standard command `\dottedtocline`. It will be used in customization macros.

```

\undottedmtcfalse
380 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
381 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
382   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
383     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
384     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
385       \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
386       \interlinepenalty\@M
387       \leavevmode
388       \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
389     \hskip -\leftskip
390     #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
391     \null\par}%
392 \fi}

```

9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [257, 258] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```
393 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
```

```

\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
394 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
395   \cftpagenumberon{section}
396   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
397   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
398   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
399   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
400 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
401   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
402   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
403   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
404   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
405   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
406 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
407   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
408   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
409   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
410   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
411 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
412   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
413   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
414   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
415   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers
416 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
417   \cftpagenumberon{chapter}
418   \cftpagenumberon{section}
419   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
420   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
421   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
422   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
423 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
424   \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
425   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
426   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
427   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
428   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
429   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}

```

```

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 430 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 431 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 432 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 433 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
434 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
435 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 436 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 437 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 438 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 439 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
440 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
441 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
442 \else
```

```

\mtcpagenumbers First, for minitocs, sectocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 443 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 444 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 445 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 446 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
447 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\null}
448 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mlfpagenumbers Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 449 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\null}
\nomlfpagenumbers 450 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 451 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 452 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
453 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\null}
454 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 455 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers 456 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 457 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\null}
\nomltpagenumbers

```



```

458 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
459 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\null}
460 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
461 \fi

```

```

\ptcpagenumbers Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:
\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 462 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 463 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 464 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 465 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 466 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 467 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 468 \stcpagenumbers
469 \slfpagenumbers
470 \sltpagenumbers

```

9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has three “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature and a “thispagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each `parttoc`. Usually such features contains only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

A “thispagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “thispagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “thispagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 471 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 472 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
473 \let\beforepartlof\empty
474 \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```
475  {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
476   \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
477   \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\beforeinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

```
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 478 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
479 \let\beforeminilof\empty
480 \let\beforeminilot\empty
```

`\beforesecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

```
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 481 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
482 \let\beforesectlof\empty
483 \let\beforesectlot\empty
```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```
\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof 484 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 485   \let\afterparttoc\empty
486   \let\afterpartlof\empty
487   \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```
488  {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
489   \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
490   \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\afterinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```
\afterminilof
\afterminilot 491 \let\afterinitoc\empty
492 \let\afterminilof\empty
493 \let\afterminilot\empty
```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```
\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot 494 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
495 \let\aftersectlof\empty
496 \let\aftersectlot\empty
```

`\thispagestyle` By default, all the “thispagestyle” features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If `\chapter` is not defined, there is no default “thispagestyle” features at the part level.

```

\thispageparttocstyle
\thispagepartlofsty
\thispagepartlotstyle
\thispageminitocstyle 497 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 498 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 499 \def\thispagepartlofsty{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 500 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofsty 501 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 502 \def\thispagepartlofsty{\thispagestyle{empty}}
503 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}}
504 \def\thispageminitocstyle{\empty}
505 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
506 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
507 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
508 \def\thispagesectlofsty{\empty}
509 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.66.8 on page 363, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

9.28 Fake tables of contents

`\faketableofcontents` If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, without inserting it into your document. This `\faketableofcontents` command is a stripped off version of the standard command `\tableofcontents`. We define in the same way the analog commands `\fakelistoffigures` and `\fakelistoftables`, using in fact just a stripped version `\fake@starttoc` of `\@starttoc`. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and stc counters now, if they are defined⁵.

```

510 \def\faketableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
511   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
512   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
513   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
514   }
515 \def\fakelistoffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
516 \def\fakelistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
517 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup
518   \makeatletter
519   \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
520             \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
521             \jobname.#1\relax
522   \fi
523   \global\@nobeakfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

⁵ Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the necessary new counters: `\c@lofdepth` `minilofdepth` and `minilofdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
524 \AtBeginDocument{%
525   \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
526   {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
527   \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
528   {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
529 }
```

9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

`\mtc@markboth` First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):
`\@mkboth`

```
530 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
531 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

`\addst@rred` We define commands to manage the starred sectioning commands: `\part*`, `\chapter*` and
`\addcontentsline` `\section*`. The section-level is different depending if `\chapter` is defined or not. Eventu-
`\stepcounter` ally, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the `.toc` file, with the right depth to
`\c@ptc` print it (see `\l@star...` later, in section 9.64 on page 344).
`\c@mtc`
`\c@stc`

```
532 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
533   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
534   \ifundefined{c@ptc}{}%
535   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
536     \stepcounter{ptc}%
537   \fi
538 }%
539 \ifundefined{c@mtc}{}%
540 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
541   \stepcounter{mtc}%
542 \fi
543 }%
544 \ifundefined{c@stc}{}%
545 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
```

```

546 %%      \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}}%
547         \stepcounter{stc}%
548     \fi
549 }%
550 }%

```

`\addstarredsection` If `\chapter` is not defined, we just define `\addstarredsection`:

```

\chapter
\addst@rred 551 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
552 \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
553 }%

```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

```
554 {%
```

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
\if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\adjustmtc command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\decrementmtc mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\incrementmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\themtc
\columnwidth
\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 555 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\slt@rule 556 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\mtcindent 557 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0003>]{minitoc}%
558 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete
559 \MessageBreak
560 command}%
561 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
562 \newcounter{mtc}
563 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
564 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
565 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
566 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
567 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
568 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
569 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}
570 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
571 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
572 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule

```

```

573 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
574 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
575 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
576 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
577 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

`\mtcfont` We define these commands with full NFSS [165] descriptions. These definitions are effective if `\chapter` is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the `\mtcsetfont` macro (section 9.66.2 on page 347) and the `\mtcsetttitlefont` macro later (section 9.66.3 on page 352).

```

\mtcSSfont
\mtcSSSfont
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 578 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 579 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 580 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 581 \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 582 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 583 \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
584 \let\mlffont\mtcfont
585 \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
586 \let\mltfont\mtcfont
587 \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
588 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

`\coffeefont` And `\coffeefont` is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [169].

```

589 \def\coffeefont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}

```

9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized in `\df@mtitc`, `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro later (section 9.35.1 on page 272). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti   Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti   590 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\l@mti   591 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\r@mti   592 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
\l@mti   593 \def\l@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\r@mti   594 \def\r@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti   Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 595 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 596 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 597 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 598 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt 599 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
        600 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

9.34 The mtc@verse environment

```

mtc@verse Each minitoc is placed inside a mtc@verse environment. This environment is analog to
\iftightmtc the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \mtc@verse and
\ifktightmtc \endmtc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then
\list call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent,
\itemsep \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of the
\itemindent lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of
\listparindent the lines). Both margins are set to \mtcindent. \endmtc@verse terminates the list and
\topsep discourages a page break.
\parsep
\mtcindent 601 \def\mtc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
        602 \list{}{\itemsep\z@
        603 \itemindent \z@
        604 \listparindent \itemindent
        605 \partopsep\z@
        606 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
        607 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
        608 \topsep=1ex
        609 \leftmargin\mtcindent
        610 \rightmargin\leftmargin}\item[]}
        611 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

9.35.1 The `\minitoc` command

`\minitoc` The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic `\chapter` minitoc).

`\dominitoc` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc` So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\ifnnextchar` `\ifnnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
612 \def\minitoc{\ifnnextchar[{\minitoc@}{\minitoc@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 391).

```
613 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
614 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@longextensions` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mtc` (long extensions) or `.M` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
615 \if@longextensions@
616 \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
617 \else
618 \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
619 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested). `\if@mtc@FE` `\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

```
620 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
621 \if@mtc@FE
```



```

622     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
623         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
624     \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
625     \else

```

`\thispageminotocstyle` We call `\thispageminotocstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```

626     \thispageminotocstyle
627 %     \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%

```

`\beforeminitoc` We call `\beforeminitoc`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules are present), using a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mtcfont`.

```

\l@mti 628     \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 629     \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 630     \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 631     \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
\mtctitle 632     \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 633     \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 634     \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 635     \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 636     \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 637     \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 638     \raggedright
639     \parskip=\z@%
640     \reset@font\mtcfont%
641     \parindent=\z@%
642     \noprogrambreak[4]%
643     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\noprogrambreak[4]%
644     \par\noindent %
645     \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
646     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
647     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
648     \end{tabular}%
649     \else
650     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
651     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\\hline
652     \end{tabular}%
653     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```

\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
mtc@verse 654     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
          655     \leftmargin\mtcindent
          656     \rightmargin\mtcindent
          657     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          658     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
          659     \begin{mtc@verse}%

```

`\c@tocdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth (`\c@minitocdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where `tocdepth` has been forced to `minitocdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```

660     \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
661     \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [9]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mtc@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mtc@setform
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 662 \begingroup
          663   \makeatletter
          664   \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
          665   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
          666   \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
          667   \mtc@setform%
          668   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          669   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
          670   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
          671   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break), then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminitoc`. The blank line (`\\`) is essential.

```

\mtc@bottom@rule
\\
samepage
\afterminitoc 672     \end{mtc@verse}%
          673     \kernafterminitoc
          674     \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
          675     \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule
          676     \end{samepage}%
          677     \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}

```

`\mtc@bottom@rule` And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:

```

\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 678 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
679 \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
680 \vskip -2.5ex
681 \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}

```

9.35.2 The `\minilof` command

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command is very similar to the `\minitoc` command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic `\chapter` minilof).

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
682 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 391).

```
683 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
684 \global\@minilof@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mlf` (long extensions) or `.F` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```

685 \if@longextensions%
686 \def\tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
687 \else
688 \def\tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
689 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

`\if@mtc@FE`

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@`

```

690 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
691 \if@mtc@FE
692 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
693 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
694 \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
695 \else

```

`\thispageminilofstyle` We call `\thispageminilofstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```

696 \thispageminilofstyle
697 % \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%

```

`\beforeminilof` We call `\beforeminilof`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mlffont`.

```

\do@mtitc
\l@mti
\l@mti 698 \beforeminilof
\l@mti 699 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 700 \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mtc@CkStr 701 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 702 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 703 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 704 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 705 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 706 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 707 \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\l@mti\relax\fi
\columnwidth 708 \raggedright
\columnwidth 709 \parskip=\z@
\columnwidth 710 \reset@font\mlffont
\columnwidth 711 \parindent=\z@
\columnwidth 712 \nopagebreak[4]%
\columnwidth 713 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\columnwidth 714 \par\noindent
\columnwidth 715 \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
\columnwidth 716 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}

```

```

717     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\
718     \end{tabular}%
719     \else
720     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
721     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\
722     \end{tabular}%
723     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```

\mtcindent
mtc@verse 724     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\
725     \leftmargin\mtcindent
726     \rightmargin\mtcindent
727     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
728     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
729     \begin{mtc@verse}%

```

`\c@lofdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth
`\c@minilofdepth` (`\c@minilofdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minilofdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative
indentation.

```

730     \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
731     {}%
732     {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
733     \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
734     \leavevmode\
\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the
`\dottedtocline` minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for
`\@dottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [9]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mlf@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some
`\mlf@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```

\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 735 \begingroup
736     \makeatletter
737     \ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
738     {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
739     \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
740     \mlf@setform
741     \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
742     \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
743     \leavevmode\mtc@strut
744     \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

```

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminilof. The blank line (\) is
  \ essential.
  samepage
\afterminilof 745 \end{mtc@verse}%
746 \kernafterminilof
747 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
748 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
749 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi}%

```

9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic
`\chapter` minilot).

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set ear-
`\minilot` lier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has
itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`.
The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tor-
tuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via
the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the
`\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
750 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\minilot@}{\minilot@[d]}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by
brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called
(this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 391).

```
751 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
752 \global\@minilot@used@true
```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix
`\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mlt` (long extensions) or `.T` (short extensions) followed by the absolute
number of the minilot.

```
753 \if@longextensions@%
754 \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
755 \else
756 \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
757 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```
758 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
759 \if@mtc@FE
760 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
761 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
762 \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
763 \else
```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because,
by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually
there is no new page for a minilot.

```
764 \thispageminilotstyle
765 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlttitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page
`samepage` breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is
`\do@mtitc` corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules
`\e@mti` are present), using a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the
`\n@mti` top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

```
\c@mti
\l@mti 766 \beforeminilot
\r@mti 767 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 768 \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 769 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 770 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 771 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 772 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 773 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 774 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 775 \mtc@CkStr{\mlttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
\columnwidth 776 \raggedright
\columnwidth 777 \parskip=\z@%
\columnwidth 778 \reset@font\mltfont%
\columnwidth 779 \parindent=\z@%
```

```

780     \nopagebreak[4]%
781     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
782     \par\noindent
783     \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
784     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
785     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
786     \end{tabular}%
787     \else
788     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
789     \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\ \hline
790     \end{tabular}%
791     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

```

\mtc@zrule
\mtc@BBR
\mtcindent
mtc@verse
792     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
793     \leftmargin\mtcindent
794     \rightmargin\mtcindent
795     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
796     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
797     \begin{mtc@verse}%

```

`\c@lotdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@lotdepth`) to the required depth (`\c@minilotdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where `lotdepth` has been forced to `minilotdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative indentation.

```

798     \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
799     {}%
800     {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
801     \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
802     \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for by Donald ARSENEAU for his notocite package [9]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the macro `\mlt@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut
803 \begingroup
804 \makeatletter
805 \ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
806 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
807 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
808 \mlt@setform

```



```

809 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
810 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
811 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
812 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the `bottomrule` (while preventing a page break),
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminilot`. The blank line (`\`) is
`\` essential.

```

      samepage
\afterminilot 813     \end{mtc@verse}%
               814     \kernafterminilot
               815     \nopagebreak[4]\mlt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
               816     \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
               817     \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi%

```

9.36 Patching the `\chapter` command, continued

`\l@xchapter` First, we define `\l@xchapter` which is like `\l@chapter`, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its
`\@dottedtocline` printing (except if you cheat):

```

      \l@chapter
      \xchapter 818 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1em}{2.3em}}
               819 \def\xchapter{xchapter}

```

`\@chapter` Then we patch `\@chapter` (the non-starred branch of `\chapter`) to add pseudo-chapter
`\sv@chapter` entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands
`\addcontentsline` to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).

```

\ignorespaces
      820 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
      821 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[#{1}]{#2}\relax%
      822   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
      823   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
      824   \ignorespaces}

```

`\mtc@schapter` We also patch `\@schapter` (the starred branch of `\chapter`) to add marks in the TOC to
`\@schapter` delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the `\dominiXXX` commands to take slices
`\addtocontents` from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as `\relax`, they should not perturbate other
`\chapterbegin` packages.
`\chapterend`

```

      825 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
      826 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
      827 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
      828 \let\chapterbegin\relax
      829 \let\chapterend\relax

```

9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

`\addstarredsection` If the command `\chapter` is undefined, we define the command `\addstarredsection`
`\addstarredchapter` (only if `\section` is defined). If the command `\chapter` is defined, we define the com-
`\addstarredpart` mand `\addstarredchapter`. If the command `\part` is defined, we define the command
`\chapter` `\addstarredpart`. We use the utility command `\addst@rred` defined in section 9.31 on
`\section` page 268.
`\part`
`\addst@rred`

```

830 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
831   {\@ifundefined{section}%
832    \{\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}\%
833   {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}\%
834 \@ifundefined{part}%
835   \{\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}\%

```

9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro
`\coffeefont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

836 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
837   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
838     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
839     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
840     \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
841     \interlinepenalty\@M
842     \leavevmode
843     \@tempdima #3\relax
844     \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
845     {\coffeefont #4}\nobreak
846     \nobreak\null
847     \par}%
848   \fi}

```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:
`\coffeefont`

```

849 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
850   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
851     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
852     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
853     \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
854     \interlinepenalty\@M
855     \leavevmode
856     \@tempdima #3\relax
857     \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
858     {#4}\nobreak

```

```

859     \hfill
860     \nobreak\null
861     \hb@xt@{@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}%
862     \par}%
863     \fi}

```

9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,
`\minilot@` if true, replace locally `@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `@Undottedtoclinep`.
`@dottedtocline` Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section`
`@Undottedtoclinep` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```

\sv@minitoc@
\sv@minilof@ 864 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\sv@minilot@ 865 \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
866 \def\minitoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
867 \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%
868 \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
869 \def\minilof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
870 \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%
871 \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
872 \def\minilot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
873 \sv@minilot@[#1]}}

```

`\sv@parttoc@` For the part level:

```

\sv@partlof@
\sv@partlot@ 874 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 875 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@
\parttoc@ 876 \def\parttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
\partlof@ 877 \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}%
\partlot@ 878 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@
879 \def\partlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
880 \sv@partlof@[#1]}}%
881 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@
882 \def\partlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
883 \sv@partlot@[#1]}}

```

`\sv@secttoc@` For the section level:

```

\sv@sectlof@
\sv@sectlot@ 884 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 885 \@ifundefined{section}{}{}%
\secttoc@ 886 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@
\sectlof@ 887 \def\secttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtoclinep\fi
\sectlot@ 888 \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}%
889 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@

```

```

890     \def\sectlof@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtocline\fi
891         \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}%
892     \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
893     \def\sectlot@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let@dottedtocline@Undottedtocline\fi
894         \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}}

```

9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course, very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous \LaTeX run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

`\dominitoc` As `\dominitoc` has an optional argument, whose default value is “1” (left), it calls `\dominitoc@` with a argument delimited by brackets.

`\@@dominitoc` The macros are `\dominitoc` (user interface), which calls `\dominitoc@[1]` (or with the optional argument of `\dominitoc`). Then `\dominitoc@[1]` processes its argument and calls `\@@dominitoc`. `\@@dominitoc` calls `\@dominitoc` (passing `\jobname` as argument) then close the minitoc file written. `\@dominitoc` reset to zero the counter of mini-tables, calls `\MTC@next#1.toc` (where `#1` is the value of `\jobname`), then reset again to zero the counter of mini-tables. Each call to `\dominitoc@` (i.e., to `dominitoc`) sets the flag `\@dominitoc@used@true`. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have correctly called `\minitoc` after `\dominitoc` and that both or neither have been called). See section 9.78.2.2 on page 391. The code is similar for `\dominilof` and `\dominilot`.

`\dominitoc` The `\dominitoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and create the minitocs files, with the adequate extension.

```

\dominitoc
\@dominitoc
\MTC@next
895 \def\@@dominitoc#1{
896     \makeatletter
897     \setcounter{mtc}{0}
898     \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}
899 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\@dominitoc@]{\dominitoc@[1]}

```

`\dominilof` The `\dominilof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and create the minilofs files, with the adequate extension.
`\@dominilof`
`\MLF@next`

```
900 \def\@dominilof#1{%
901   \makeatletter
902   \setcounter{mtc}{0}
903   \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
904 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

`\dominilot` The `\dominilot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and create the minilots files, with the adequate extension.
`\@dominilot`
`\MLT@next`

```
905 \def\@dominilot#1{%
906   \makeatletter
907   \setcounter{mtc}{0}
908   \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
909 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}
```

`\if@dominitoc@used@` Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint
`\if@mtc@hints@` detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\df@mtitc 910 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 911 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 912   \if@dominitoc@used@
  \c@mti 913   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \l@mti 914     {The \string\dominitoc \space command
  \r@mti 915     \MessageBreak
  \@dominitoc 916     has been invoked more than once
  917     \MessageBreak}
  918   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
  919   \fi
  920 \fi
  921 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
  922 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\e@mti%
  923 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\n@mti%
  924 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\c@mti%
  925 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\l@mti%
  926 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\r@mti%
  927 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
  928 \@dominitoc}
```

`\if@dominilof@used@` Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint
`\if@mtc@hints@` detects any spurious invocation.
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\df@mtilf 929 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
  \e@mti 930 \if@mtc@hints@
  \n@mti 931   \if@dominilof@used@
  \c@mti
  \l@mti
  \r@mti
  \@dominilof
```

```

932 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
933     {The \string\dominilof \space command
934     \MessageBreak
935     has been invoked more than once
936     \MessageBreak}
937 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
938 \fi
939 \fi
940 \global\@dominilof@used@true
941 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
942 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
943 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
944 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
945 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
946 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
947 \@@dominilof}

```

\if@dominilot@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilot title; a hint
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

\df@mtilt 948 \def\dominilot@[#1]{%
\@mti 949 \if@mtc@hints@
\n@mti 950 \if@dominilot@used@
\c@mti 951 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 952     {The \string\dominilot \space command
\r@mti 953     \MessageBreak
\@dominilot 954     has been invoked more than once
955     \MessageBreak}
956 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
957 \fi
958 \fi
959 \global\@dominilot@used@true
960 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
961 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
962 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
963 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
964 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
965 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
966 \@@dominilot}

```

\@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file
 \@@dominilof descriptor.
 \@dominilot

```

\tf@mtc 967 \def\@@dominitoc{\@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
968 \def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
969 \def\@@dominilot{\@dominilot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros ⁶:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 970 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          971 \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
          972 \MTC@loop{#1}%
          973 }

\MTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 974 \def\MTC@toc{%
          975 \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
          976 }

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\arabic esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
\chapter but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 977 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO/BJ: 4 instead of 3 parameters
          978 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}} %%HO: space removed
          979 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
          980 \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\themtc it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname
\tf@mtc 981 \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 982 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 983 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
          984 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
          985 \else
          986 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
          987 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
          988 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
          989 \fi
          990 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          991 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
          992 \fi

```

⁶ This code is derived from the `xr` package [89], by David CARLISLE, with his permission. The strings “HO”, “DV”, and “BJ” in the comments denote modifications made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of `hyperref`, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the hyperlink argument in the contents lines.

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register `\mtc@toks` is used as a verbatim memory.

```
993 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectioning commands, below `\chapter`:

`\subsection`

```

\subsubsection 994 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
\paragraph 995 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\subparagraph 996 \fi
997 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
998 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
999 \fi
1000 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
1001 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1002 \fi
1003 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
1004 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
1005 \fi
1006 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
1007 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1008 \fi
```

`\coffee` A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for `\coffee`:

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`

```

1009 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
1010 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
1011 \fi
```

`\starchapter` If it is `\starchapter` (for a starred chapter), we increment the `mtc` counter, build a new `minitoc` file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.

`\stepcounter`

`\if@longextensions@`

```

\mtcname 1012 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\themtc 1013 \stepcounter{mtc}%
\tf@mtc 1014 \if@longextensions@
\closeout 1015 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 1016 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
1017 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
1018 \else
1019 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1020 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
1021 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
1022 \fi
1023 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1024 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
1025 \fi
```



```

\starsection For starred sectioning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
  \starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 1026 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
  \starparagraph 1027 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 1028 \fi
  1029 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
  1030 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
  1031 \fi
  1032 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
  1033 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
  1034 \fi
  1035 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
  1036 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
  1037 \fi
  1038 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
  1039 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
  1040 \fi
  1041 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
  \MTC@next process the first one:
  \MTC@list
  1042 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
  \openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
  \MTC@toc 1043 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
  \MTC@read 1044 \ifeof\@inputcheck
  1045 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0010>]{minitoc}%
  1046 {No file #1.
  1047 \MessageBreak
  1048 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
  1049 \expandafter\MTC@toc
  1050 \else
  1051 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0024>]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
  1052 \expandafter\MTC@read
  1053 \fi
  1054 }

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
  \read
\@inputcheck 1055 \def\MTC@read{%
  \MTC@line 1056 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

```

\MTC@test The . . . . . make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
\MTC@line
  \MTC@ 1057 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line. . . . \MTC@% %%HO: . added
  1058 }%

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit
\contentsline chapters:
\MTC@contentsline
  \mtc@string 1059 %%HO/BJ: now patch \MTC@test,
  \@input 1060 %%HO/BJ: call \MTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
  \MTC@list
\chapterend Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\closeout the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\tf@mtc the next file in the list. Thanks to A.J. “Tony” ROBERTS.
\openout
\chapterbegin 1061 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{% %%HO: #6 added
\addtocounter 1062 \ifx#1\contentsline
  \MTC@toc 1063 \let\mtc@string\string
  \MTC@read 1064 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
  1065 %%HO/BJ: 4. parameter added by Tony Roberts
  1066 \let\mtc@string\relax
  1067 \else\ifx#1\@input
  1068 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
  1069 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
  1070 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  1071 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  1072 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
  1073 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
  1074 \fi\fi\fi\fi
  1075 \ifeof\@inputcheck
  1076 \expandafter\MTC@toc
  1077 \else
  1078 \expandafter\MTC@read
  1079 \fi
  1080 }%

```

9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
`\MLF@list`
`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
1081 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1082 \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
1083 \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:
`\MLF@list`
`\MLF@explist` 1084 `\def\MLF@lof{%`
1085 `\ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}`

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new minilof file is created.
`\arabic`
`\xchapter`

```
1086 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
1087 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}% %%H0: space removed
1088 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
1089 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

```
\themtc
\mlfname 1090 \if@longextensions@
\closeout 1091 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 1092 {Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}
\openout 1093 \def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%
1094 \else
1095 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1096 {Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}
1097 \def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%
1098 \fi
1099 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1100 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname
1101 \fi
```

`\figure` If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:
`\subfigure`

```
\mtc@toks 1102 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1103 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1104 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%
1105 \fi
```

```

1106 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
1107 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1108 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
1109 \fi
1110 }

```

\MLF@explist The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the first one:

```

\MLF@next
\MLF@list

```

```

1111 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

\MLF@loop And now, we scan the .lof file:

```

\openin
\@inputcheck 1112 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLF@lof 1113 \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLF@read 1114 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0008>]{minitoc}%
1115 {No file #1.
1116 \MessageBreak
1117 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%
1118 \expandafter\MLF@lof
1119 \else
1120 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0034>]{minitoc}%
1121 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%
1122 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

```

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:

```

\read
\@inputcheck 1123 \def\MLF@read{%
1124 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

```

\MLF@line The make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:

```

\MLF@test
\MLF@ 1125 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line.....\MLF@% %%H0: . added
1126 }%

```

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
  \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
  \@input
  \MLF@list 1127 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{% %%HO: #6 added
\chapterend 1128 \ifx#1\contentsline
  \closeout 1129 \let\mtc@string\string
  \tf@mtc 1130 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%HO: #4 added
  \openout 1131 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 1132 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 1133 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
  \MLF@lof 1134 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
  \MLF@read 1135 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  1136 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
  1137 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
  1138 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
  1139 \fi\fi\fi\fi
  1140 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
  1141 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

```

\MLT@next This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
\MLT@list
\MLT@loop Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

1142 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1143 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
1144 \MLT@loop{#1}}

\MLT@lot Checks if the list is empty:
\MLT@list
\MLT@explist 1145 \def\MLT@lot{%
1146 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}

```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the `mtc` counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```
1147 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
1148   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}% %%H0: space removed
1149   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
1150     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

```
\themtc
\mltname 1151   \if@longextensions@
\closeout 1152   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 1153     {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc@gobble}%
\openout 1154   \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
1155   \else
1156     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1157     {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc@gobble}%
1158     \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
1159   \fi
1160   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1161   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
1162   \fi
```

`\table` If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

```
\subtable
\mtc@toks 1163   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1164   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1165   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
1166   \fi
1167   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
1168   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1169   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
1170   \fi
1171 }
```

`\MLT@explist` The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLT@next` to process the first one:

```
\MLT@list
1172 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}
```

`\MLT@loop` And now, we scan the `.lot` file:

```
\openin
\@inputcheck 1173 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLT@lot 1174   \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLT@read 1175   \mtcPackageWarning[<W0009>]{minitoc}%
```

```

1176     {No file #1.
1177     \MessageBreak
1178     MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
1179     \expandafter\MLT@lot
1180 \else
1181     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0037>]{minitoc}%
1182     {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
1183     \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

```

```

\MLT@read Read the next entry in the .lot file:
  \read
\@inputcheck 1184 \def\MLT@read{%
1185   \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

```

```

\MLT@line The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
  \MLT@ 1186 \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@% %%HO: . added
1187   }%

```

\MLT@test The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
  \@input
  \MLT@list 1188 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{% %%HO: #6 added
\chapterend 1189 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 1190 \let\mtc@string\string
  \tf@mtc 1191 \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%HO: #4 added
  \openout 1192 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 1193 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 1194 \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
  \MLT@lot 1195 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
  \MLT@read 1196 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1197 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1198 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
1199 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
1200 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1201 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
1202 \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a \@ifundefined{chapter} alternative).

```

1203 }%

```

9.43 Macro to write a contents line

`\mtc@dot` The `\MTC@WriteContentsline` macro makes the definition of `\MTC@contentsline` shorter.
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` An extra `\edef` level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):

`\mtc@param`
`\write` The arguments of `\MTC@WriteContentsline` are:
`\tf@mtc`
`\@resetfont`
`\mtc@string` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\contentsline` #2: font shorthand =: `\csname #2font\endcsname`;
`\mtc@toks` #3: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
#4: the #4 argument of `\MTC@contentsline` (hyperlink).

```

1204 \def\mtc@dot{.}
1205 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
1206   \def\mtc@param{#4}%
1207   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
1208     {\string\reset@font
1209     \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
1210     \string\mtc@string
1211     \string\contentsline{#1}%
1212     {\the\mtc@toks}%
1213     {\string\reset@font
1214     \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
1215     \space #3%
1216     }%
1217     \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
1218     \else
1219     {#4}% %%HO/BJ: #4 is hyperlink
1220     \fi
1221     }%
1222   }%
1223 }
```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:

`\write`
`\tf@mtc`
`\@resetfont`
`\coffeefont` #1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;
`\mtc@string` #2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.
`\mtc@toks`

```

1224 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
1225   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
1226     {\string\reset@font \string\coffeefont \string\mtc@string
1227     {\the\mtc@toks}%
1228     {\string\reset@font \string\coffeefont \space #3%
1229     }%
1229 }
```



```

1230 }%
1231 }%
1232 }

```

9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the corresponding new coun-
\newcounter ters: partlofdepth and partlotdepth. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done
\setcounter after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:
\c@lofdepth
\c@lotdepth
1233 \AtBeginDocument{%
1234 \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
1235 {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
1236 \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
1237 {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
1238 }

```

9.45 Part level commands

```

\xpart If \part is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the parttocs and
\theptc related commands (\theptc, \Thepart, \adjustptc, \decrementptc, \incrementptc),
\Thepart the obsolete command \firstpartis, and the depth counter parttocdepth.
\adjustptc
\decrementptc 1239 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
\incrementptc 1240 {%
\firstpartis 1241 \def\xpart{xpart}
\firstpartis 1242 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
\if@firstpartis@used@ 1243 \def\firstpartis#1%
\newcounter 1244 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0004>]{minitoc}%
\setcounter 1245 {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete
1246 \MessageBreak
1247 command}%
1248 \@firstpartis@used@true}
1249 \newcounter{ptc}
1250 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
1251 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
1252 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
1253 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
1254 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}
1255 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
1256 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

```

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is `\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```
1257 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
1258   {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
1259   {\let\ptc@rule\relax}
```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```
1260 \newlength\ptcindent
1261 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}
```

`\ptcfont` 9.46 Fonts for the parttocs

`\ptcSfont`
`\ptcSSfont`
`\ptcSSSfont` We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if `\chapter` is defined
`\ptcPfont` (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):
`\ptcSPfont`

```
\plffont 1262 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\plfSfont 1263   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\pltfont 1264   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\pltSfont 1265   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\ptifont 1266   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
1267   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont          % (paragraphs)
1268   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont        % (subparagraphs)
1269   \let\plffont\ptcfont         % (figures)
1270   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
1271   \let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
1272   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
1273   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
1274 }%
```

`\ptcfont` If `\chapter` is defined, the fonts are larger and `\ptcCfont` must be defined:

```
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 1275 {%
\ptcSSfont 1276   \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\ptcSSSfont 1277   \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)
\ptcPfont 1278   \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)
\ptcSPfont 1279   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\plffont 1280   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
\plfSfont 1281   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont          % (paragraphs)
\pltfont 1282   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont        % (subparagraphs)
\pltSfont 1283   \let\plffont\ptcfont         % (figures)
\ptifont
```

```

1284 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
1285 \let\pltfont\ptcfont      % (tables)
1286 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont    % (subtables)
1287 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
1288 }

```

9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

`\parttoc` We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables
`\partlof` (`\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot`). This formatting is different if `\chapter` is defined or
`\partlot` undefined.

`\c@pti` If `\chapter` is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or
`\l@pti` empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).
`\r@pti`

```

\l@pti 1289 \ifundefined{chapter}{%
\l@pti 1290 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
1291 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
1292 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
1293 \def\l@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1294 \def\r@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1295 }%

```

`\e@pti` But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more
`\n@pti` complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

1296 {%
1297 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1298 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

`\l@pti` For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\l@pti 1299 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1300 \@topnewpage[\@makehead@l{#1}]%
\@afterheading 1301 \else
\ptifont 1302 \@makehead@l{#1}%
\@makehead@l 1303 \@afterheading
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1304 \fi}
\mtcgapafterheads 1305 \def\@makehead@l#1{%
1306 \vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1307 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright
1308 \ptifont
1309 #1\par
1310 \nobreak

```

```

1311     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
1312   }}

```

`\r@pti` For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1313 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@r 1314   \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]%
\@afterheading 1315   \else
\ptifont 1316   \@makehead@r{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1317   \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 1318   \fi}
1319 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
1320   \vspace*\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1321   {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft
1322     \ptifont
1323     #1\par
1324     \nobreak
1325     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
1326   }}

```

`\c@pti` For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 1327 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@c 1328   \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]%
\@afterheading 1329   \else
\ptifont 1330   \@makehead@c{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 1331   \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 1332   \fi}
1333 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
1334   \vspace*\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
1335   {\parindent \z@ \centering
1336     \ptifont
1337     #1\par
1338     \nobreak
1339     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
1340   }}%
1341 }

```

`\l@pti` By default, titles are on left:

```

\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 1342 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 1343 \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\df@ptilf 1344 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\do@ptilt 1345 \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilt 1346 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti
1347 \let\df@ptilt\l@pti

```

9.48 The `ptc@verse` environment

`ptc@verse` Each parttoc is placed inside a `ptc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\ptc@verse` and `\endptc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\@centercr` `\itemindent`, `\partopsep`, `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to `\ptcindent`. `\itemindent` `\endptc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\listparindent
  \topsep 1348 \def\ptc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
  \parsep 1349 \list{ }\itemsep\z@
  \parskip 1350 \itemindent \z@
  \partopsep 1351 \listparindent \itemindent
  \ptcindent 1352 \partopsep\z@
  \iftightmtc 1353 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
  \ifktightmtc 1354 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
  1355 \topsep=lex
  1356 \leftmargin\ptcindent
  1357 \rightmargin\leftmargin}\item[]}
  1358 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` `\partlof` `\partlot` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should be placed after a `\part` command to produce a `parttoc`, a `partlof` or a `partlot`, and the formatting is different and depends of the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` `\parttoc@` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a `parttoc` (no automatic `parttoc`). First, `\parttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
1359 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\parttoc@}{\parttoc@d}}
```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `\if@parttoc@used@` parttoc file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 1360 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
1361 \global\@parttoc@used@true
1362 \if@longextensions@%
1363 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
1364 \else
1365 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
1366 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1367 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1368 \if@mtc@FE
1369 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1370 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1371 \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
1372 \else

```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```

1373 \beforeparttoc

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle 1374 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 1375 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\ptctitle 1376 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1377 \thispageparttocstyle
1378 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctile}}%
1379 }%

```

`\do@ptitc` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

\@e@pti
\@n@pti
\@c@pti 1380 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 1381 \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\@e@pti
\@r@pti 1382 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\@n@pti
\@df@pti 1383 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1384 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\@l@pti
\ptctitle 1385 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1386 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\@df@ptitc
samepage 1387 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1388 \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

```

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc,
  \parskip then we set the font:
  \ptcfont

1389      \raggedright
1390      \parskip=\z@%
1391      \reset@font\ptcfont%
1392      \parindent=\z@%
1393      \nopagebreak[4]%
1394      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
1395      \par\noindent
1396      \nopagebreak[4]%

\ptc@rule The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
  tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
\columnwidth the parttoc.
  \ptifont
\do@ptitc 1397      \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
  \mtc@v 1398      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 1399      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
  \hline 1400      \end{tabular}%
1401      \else
1402      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1403      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
1404      \end{tabular}%
1405      \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
  \mtc@BBR parameters:
\ptcindent

1406      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1407      \leftmargin\ptcindent
1408      \rightmargin\ptcindent
1409      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1410      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

ptc@verse We enter in a ptc@verse environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally)
  \c@tocdepth to parttocdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary
\c@parttocdepth to avoid a negative indentation.
  \mtc@BBR

1411      \begin{ptc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
1412      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\ptc@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with
\@dottedtocline its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke \l@chapter ignoring the
\@undottedtocline page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting set-
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile tings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \ptc@setform. Then the parttoc file is
\ptc@setform inserted, followed by a strut, and the ptc@verse environment is terminated.
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut 1413 \beginngroup
ptc@verse 1414 \makeatletter
1415 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
1416 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{%
1417 \@ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
1418 {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
1419 \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}{%
1420 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1421 \ptc@setform
1422 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1423 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
1424 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1425 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1426 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

\ptc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter is not defined), and \afterparttoc.

```

samepage
\afterparttoc 1427 \kernafterparttoc
1428 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
1429 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1430 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
1431 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

9.49.2 The \partlof command

\partlof This command must be used after \part if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, \partlof@ detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \partlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1432 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\partlof@}{\partlof@d}}

```

\partlof@ The \partlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 1433 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
1434 \global\@partlof@used@true
1435 \if@longextensions@%
1436 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%

```



```

1437 \else
1438 \def\@tocfile{G\Thepart}%
1439 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 1440      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1441      \if@mtc@FE
1442      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1443      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1444      \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
1445      \else

```

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```

1446      \beforepartlof

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispagepartlofsty 1447      \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 1448      \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 1449      \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1450      \thispagepartlofsty
1451      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
1452      }%

```

`\do@ptilf` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

\@n@pti
\@c@pti 1453      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 1454      \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\@e@pti
\@r@pti 1455      \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\@n@pti
\@df@pti 1456      \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1457      \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\@l@pti
\plftitle 1458      \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1459      \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\@df@ptilf
samepage 1460      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1461      \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```

\plffont
1462      \raggedright
1463      \parskip=\z@%
1464      \reset@font\plffont%

```

`\plf@rule` The partoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlof.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptilf 1465      \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 1466      \nopagebreak[4]%
\plftitle 1467      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 1468      \par\noindent
1469      \ifx\plf@rule\relax
1470      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1471      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
1472      \end{tabular}%
1473      \else
1474      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
1475      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
1476      \mtc@hstrut\\
1477      \end{tabular}%
1478      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
1479      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
1480      \leftmargin\ptcindent
1481      \rightmargin\ptcindent
1482      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
1483      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

1484      \begin{ptc@verse}%
1485      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
1486      {}%
1487      {c@lofdepth=c@partlofdepth
1488      \ifnum c@lofdepth<1\relax c@lofdepth=1\fi}
1489      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plf@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\plf@setform`. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plf@setform
\@tocfile 1490 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 1491 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 1492 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%

```

```

1493 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
1494 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
1495 \plf@setform
1496 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1497 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
1498 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1499 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1500 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\plf@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.

```

\mtc@zrule
  samepage
\afterpartlof 1501 \kernafterpartlof
1502 \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
1503 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1504 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
1505 \afterpartlof\fi}

```

9.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1506 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\partlot@}{\partlot@[d]}}

```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

```

\if@partlot@used@
\if@longextensions@
  \@tocfile
  \Thepart 1507 %
1508 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
1509 \global\@partlot@used@true
1510 \if@longextensions@%
1511 \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
1512 \else
1513 \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
1514 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
  \@tocfile 1515 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1516 \if@mtc@FE
1517 \mtc@PackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%

```

```

1518         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1519         \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
1520         \else

```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```

1521         \beforepartlot

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 1522         \ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\MakeUppercase 1523         \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plttitle 1524         \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
1525         \thispagepartlotstyle
1526         \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
1527         }%

```

`\do@ptilt` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```

\@n@pti
\@c@pti 1528         \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 1529         \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\@e@pti
\@r@pti 1530         \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\@n@pti
\@df@pti 1531         \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 1532         \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\@l@pti
\plttitle 1533         \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\@r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 1534         \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\@df@ptilt
samepage 1535         \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
1536         \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot, then we set the font:

```

\@pltfont
1537         \raggedright
1538         \parskip=\z@%
1539         \reset@font\pltfont%
1540         \parindent=\z@%
1541         \nolinebreak[4]%
1542         \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nolinebreak[4]%
1543         \par\noindent

```

`\plt@rule` The partlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlot.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptilt 1544      \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v    1545      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 1546      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline    1547      \end{tabular}%
          1548      \else
          1549      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
          1550      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
          1551      \mtc@hstrut\\
          1552      \end{tabular}%
          1553      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
          1554      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
          1555      \leftmargin\ptcindent
          1556      \rightmargin\ptcindent
          1557      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          1558      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

          1559      \begin{ptc@verse}%
          1560      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
          1561      {}%
          1562      {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
          1563      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
          1564      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plt@setform
\@tocfile 1565 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 1566 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 1567 \@ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
          1568 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}}
          1569 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
          1570 \plt@setform
          1571 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          1572 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}

```

```

1573 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
1574 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
1575 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

```

\ptc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule is not defined), and \afterpartlot. The blank line (\) is essential.
samepage
\afterpartlot 1576 \kernafterpartlot
1577 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
1578 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
1579 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
1580 \afterpartlot\fi}

```

9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

```

\@dottedtocline The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that \l@xpart
\l@xpart uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These
\l@pchapter commands are similar to \l@subsection, only the arguments have been altered:
\l@psect
\pchapter 1581 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect 1582 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
1583 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
1584 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
1585 \def\psect{psect}

```

9.51 Patching the \part command, continued

```

\sv@part We patch both branches of the \part command: \@part (unstarred \part) and \@spart
\mtc@svpart (\part*). We add the incrementation of the ptc counter to both branches. In the unstarred
\@part branch, we add xpart entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we
\addtocontents add a \partbegin line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real
\sv@spart (\relax).
\ptc@spart
\@spart 1586 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 1587 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#{1}]{#2}\relax
\partbegin 1588 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend 1589 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
1590 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
1591 \stepcounter{ptc}}
1592 \let\sv@spart\@spart
1593 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
1594 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
1595 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}

```

```

1596 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
1597 \let\partend\relax
1598 \let\partbegin\relax

```

9.52 The `\doparttoc` command and its siblings

`\doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command works like the `\dominitoc` command, `\dopartlof` like `\dominiloof` and `\dopartlot` like `\dominilot`.

`\@doparttoc` The `\doparttoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and creates the `.ptc(N)` files (`.ptc` becomes `.P` on MS-DOS).

```

\setcounter
1599 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
1600   \makeatletter
1601   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1602   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

`\@dopartlof` The `\dopartlof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and creates the `.plf(N)` files (`.plf` becomes `.G` on MS-DOS).

```

\setcounter
1603 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
1604   \makeatletter
1605   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1606   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

`\@dopartlot` The `\dopartlot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and creates the `.plt(N)` files (`.plt` becomes `.U` on MS-DOS).

```

\setcounter
1607 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
1608   \makeatletter
1609   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
1610   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

`\doparttoc` We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:

`\dopartlof`

```

\dopartlot 1611 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
1612 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
1613 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}

```

```

\doarttoc@ We treat the optional argument of \doarttoc (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ parttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\if@doarttoc@used@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 1614 \def\doarttoc@[#1]{%
\df@ptitc 1615 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@pti 1616 \if@doarttoc@used@
\@n@pti 1617 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@pti 1618 {The \string\doarttoc \space command
\@l@pti 1619 \MessageBreak
\@r@pti 1620 has been invoked more than once
1621 \MessageBreak}
1622 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1623 \fi
1624 \fi
1625 \global\@doarttoc@used@true
1626 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\@e@pti%
1627 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\@n@pti%
1628 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\@c@pti%
1629 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\@l@pti%
1630 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\@r@pti%
1631 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1632 \@doarttoc}

```

```

\doartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \doartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@doartlof@used@ partlofs) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 1633 \def\doartlof@[#1]{%
\df@ptilf 1634 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@pti 1635 \if@doartlof@used@
\@n@pti 1636 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@pti 1637 {The \string\doartlof \space command
\@l@pti 1638 \MessageBreak
\@r@pti 1639 has been invoked more than once
1640 \MessageBreak}
1641 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1642 \fi
1643 \fi
1644 \global\@doartlof@used@true
1645 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\@e@pti%
1646 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\@n@pti%
1647 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\@c@pti%
1648 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\@l@pti%
1649 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\@r@pti%
1650 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1651 \@doartlof}

```



```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 1652 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 1653 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 1654 \if@dopartlot@used@
\n@pti 1655 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 1656 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\l@pti 1657 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 1658 has been invoked more than once
1659 \MessageBreak}
1660 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
1661 \fi
1662 \fi
1663 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
1664 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\@pti%
1665 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\n@pti%
1666 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\c@pti%
1667 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\l@pti%
1668 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\r@pti%
1669 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
1670 \@@dopartlot}

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the \@dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
\@@dopartlof file descriptor.
\@@dopartlot
\tf@mtc 1671 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
1672 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
1673 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttoCs

```

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
\PTC@list
\PTC@loop 1674 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1675 \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
1676 \PTC@loop{#1}}

\PTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 1677 \def\PTC@toc{%
1678 \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects interesting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.
  \part
  \theptc
  \tf@mtc
  \ptcname 1679 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 1680 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
  1681 \stepcounter{ptc}%
  1682 \if@longextensions@
  1683 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
  1684 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
  1685 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
  1686 \else
  1687 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
  1688 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
  1689 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
  1690 \fi
  1691 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  1692 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
  1693 \fi
  1694 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starpart\relax
  1695 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

1696 \if@longextensions@
1697 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1698 {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1699 \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
1700 \else
1701 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1702 {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
1703 \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
1704 \fi
1705 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1706 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
1707 \fi

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```

1708 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters,
  \chapter sections, etc.:
  \pchapter
  \section 1709 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
  \coffee 1710 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
  \subsection 1711 \fi
  \subsubsection
  \paragraph
  \subparagraph

```

```

1712 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
1713 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
1714 \fi
1715 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
1716 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
1717 \fi
1718 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
1719 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
1720 \fi
1721 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
1722 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1723 \fi
1724 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
1725 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1726 \fi
1727 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
1728 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
1729 \fi
1730 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
1731 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1732 \fi

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline And for the starred sectioning commands:

```

\starchapter
\starsection 1733 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 1734 %%HO: the following line should be disabled: \stepcounter{ptc}%
\starsubsubsection 1735 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starparagraph 1736 \fi
\starsubparagraph 1737 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
1738 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
1739 \fi
1740 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
1741 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
1742 \fi
1743 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
1744 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
1745 \fi
1746 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
1747 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
1748 \fi
1749 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
1750 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
1751 \fi
1752 }

```

\PTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \PTC@next to process the first one:
 \PTC@next
 \PTC@list

```

1753 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}

```

`\PTC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
`\PTC@toc` process the next entry in the list.

```
\PTC@read
1754 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1755 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1756 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0013>]{minitoc}%
1757 {No file #1
1758 \MessageBreak
1759 PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
1760 \expandafter\PTC@toc
1761 \else
1762 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0025>]{minitoc}%
1763 {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
1764 \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

`\PTC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```
\PTC@line
1765 \def\PTC@read{%
1766 \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

`\PTC@test` The make sure that `\PTC@test` has enough arguments:

```
\PTC@line
1767 \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line. . . . \PTC% %%HO: . added
1768 }%
```

`\PTC@test` The `\PTC@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
1769 %%HO/BJ: now patch \PTC@test,
1770 %%HO/BJ: call \PTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

`\PTC@contentsline` Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is `\@input`, add
`\mtc@string` the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
`\PTC@list` the next file in the list.

```
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read 1771 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{% %%HO: #6 added
\partend 1772 \ifx#1\contentsline
1773 \let\mtc@string\string
1774 \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
1775 %%HO/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
1776 \let\mtc@string\relax
1777 \else\ifx#1\@input
1778 \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
1779 \else\ifx#1\partend
1780 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1781 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
```

```

1782 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1783     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1784 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1785 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
1786 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

`\PLF@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```

\PLF@list
\PLF@loop 1787 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1788     \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
1789     \PLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\PLF@lof` Check if the list is empty:

```

\PLF@list
\PLF@explist 1790 \def\PLF@lof{%
1791     \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}

```

`\PLF@contentsline` The macro `\PLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

```

\part
\theptc
\tf@mtc
\plfname 1792 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO: #4 added
\PLF@WriteContentsLine 1793 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
1794     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

1795 \if@longextensions@
1796     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1797     {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
1798     \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
1799 \else
1800     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1801     {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
1802     \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
1803 \fi
1804 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1805 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
1806 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```

\figure Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subfigure
\mtc@toks 1807 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1808 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1809 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
1810 \fi
1811 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
1812 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1813 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfS}{#3}{#4}%
1814 \fi
1815 }

```

`\PLF@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call `\PLF@next` to process the first one:

```

\PLF@next
\PLF@list
1816 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}

```

`\PLF@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, `\PLF@lof` process the next entry in the list.

```

\PLF@read
1817 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
1818 \ifeof\@inputcheck
1819 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0011>]{minitoc}%
1820 {No file #1
1821 \MessageBreak
1822 PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
1823 \expandafter\PLF@lof
1824 \else
1825 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0035>]{minitoc}%
1826 {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
1827 \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}

```

`\PLF@read` Read the next entry of the `.lof` file.

```

\PLF@line
1828 \def\PLF@read{%
1829 \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line

```

`\PLF@test` The make sure that `\PLF@test` has enough arguments:

```

\PLF@line
1830 \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line.....\PLF@% %H0: . added
1831 }%

```

`\PLF@test` The `\PLF@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
1832 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLF@test,
1833 %%H0/BJ: call \PLF@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

```
\PLF@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\PLF@list the next file in the list.
\PLF@lof
\PLF@read 1834 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 1835 \ifx#1\contentsline
1836 \let\mtc@string\string
1837 \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
1838 \let\mtc@string\relax
1839 \else\ifx#1\@input
1840 \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
1841 \else\ifx#1\partend
1842 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1843 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1844 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1845 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1846 \fi\fi\fi\fi
1847 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
1848 \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi%
```

9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\PLT@list
\PLT@loop 1849 \def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
1850 \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
1851 \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

`\PLT@lot` Check if the list is empty:

```
\PLT@list
\PLT@explist 1852 \def\PLT@lot{%
1853 \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}
```

`\PLT@contentsline` The macro `\PLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.

```
\tf@mtc
\pltname 1854 \def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\PLT@WriteContentsLine
```

```
1855 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
1856 \stepcounter{ptc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:
`\pltname`

```
1857 \if@longextensions@%
1858 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1859 {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
1860 \def\pltname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
1861 \else
1862 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
1863 {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
1864 \def\pltname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
1865 \fi
1866 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1867 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\pltname
1868 \fi
```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

```
\table Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subtable
\mtc@toks 1869 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 1870 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1871 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
1872 \fi
1873 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
1874 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
1875 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
1876 \fi
1877 }
```

`\PLT@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call `\PLT@next` to process the first one:

```
\PLT@next
\PLT@list
1878 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}
```

`\PLT@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.
`\PLT@lot`
`\PLT@read`

```
1879 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
1880 \ifeof@inputcheck
1881 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0012>]{minitoc}%
```



```

1882     {No file #1
1883     \MessageBreak
1884     PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
1885     \expandafter\PLT@lot
1886 \else
1887     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0038>]{minitoc}%
1888     {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
1889     \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}

```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```

1890 \def\PLT@read{%
1891   \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line

```

\PLT@test The make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```

1892   \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line. . . .\PLT@% %%H0: . added
1893   }%

```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

1894 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLT@test,
1895 %%H0/BJ: call \PLT@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters

```

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

\PLT@list

\PLT@lot

```

\PLT@read 1896 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 1897   \ifx#1\contentsline
1898     \let\mtc@string\string
1899     \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
1900     \let\mtc@string\relax
1901   \else\ifx#1\@input
1902     \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
1903   \else\ifx#1\partend
1904     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
1905     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
1906   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
1907     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
1908   \fi\fi\fi\fi
1909   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
1910   \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 297):

```
1911 }%
```

9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

```
\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create new counters for the depths
  \c@lofdepth of the corresponding mini-tables: sectlofdepth and sectlotdepth. These counters are
  \c@lotdepth initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument
  \newcounter block:
  \setcounter

1912 \AtBeginDocument{%
1913   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
1914     {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
1915   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
1916     {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
1917 }
```

9.54 Section-level commands

```
\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ The section-level commands are defined only if \chapter is not defined, hence in article-like
  \if@mtc@section@def@ document classes, and only if \section is defined:
```

```
1918 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
1919 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

```
\firstsectionis We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
  \adjuststc stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
  \decrementstc depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
  \incrementstc the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
  \stc@rule sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
  \stcindent
  \columnwidth 1920 \def\firstsectionis#1%
1921   {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0005>]{minitoc}%
1922     {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete
1923       \MessageBreak
1924       command}}%
1925   \@firstsectionis@used@true}
1926 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
1927 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
1928 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
1929 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
1930 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
```

```
1931 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
1932 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@
```

9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```
\stcfont We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSfont 1933 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % secttoc
\stcPfont 1934 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % (subsections)
\stcSPfont 1935 \let\stcSSfont\stcfont % (subsubsections)
\slffont 1936 \let\stcPfont\stcfont % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont 1937 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont 1938 \let\slffont\stcfont % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont 1939 \let\slfSfont\stcfont % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont 1940 \let\sltfont\stcfont % sectlot (tables)
1941 \let\sltSfont\stcfont % sectlot (subtables)
1942 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries} % titles
```

9.56 Internal macros for title positioning

Some internal macros for title positioning, from the optional arguments of `\dosecttoc` and `\secttoc` commands (and siblings):

```
\l@sti Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a vertical correction for empty titles, from
\c@sti Frank MITTELBACH):
\r@sti
\e@sti 1943 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\n@sti 1944 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
1945 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
1946 \def\e@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
1947 \def\n@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

\do@stic By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stic
\do@stilf 1948 \let\do@stic\l@sti
\df@stilf 1949 \let\df@stic\l@sti
\do@stilt 1950 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt 1951 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti 1952 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
1953 \let\df@stilt\l@sti
```

9.57 The `stc@verse` environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `\iftightmtc` `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `\ifktightmtc` `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored.

```

1954 \def\stc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
1955 \list{}\itemsep\z@
1956         \itemindent \z@
1957         \listparindent \itemindent
1958         \partopsep \z@
1959         \iftightmtc \parsep \z@ \fi
1960         \ifktightmtc \parskip \z@ \fi
1961         \topsep 1ex %% 20060731 was \z@
1962         \leftmargin\stcindent
1963         \rightmargin\leftmargin\item[]}
1964 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

9.58 The `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, and `\sectlot` commands

These three commands are very similar.

9.58.1 The `\secttoc` command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `\secttoc@` `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

1965 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@d}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for `\if@secttoc@used@` a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `\if@longextensions@` `secttoc` file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 1966 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
1967 \global\@secttoc@used@true
1968 \if@longextensions@%
1969 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestc}%
1970 \else
1971 \def\@tocfile{S\thestc}%
1972 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:
`\if@mtc@FE`
`\@tocfile`

```

1973     \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
1974     \if@mtc@FE
1975     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
1976         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
1977     \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
1978     \else

```

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:
`\thispagesecttocstyle`

```

1979     \beforesecttoc
1980     \thispagesecttocstyle

```

`\do@stic` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positioning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positioning.

```

\do@stic
  \e@sti
  \n@sti
  \c@sti 1981 %    \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stcitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stcitle}}%
  \l@sti 1982    \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \r@sti 1983    \if #1e\let\do@stic\e@sti
  \df@sti 1984    \else\if #1n\let\do@stic\n@sti
\mtc@CkStr 1985    \else\if #1c\let\do@stic\c@sti
  \stcitle 1986    \else\if #1l\let\do@stic\l@sti
  \if@mtc@FE 1987    \else\if #1r\let\do@stic\r@sti
  samepage 1988    \else\if #1d\let\do@stic\df@stic
  1989    \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
  1990    \mtc@CkStr{\stcitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stic\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc, then we set the font:
`\parskip`
`\stcfont`

```

1991     \raggedright
1992     \parskip=\z@%
1993     \reset@font\stcfont%
1994     \parindent=\z@%
1995     \nopcode[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the secttoc.
`\columnwidth`
`\stifont`

```

\do@stic 1996     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopcode[4]%
  \mtc@v 1997     \par\noindent
\stcitle
  \hline

```

```

1998      \nopagebreak[4]%
1999      \ifx\stc@rule\relax
2000      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2001      \reset@font\stifont\do@stitle{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
2002      \end{tabular}%
2003      \else
2004      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
2005      \reset@font\stifont\do@stitle{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
2006      \end{tabular}%
2007      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:
`\mtc@BBR`
`\stcindent`

```

2008      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
2009      \leftmargin\stcindent
2010      \rightmargin\stcindent
2011      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
2012      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the sectoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `sectocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.
`\c@tocdepth`
`\c@sectocdepth`

```

\mtc@BBR 2013      \begin{stc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@sectocdepth%
2014      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\stc@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\stc@setform`. Then the sectoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`

```

\stc@setform
\@tocfile 2015 \begin{group}
\mtc@strut 2016 \makeatletter
stc@verse 2017 \stc@setform%
2018 \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%
2019 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
2020 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
2021 \stc@setform%
2022 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2023 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
2024 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
2025 \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
2026 \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
  samepage
\aftersecttoc 2027      \kernaftersecttoc
                2028      \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
                2029      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                2030      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

9.58.2 The `\sectlof` command

`\sectlof` The `\sectlof` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilof` (but simpler). First, `\sectlof` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
2031 \def\sectlof{\ifnextchar[{\sectlof@}{\sectlof@d]}}
```

`\sectlof@` The `\sectlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlof@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\if@sectlof@used@
\if@longextensions@
  \@tocfile
  \thestc 2032 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
            2033 \global\if@sectlof@used@true
            2034 \if@longextensions@%
            2035 \def\@tocfile{slf\thestc}%
            2036 \else
            2037 \def\@tocfile{H\thestc}%
            2038 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
2039      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2040      \if@mtc@FE
2041      \mtc@PackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
2042      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
2043      \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
2044      \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

2045      \thispagesectlofsty
2046 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
2047      \beforesectlof

```

```

\do@stilf We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positioning argument. If the title is empty,
  \e@sti we simulate the “e” positioning.
  \n@sti
  \c@sti 2048      \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \l@sti 2049      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
  \r@sti 2050      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
  \df@sti 2051      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 2052      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 2053      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 2054      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
  samepage 2055      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
  2056      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,
  \parskip then we set the font:
  \slffont
  2057      \raggedright
  2058      \parskip=\z@%
  2059      \reset@font\slffont%
  2060      \parindent=\z@%
  2061      \nopagebreak[4]%

\slf@rule The sectlof title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
  tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
  \stifont the sectlof.
\columnwidth
\do@stilf 2062      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
  \mtc@v 2063      \par\noindent
\slftitle 2064      \ifx\slf@rule\relax
  \hline 2065      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
  2066      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
  2067      \end{tabular}%
  2068      \else
  2069      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
  2070      \mtc@hstrut
  2071      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
  2072      \end{tabular}%
  2073      \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
  \mtc@BBR parameters:
  \stcindent
  2074      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
  2075      \leftmargin\stcindent
  2076      \rightmargin\stcindent
  2077      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
  2078      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```


`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the `sectlof`. The `tocdepth` is forced (locally) to `sectlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```
\c@sectlofdepth
\mtc@BBR 2079      \begin{stc@verse}%
          2080      \ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
          2081      {}%
          2082      {c@lofdepth=\c@sectlofdepth
          2083      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
          2084      \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\slf@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slf@setform`. Then the `sectlof` file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

```
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\slf@setform
\@tocfile 2085 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 2086 \makeatletter
stc@verse 2087 \ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
          2088 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
          2089 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
          2090 \slf@setform%
          2091 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          2092 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
          2093 \end{stc@verse}%
```

`\stc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and `\mtc@zrule` `\aftersectlof`. The blank line (`\\`) is essential.

```
samepage
\aftersectlof 2094      \kernaftersectlof
          2095      \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
          2096      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
          2097      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi%
```

9.58.3 The `\sectlot` command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `sectlot` (no automatic `sectlot`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
2098 \def\sectlot{\ifnextchar[{\sectlot@}{\sectlot@[d]}}
```

`\sectlot@` The `\sectlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot file):

```

\if@sectlot@used@
\if@longextensions@
  \@tocfile
  \thestc 2099 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
           2100 \global\@sectlot@used@true
           2101 \if@longextensions@%
           2102 \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
           2103 \else
           2104 \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
           2105 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
           2106 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
           2107 \if@mtc@FE
           2108 \mtc@PackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
           2109 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
           2110 \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
           2111 \else

```

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

           2112 \thispagesectlotstyle
           2113 % \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slttitle}}%
           2114 \beforesectlot

```

`\do@stilt` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positioning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positioning.

```

\do@stilt
  \e@sti
  \n@sti
  \c@sti 2115 \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \l@sti 2116 \if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
  \r@sti 2117 \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
  \df@sti 2118 \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 2119 \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\slttitle 2120 \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 2121 \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
  samepage 2122 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
           2123 \mtc@CkStr{\slttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot, `\parskip` then we set the font: `\sltfont`

```

2124     \raggedright
2125     \parskip=\z@%
2126     \reset@font\sltfont%
2127     \parindent=\z@%
2128     \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the sectlot.

```

\columnrule
\do@stilt 2129     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v    2130     \par\noindent
\slttitle 2131     \ifx\slt@rule\relax
\hline    2132     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
          2133     \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\
          2134     \end{tabular}%
          2135     \else
          2136     \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
          2137     \mtc@hstrut
          2138     \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\slttitle}\\
          2139     \end{tabular}%
          2140     \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
          2141     \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\
          2142     \leftmargin\stcindent
          2143     \rightmargin\stcindent
          2144     \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          2145     \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `sectlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 2146     \begin{stc@verse}%
          2147     \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
          2148     {}%
          2149     {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
          2150     \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
          2151     \leavevmode\\
          \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\slt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slt@setform`. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\slt@setform
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
stc@verse

```

```

2152 \begingroup
2153   \makeatletter
2154   \@ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
2155   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
2156   \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
2157   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
2158   \slt@setform%
2159   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
2160   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
2161   \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
  samepage
\aftersectlot 2162   \kernaftersectlof
                2163   \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
                2164   \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
                2165   \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi%

```

9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and
\l@xsection LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line
\@dottedtocline (except if you cheat).
\l@schapter
  \xsect 2166 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
  \xsection 2167 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
  \schapter 2168 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
            2169 \def\xsect{xsect}
            2170 \def\xsection{xsection}
            2171 \def\schapter{schapter}

```

9.60 Patching the \section command (continued)

```

\@sect We patch the both branches of the \section command: \@sect for the unstarred version and
\addcontentsline \@ssect for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (\@sect), we add a xsect
                contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test \ifnum #2=1 restricts the action to the
                section level macros (because \@sect is also used by \subsection and below, which have
                no mini-tables).

2172 \let\sv@sect\@sect
2173 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
2174 \ifnum #2=1\relax

```

```

2175 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2176 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2177 \fi
2178 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#4}{#5}{#6}[[#7]][#8]}

```

`\section` If it is a section (unstarred or starred via `\starsection`), we add a `xsect` entry in the LOF
`\starsection` and in the LOT.
`\addcontentsline`

```

2179 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
2180 \expandafter
2181 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
2182 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2183 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2184 \fi
2185 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
2186 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
2187 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
2188 \fi

```

`\@svsec` And the remainder of the section header formatting:
`\refstepcounter`
`\@tempskipa` 2189 `\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
`\@hangfrom` 2190 `\let\@svsec\@empty`
`\addcontentsline` 2191 `\else`
`\numberline` 2192 `\refstepcounter{#1}%`
`\@svsechd` 2193 `\edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%`
`\@xsect` 2194 `\fi`
2195 `\@tempskipa #5\relax`
2196 `\ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@`
2197 `\begingroup #6\relax`
2198 `\@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%`
2199 `{\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%`
2200 `\endgroup`
2201 `\csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline`
2202 `{toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
2203 `\else`
2204 `\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%`
2205 `\fi`
2206 `#7}%`
2207 `\else`
2208 `\def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax`
2209 `\@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname`
2210 `{#7}\addcontentsline`
2211 `{toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax`
2212 `\else`
2213 `\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}`
2214 `\fi`
2215 `#7}}%`
2216 `\fi`
2217 `\@xsect{#5}}`

```

\@sect Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands
\sectbegin \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection
\sectend or deeper.
\stc@sect
\addtocontents 2218 \let\stc@sect\@sect
                2219 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
                2220 \ifnum #2<1 \relax
                2221 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
                2222 \fi
                2223 \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[[#7]][#8]}
                2224 \let\sectend\relax
                2225 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

```

\dosecttoc The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc(N)
\@dosecttoc files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).
\STC@next
                2226 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
                2227 \makeatletter
                2228 \setcounter{stc}{0}
                2229 \STC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

```

\dosectlof The \dosectlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .slf(N)
\@dosectlof files (.slf becomes .H on MS-DOS).
\SLF@next
                2230 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
                2231 \makeatletter
                2232 \setcounter{stc}{0}
                2233 \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

```

\dosectlot The \dosectlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the .slt(N)
\@dosectlot files (.slt becomes .V on MS-DOS).
\PLT@next
                2234 \def\@dosectlot#1{%
                2235 \makeatletter
                2236 \setcounter{stc}{0}
                2237 \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:

`\dosectlof`

```
\dosectlot 2238 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}
2239 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}
2240 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}
```

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\if@mtc@hints@`

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2241 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 2242 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 2243 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\n@sti 2244 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 2245 {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
\l@sti 2246 \MessageBreak
\r@sti 2247 has been invoked more than once
2248 \MessageBreak}
2249 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2250 \fi
2251 \fi
2252 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
2253 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@sti%
2254 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\n@sti%
2255 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\c@sti%
2256 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\l@sti%
2257 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\r@sti%
2258 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2259 \@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\if@mtc@hints@`

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2260 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 2261 \if@mtc@hints@
\@sti 2262 \if@dosectlof@used@
\n@sti 2263 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@sti 2264 {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\l@sti 2265 \MessageBreak
\r@sti 2266 has been invoked more than once
2267 \MessageBreak}
2268 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2269 \fi
2270 \fi
2271 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
2272 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\@sti%
2273 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\n@sti%
2274 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\c@sti%
2275 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\l@sti%
2276 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\r@sti%
2277 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
```

2278 \@@dosectlof}

```

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2279 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%
\df@stilt 2280 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@sti 2281 \if@dosectlot@used@
\@n@sti 2282 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@sti 2283 {The \string\dosectlot \space command
\@l@sti 2284 \MessageBreak
\@r@sti 2285 has been invoked more than once
2286 \MessageBreak}
2287 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
2288 \fi
2289 \fi
2290 \global\@dosectlot@used@true
2291 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\@e@sti%
2292 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\@n@sti%
2293 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\@c@sti%
2294 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\@l@sti%
2295 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\@r@sti%
2296 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
2297 \@@dosectlot}

```

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
\@@dosectlof file descriptor.

\@@dosectlot

```

\@tf@mtc 2298 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\@tf@mtc}
2299 \def\@@dosectlof{\@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\@tf@mtc}
2300 \def\@@dosectlot{\@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\@tf@mtc}

```

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

```

\STC@loop 2301 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2302 \edef\STC@list{#2}%
2303 \STC@loop{#1}}

```

\STC@toc Check if the list is empty:

\STC@list

```

\STC@explist 2304 \def\STC@toc{%
2305 \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

```



```

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 2306 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO: #4 added
\stcname 2307 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}%%HO: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 2308 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
2309 \stepcounter{stc}%
2310 %% \def\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %% HO: removed

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname it:

```

```

2311 \if@longextensions@%
2312 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2313 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
2314 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
2315 \else
2316 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2317 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
2318 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
2319 \fi
2320 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2321 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
2322 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
\MTC@WriteContentsline 2323 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\coffee 2324 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsection 2325 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\subsubsection 2326 \fi
\paragraph 2327 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
\subparagraph 2328 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
2329 \fi
2330 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
2331 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
2332 \fi
2333 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
2334 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
2335 \fi
2336 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
2337 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
2338 \fi

```

```

\starsection A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:
\stepcounter
\thestc 2339 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\arabic 2340 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@longextensions@
\stcname
\closeout
\openout

```

```

2341 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}
2342 \if@longextensions@%
2343   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2344   {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thetc}%
2345   \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thetc}%
2346 \else
2347   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2348   {Writing\space\jobname.S\thetc}%
2349   \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thetc}%
2350 \fi
2351 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2352 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
2353 \fi

```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` We process the entries for starred sectioning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 2354 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
\starparagraph 2355 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 2356 \fi
2357 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
2358 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
2359 \fi
2360 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
2361 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
2362 \fi
2363 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
2364 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
2365 \fi
2366 }

```

`\STC@explist` The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call `\STC@next` to process the first one.

```

\STC@next
\STC@list
2367 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

`\STC@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
2368 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
2369 \ifeof@inputcheck
2370 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0016>]{minitoc}%
2371 {No file #1
2372 \MessageBreak
2373 SECTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
2374 \expandafter\STC@toc
2375 \else
2376 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0026>]{minitoc}%
2377 {PREPARING SECTOCS FROM #1}%
2378 \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```

`\STC@read` Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```
\STC@line
2379 \def\STC@read{%
2380 \read\inputcheck to\STC@line
```

`\STC@test` The make sure that `\STC@test` has enough arguments:

```
\STC@line
2381 \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line. . . . .\STC% %%H0: . added
2382 }%
```

`\STC@test` The `\STC@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

```
\STC@contentsline
\mtc@string
\STC@list 2383 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{% %%H0: #6 added
\STC@toc 2384 \ifx#1\contentsline
\STC@read 2385 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2386 \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2387 \let\mtc@string\relax
2388 \else\ifx#1\@input
2389 \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
2390 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2391 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2392 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2393 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2394 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2395 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2396 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
2397 \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%
```

`\SLF@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

```
\SLF@list
\SLF@loop 2398 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2399 \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
2400 \SLF@loop{#1}}
```

`\SLF@lof` Check if the list is empty:

```
\SLF@list
\SLF@explist 2401 \def\SLF@lof{%
2402 \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}
```

`\SLF@contentsline` The macro `\SLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If `\section` is found, the `stc` counter is incremented and a new `sectlof` file is created.

```
\thestc
\tf@mtc 2403 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\slfname
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsLine`

```

2404 \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
2405 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
2406 \stepcounter{stc}%
2407 %% \gdef\thetc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

2408 \if@longextensions@%
2409 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2410 {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thetc}%
2411 \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thetc}%
2412 \else
2413 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2414 {Writing\space\jobname.H\thetc}%
2415 \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thetc}%
2416 \fi
2417 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2418 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
2419 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline
\figure 2420 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subfigure 2421 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
2422 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
2423 \fi
2424 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
2425 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
2426 \fi
2427 }

```

`\SLF@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call `\SLF@next` to process the first one.

```

\SLF@next
\SLF@list
2428 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

`\SLF@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, `\SLF@lof` process the next entry in the list.

```

\SLF@read
2429 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
2430 \ifeof@inputcheck
2431 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0014>]{minitoc}%
2432 {No file #1
2433 \MessageBreak
2434 SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%

```

```

2435 \expandafter\SLF@lof
2436 \else
2437 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0036>]{minitoc}%
2438 {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
2439 \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:

\SLF@test

```

\SLF@line 2440 \def\SLF@read{%
2441 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
2442 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF% %%HO: . added
2443 }%

```

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit sections;

\SLF@contentsline

\mtc@string

```

\SLF@list 2444 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{% %%HO: #6 added
\SLF@lof 2445 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 2446 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2447 \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%HO: #4 added
\sectbegin 2448 \let\mtc@string\relax
2449 \else\ifx#1\@input
2450 \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
2451 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2452 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2453 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2454 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2455 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2456 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2457 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
2458 \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%

```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@loop 2459 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
2460 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
2461 \SLT@loop{#1}}

```

\SLT@lot Check if the list is empty:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@explist 2462 \def\SLT@lot{%
2463 \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

```

```

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestic
\tf@mtc 2464 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\sltname 2465 \gdef\thestic{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 2466 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
2467 \stepcounter{stc}%
2468 %% \gdef\thestic{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname it:

2469 \if@longextensions@%
2470 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2471 {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestic}%
2472 \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestic}%
2473 \else
2474 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
2475 {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestic}%
2476 \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestic}%
2477 \fi
2478 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2479 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
2480 \fi

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\table 2481 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subtable 2482 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
2483 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
2484 \fi
2485 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
2486 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slts}{#3}{#4}%
2487 \fi
2488 }

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next process the first one.
\SLT@list
2489 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
\SLT@read
2490 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin@inputcheck#1\relax
2491 \ifeof@inputcheck

```

```

2492 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0015>]{minitoc}%
2493     {No file #1
2494     \MessageBreak
2495     SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
2496 \expandafter\SLT@lot
2497 \else
2498 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0039>]{minitoc}%
2499     {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
2500 \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

```

\SLT@read The . . . . . make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:
\SLT@test
\SLT@line 2501 \def\SLT@read{%
2502 \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
2503 \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@ %%H0: . added
2504 }%

```

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
\SLT@contentsline sections;
\mtc@string
\SLT@list 2505 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLT@lot 2506 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 2507 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 2508 \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 2509 \let\mtc@string\relax
2510 \else\ifx#1\@input
2511 \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
2512 \else\ifx#1\sectend
2513 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2514 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
2515 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
2516 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
2517 \fi\fi\fi\fi
2518 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
2519 \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```

2520 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
2521 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@

```

9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```

\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 2522 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\mtcprepare@}{\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 2523 \def\mtcprepare@[#1]{%
  \jobname 2524 \@ifundefined{part}{}{}%
  \doparttoc 2525 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}%
  \dopartlof 2526 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}%
  \dopartlot 2527 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}%
  \dominitoc 2528 }%
  \dominilof 2529 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
  \dominilot 2530 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
  \dosecttoc 2531 {}%
  \dosectlof 2532 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}%
  \dosectlot 2533 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}%
  \dosectlot 2534 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}%
\mtcPackageInfo 2535 }%
2536 }%
2537 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}%
2538 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}%
2539 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}%
2540 }%
2541 \if@mtc@hints@
2542 \@mtc@hints@given@true
2543 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0048>]{minitoc(hints)}%
2544 {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
2545 \MessageBreak
2546 hints about the preparation commands,
2547 \MessageBreak
2548 because it invokes ALL the preparation
2549 \MessageBreak
2550 commands allowed by the document class,
2551 \MessageBreak
2552 without any previous check\@gobble}%
2553 \fi
2554 }

```

9.64 Necessary `\l@...` commands

```

\l@listof Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
\l@startpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectioning commands essentially:
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection 2555 \@ifundefined{section}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\l@starsubsection 2556 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\l@starsubsubsection 2557 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\l@startpart\l@part}
\l@starparagraph 2558 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starsubparagraph

```



```

2559 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
2560 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
2561 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
2562 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
2563 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values

```

\noptcrule We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the vari-
\nomtcrule ous kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding
\nostcrule horizontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules.
\ptcrule
\mtcrule 2564 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 2565 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\noplfrule 2566 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\nomlfrule 2567 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\noslfrule 2568 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\plfrule 2569 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlfrule 2570 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slfrule 2571 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2572 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\nopltrule
\nomltrule
\nosltrule 2573 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\pltrule 2574 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
2575 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\mltrule 2576 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 2577 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\columnwidth 2578 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2579 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2580 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2581 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

2582 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
2583 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
2584 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
2585 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2586 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2587 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
2588 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2589 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
2590 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

9.66 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands⁷ have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

9.66.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via
`\@nameuse` the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (`typetable`) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
2591 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
2592 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
2593 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
2594 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
2595 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
2596 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
2597 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
2598 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
2599 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (`typetitle`) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
2600 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
2601 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
2602 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
2603 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
2604 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
2605 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
2606 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
2607 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
2608 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

⁷ The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.

`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms⁸ and meaning false or true⁹:

```

2609 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
2610 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
2611 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
2612 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
2613 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
2614 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
2615 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
2616 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
2617 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
2618 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
2619 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
2620 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
2621 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
2622 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
2623 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
2624 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
2625 %
2626 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{}\def\mtc@YN@on{}
2627 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{}\def\mtc@YN@ON{}
2628 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{}\def\mtc@YN@yes{}
2629 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{}\def\mtc@YN@YES{}
2630 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{}\def\mtc@YN@y{}
2631 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{}\def\mtc@YN@Y{}
2632 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{}\def\mtc@YN@true{}
2633 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{}
2634 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{}\def\mtc@YN@t{}
2635 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{}\def\mtc@YN@T{}
2636 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{}
2637 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{}
2638 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{}\def\mtc@YN@v{}
2639 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{}\def\mtc@YN@V{}
2640 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{}
2641 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{}\def\mtc@YN@oui{}
2642 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{}\def\mtc@YN@O{}
2643 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{}\def\mtc@YN@o{}
2644 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{}
2645 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{}

```

9.66.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectioning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the

⁸ This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter \csname ... \endcsname`.

⁹ O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

highest sectioning level); “*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

2646 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
2647 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
2648 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
2649 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
2650 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
2651 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
2652 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{*}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
2653 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{F}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{F}
2654 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{T}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{T}
2655 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{SF}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{SF}
2656 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{ST}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{ST}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`, the *level-name* is a sectioning level like `subsection` (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [165] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2657 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
2658 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the `typetable` family. The `\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is `minitoc`, we get `mtc`.

```

2659 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
2660 \@mtc@setfont@true
2661 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#\1\endcsname\relax
2662   \@mtc@setfont@false
2663   \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
2664   \mtcPackageError[<E0013>]{minitoc}%
2665     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
2666     \MessageBreak
2667     (#1).
2668     \MessageBreak

```

```

2669     It should be a mini-table type
2670     \MessageBreak
2671     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2672     {Correct the source code.
2673     \MessageBreak
2674     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2675 \else
2676   \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2677 \fi

```

`\mtc@level@abbrev` The second argument, a keyword from the family `sectlevel`, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro `\mtc@level@abbrev`. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph keyword, we get SP.

```

2678 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
2679 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
2680   \@mtc@setfont@false
2681   \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
2682   \mtcPackageError[<E0014>]{minitoc}%
2683     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
2684     \MessageBreak
2685     (#2).
2686     \MessageBreak
2687     It should be a sectioning level
2688     \MessageBreak
2689     (part...subparagraph) or * }%
2690     {Correct the source code.
2691     \MessageBreak
2692     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2693 \else
2694   \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
2695 \fi

```

`\mtc@tmp@name` Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:

```

\mtc@mta@abbrev
\mtc@level@abbrev 2696 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

```

Example: if #1 is `minitoc` and #2 is `subsection`, we get `mtcSSfont`, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a `minitoc` (the backslash is missing, but we will use a `\csname ... \endcsname` pair to apply the constructed command).

`\if@mtc@setfont@` But all combinations are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the mini-table), so we must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (*quarks*) with `@mtcqk` at the end of their names).

```

2697 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
2698 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
2699 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}

```

```

2700 \def\partlof@mtcck{partlof@mtcck}
2701 \def\minilof@mtcck{minilof@mtcck}
2702 \def\sectlof@mtcck{sectlof@mtcck}
2703 \def\partlot@mtcck{partlot@mtcck}
2704 \def\minilot@mtcck{minilot@mtcck}
2705 \def\sectlot@mtcck{sectlot@mtcck}
2706 \def\part@mtcck{part@mtcck}
2707 \def\chapter@mtcck{chapter@mtcck}
2708 \def\section@mtcck{section@mtcck}
2709 \def\subsection@mtcck{subsection@mtcck}
2710 \def\subsubsection@mtcck{subsubsection@mtcck}
2711 \def\paragraph@mtcck{paragraph@mtcck}
2712 \def\subparagraph@mtcck{subparagraph@mtcck}
2713 \def\figure@mtcck{figure@mtcck}
2714 \def\table@mtcck{table@mtcck}
2715 \def\subfigure@mtcck{subfigure@mtcck}
2716 \def\subtable@mtcck{subtable@mtcck}
2717 \@mtc@setfont@true
2718 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\parttoc@mtcck\relax
2719   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2720   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2721   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2722   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2723 \fi
2724 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlof@mtcck\relax
2725   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2726   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2727 \fi
2728 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlot@mtcck\relax
2729   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2730   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2731 \fi
2732 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minitoc@mtcck\relax
2733   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2734   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2735   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2736   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2737   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2738   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2739 \fi
2740 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
2741   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2742   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2743   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2744   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2745 \fi
2746 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
2747   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2748   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2749   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2750   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2751 \fi
2752 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
2753   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

```

2754 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2755 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\section@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2756 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2757 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2758 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2759 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2760 \fi
2761 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\sectlof@mtcqk\relax
2762 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2763 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2764 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\section@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2765 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\table@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2766 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subtable@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2767 \fi
2768 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcqk\endcsname\sectlot@mtcqk\relax
2769 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\part@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2770 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\chapter@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2771 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\section@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2772 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\figure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2773 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcqk\endcsname\subfigure@mtcqk\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
2774 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@setfont@` If the combination is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed macro with the sequence of commands given as third argument of `\mtcsetfont` and we log that event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*).

`\mtc@tmp@name`

`\mtc@mta@abbrev`

`\mtc@level@abbrev`

`\mtc@toks` If the combination is not legal, an error message is displayed.

```

2775 \if@mtc@setfont@
2776 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
2777 \mtc@toks{#3}
2778 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0015>]{minitoc}%
2779 {\string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
2780 \MessageBreak
2781 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
2782 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{#3}
2783 \else
2784 \mtcPackageError[<E0024>]{minitoc}%
2785 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
2786 \MessageBreak
2787 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
2788 {Correct the source code.
2789 \MessageBreak
2790 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2791 \fi
2792 }

```

9.66.3 The `\mtcsetttitlefont` command

`\mtcsetttitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetttitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [165] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2793 \newif\if@mtc@setttitlefont@\@mtc@setttitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsetttitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsetttitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
2794 \newcommand{\mtcsetttitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetitle` family, then the result is stored into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:
`\if@mtc@setttitlefont@`
`\@nameuse`

```
2795 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
2796 \@mtc@setttitlefont@true
2797 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
2798   \@mtc@setttitlefont@false
2799   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
2800   \mtcPackageError[<E0022>]{minitoc}%
2801     {\string\mtcsetttitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
2802     \MessageBreak
2803     (#1).
2804     \MessageBreak
2805     It should be a mini-table type
2806     \MessageBreak
2807     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2808   {Correct the source code.
2809   \MessageBreak
2810   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2811 \else
2812   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
2813 \fi
```



```

\if@mtc@settitlefont@ Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:
  \mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 2814 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
  \mtc@toks 2815   \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
                2816   \mtc@toks{#2}
                2817   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0018>]{minitoc}%
                2818   {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
                2819   \MessageBreak
                2820   "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
                2821   \MessageBreak
                2822   "\the\mtc@toks"}
                2823   \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{#2}
2824 \else
2825   \mtcPackageError[<E0034>]{minitoc}%
2826   {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
2827   \MessageBreak
2828   an illegal type of table (#1)}%
2829   {Correct the source code.
2830   \MessageBreak
2831   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
2832 \fi
2833 }

```

9.66.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
2834 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
2835 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

```

\mtc@mtati@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family. The result is stored in
\if@mtc@settitle@ \mtc@mtati@abbrev:
  \@nameuse
2836 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}

```

```

2837 \@mtc@settitle@true
2838 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2839   \@mtc@settitle@false
2840   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
2841   \mtcPackageError[<E0021>]{minitoc}%
2842     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
2843     \MessageBreak
2844     (#1).
2845     \MessageBreak
2846     It should be a mini-table type
2847     \MessageBreak
2848     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2849     {Correct the source code.
2850     \MessageBreak
2851     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2852 \else
2853   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2854 \fi

```

\if@mtc@settitle@ And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

```

\mtc@tmpti@name
\mtc@mtati@abbrev 2855 \if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@toks 2856   \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}
2857   \mtc@toks{#2}
2858   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0017>]{minitoc}%
2859   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
2860   \MessageBreak
2861   "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
2862   \MessageBreak
2863   "\the\mtc@toks"}
2864   \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{#2}
2865 \else
2866   \mtcPackageError[<E0033>]{minitoc}%
2867   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
2868   \MessageBreak
2869   an illegal type of table (#1)}%
2870   {Correct the source code.
2871   \MessageBreak
2872   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
2873 \fi
2874 }

```

9.66.5 The \mtcsetformat command

\@namedef We define first the keywords (family formatparam) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

2875 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
2876 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}

```

```

2877 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
2878 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
2879 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
2880 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
2881 %% \@namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
2882 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `\mtcsetformat` command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```
2883 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

```

\@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcpnumwidth
\mtcpnumwidth 2884 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 2885 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 2886 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 2887 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 2888 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 2889 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 2890 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 2891 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
2892 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

\@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtcclofrmarg 2893 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrarg 2894 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 2895 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlflocrmarg 2896 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slflocrmarg 2897 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 2898 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltlocrmarg 2899 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlocrmarg 2900 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
2901 \@ifundefined{slttocrmarg}{\let\slttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

\@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 2902 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 2903 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 2904 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 2905 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 2906 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 2907 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 2908 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
2909 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 2910 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
2911 }
```

`\mtcsetformat` The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the `mtc@verse`-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by `\mtcsetformat`.

`\ptc@setform` The `\ptc@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
2912 \def\ptc@setform{%
2913 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
2914 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
2915 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
2916 }
```

`\mtc@setform` The `\mtc@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
2917 \def\mtc@setform{%
2918 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
2919 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
2920 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
2921 }
```

`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
2922 \def\stc@setform{%
2923 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
2924 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
2925 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
2926 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
2927 \def\plf@setform{%
2928 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2929 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2930 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2931 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
2932 \def\mlf@setform{%
2933 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
2934 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
2935 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
2936 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
2937 \def\slf@setform{%
2938 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
2939 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
2940 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
2941 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:
`ptc@verse`

```
2942 \def\plt@setform{%
2943 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
2944 \let\@tocrmarg\pltocrmarg\relax
2945 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
2946 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:
`mtc@verse`

```
2947 \def\mlt@setform{%
2948 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2949 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2950 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2951 }
```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:
`stc@verse`

```
2952 \def\slt@setform{%
2953 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
2954 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
2955 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
2956 }
```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, which has the following syntax:
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```
2957 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
2958 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```
2959 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
2960 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
2961 \@mtc@setformat@true
2962 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
2963   \@mtc@setformat@false
2964   \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
2965   \mtcPackageError[<E0015>]{minitoc}%
2966     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
2967     \MessageBreak
2968     (#1).
2969     \MessageBreak
2970     It should be a mini-table type
2971     \MessageBreak
2972     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
2973   {Correct the source code.
2974   \MessageBreak
2975   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2976 \else
2977   \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
2978 \fi
```

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:
`\@nameuse`

```
2979 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
2980   \@mtc@setformat@false
2981   \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
2982   \mtcPackageError[<E0016>]{minitoc}%
2983     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
2984     \MessageBreak
2985     (#2).
2986     \MessageBreak
2987     It should be a formatting param choosen from:
2988     \MessageBreak
2989     pagenumwidth, tocrighthmargin, dotinterval}%
2990   {Correct the source code.
2991   \MessageBreak
2992   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
2993 \else
2994   \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}
2995 \fi
```

```

\if@mtc@setformat@ The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value:
  \mtc@tmpfm@name
  \mtc@mtf@abbrev 2996 \if@mtc@setformat@
\mtc@fparam@abbrev 2997 \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}
2998 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0016>]{minitoc}%
2999 {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
3000 \MessageBreak
3001 "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\string#3"}
3002 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{#3}
3003 \else
3004 \mtcPackageError[<E0025>]{minitoc}%
3005 {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
3006 \MessageBreak
3007 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
3008 {Correct the source code.
3009 \MessageBreak
3010 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3011 \fi
3012 }

```

9.66.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ We define some flags:
  \if@mtc@spn@ok@
2013 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
2014 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@

```

```

\mtcsetpagenumbers We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
  \@ifundefined \mtcsetpagenumbers@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro
\mtcsetpagenumbers@ only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

```

2015 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
2016 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
2017 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
2018 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}}
2019 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}}

```

```

3020     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
3021     \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
3022     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
3023     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
3024     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
3025     \@ifundefined{section}{}%
3026     {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
3027     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
3028     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
3029     \else
3030     \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
3031     \fi
3032 }

```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

```

3033 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@[2]}{%

```

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

```

3034 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
3035 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
3036 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
3037 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3038     \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
3039     \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
3040     \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
3041     \mtcPackageError[<E0017>]{minitoc}%
3042     {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
3043     \MessageBreak
3044     argument (#1)}%
3045     {It should be a mini-table type
3046     \MessageBreak
3047     (parttoc...sectlot)
3048     \MessageBreak
3049     Correct the source code.
3050     \MessageBreak
3051     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3052 \else
3053     \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
3054 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@spn@ok@` Then the second argument, a keyword of the `YN` family, and store the result into a macro
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@pns@abbrev`. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 3055 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 3056 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
3057     \@mtc@spn@ok@false

```



```

3058 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
3059 \def\mtc@mtpn@abbrev{X}
3060 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
3061 \def\mtc@mtpn@abbrev{X}
3062 \mtcPackageError[<E0018>]{minitoc}%
3063   {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
3064   \MessageBreak
3065   argument (#2)}%
3066   {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
3067   \MessageBreak
3068   Correct the source code.
3069   \MessageBreak
3070   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3071 \else
3072 \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
3073 \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
3074 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
3075 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mtpn@abbrev pagenumbers}
3076 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
3077 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0022>]{minitoc}%
3078   {Page numbers are inhibited
3079   \MessageBreak
3080   for the #1s}
3081 \else
3082 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0021>]{minitoc}%
3083   {Page numbers are activated
3084   \MessageBreak for the #1s}
3085 \fi
3086 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
3087 \fi
3088 }

```

9.66.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```

\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
  \if@mtc@sru@ok@
3089 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
3090 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@

```

`\mtcsetrules` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetrules@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

3091 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
3092   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
3093   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
3094   {\mtcsetrules@parttoc}{#2}
3095   \mtcsetrules@partlof}{#2}
3096   \mtcsetrules@partlot}{#2}}
3097 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
3098 {\mtcsetrules@minitoc}{#2}
3099 \mtcsetrules@minilof}{#2}
3100 \mtcsetrules@minilot}{#2}}
3101 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
3102 {\mtcsetrules@secttoc}{#2}
3103 \mtcsetrules@sectlof}{#2}
3104 \mtcsetrules@sectlot}{#2}}
3105 \else
3106 \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
3107 \fi
3108 }
```

`\mtcsetrules@` Then the `\mtcsetrules@` internal macro, which has two arguments:

```

3109 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@[2]}{%
```

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in a macro `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:

```

\if@mtc@setrules@
\mtc@rusw@abbrev
  \@nameuse
3110 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3111 \@mtc@setrules@true
3112 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
3113 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3114   \@mtc@setrules@false
3115   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
3116   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3117   \mtcPackageError[<E0019>]{minitoc}%
3118     {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
3119     \MessageBreak
3120     (#1)}%
3121     {It should be a mini-table type
3122     \MessageBreak
3123     (parttoc...sectlot)
3124     \MessageBreak
3125     Correct the source code.
3126     \MessageBreak
3127     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3128 \else
3129   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
```

```

3130 \fi

\if@mtc@sru@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in a macro
\mtc@rusw@abbrev \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttru@abbrev
if@setrules@false 3131 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 3132 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 3133 \@mtc@sru@ok@false
3134 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
3135 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
3136 \@mtc@setrules@false
3137 \mtcPackageError[<E0020>]{minitoc}%
3138 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
3139 \MessageBreak
3140 (#2)}%
3141 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
3142 \MessageBreak
3143 Correct the source code.
3144 \MessageBreak
3145 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3146 \else
3147 \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
3148 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
3149 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
3150 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
3151 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
3152 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0008>]{minitoc}%
3153 {Horizontal rules are inhibited
3154 \MessageBreak
3155 for the #1s}
3156 \else
3157 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0007>]{minitoc}%
3158 {Horizontal rules are activated
3159 \MessageBreak
3160 for the #1s}
3161 \fi
3162 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
3163 \fi
3164 }

```

9.66.8 The `\mtcsetfeature` command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “thispage” is used.

A family (`ltypetable`) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```
3165 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
```

```

3166 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
3167 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
3168 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
3169 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
3170 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
3171 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
3172 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
3173 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

3174 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
3175   \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
3176 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
3177   \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
3178 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
3179   \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

3180 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
3181 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{} \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
3182 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
3183   \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:
`\mtcsetfeature`

```

3184 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
3185 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result in
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`:

```

3186 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
3187 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
3188 \@mtc@setfeature@true
3189 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3190   \@mtc@setfeature@false
3191   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}

```

```

3192 \mtcPackageError[<E0011>]{minitoc}%
3193   {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
3194   \MessageBreak
3195   (#1).
3196   \MessageBreak
3197   It should be a mini-table type
3198   \MessageBreak
3199   (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
3200 {Correct the source code.
3201   \MessageBreak
3202   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3203 \else
3204 \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
3205 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in \mtc@featparam@abbrev \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.

```

\@nameuse
3206 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
3207 \@mtc@setfeature@false
3208 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
3209 \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
3210 \mtcPackageError[<E0012>]{minitoc}%
3211   {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
3212   \MessageBreak
3213   (#2).
3214   \MessageBreak
3215   It should be a feature param
3216   \MessageBreak
3217   (before, after, pagestyle)}}%
3218 {Correct the source code.
3219   \MessageBreak
3220   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3221 \else
3222 \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
3223 \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
3224 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third respectively), then this macro is executed:

```

\mtc@featparam@abbrev
\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev
\mtc@featparam@third
3225 \if@mtc@setfeature@
3226 \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
3227   {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}
3228 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0014>]{minitoc}%
3229   {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
3230   \MessageBreak
3231   "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as

```

```

3232     \MessageBreak
3233     "\string#3"}
3234 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{#3}
3235 \else
3236 \mtcPackageError[<E0023>]{minitoc}%
3237 {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
3238 \MessageBreak
3239 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
3240 {Correct the source code.
3241 \MessageBreak
3242 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3243 \fi}

```

9.66.9 The `\mtcsetdepth` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```



The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the `subfig` package [96]).

`\if@mtc@setdepth@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
3244 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

`\mtcsetdepth` Then we define the `\mtcsetdepth` command, with two arguments:

```
3245 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtade@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family. The result is stored in
`\if@mtc@setdepth@` `\mtc@mtade@abbrev:`
`\@nameuse`

```

3246 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
3247 \@mtc@setdepth@true
3248 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
3249 \@mtc@setdepth@false
3250 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
3251 \mtcPackageError[<E0009>]{minitoc}%
3252 {\string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
3253 \MessageBreak
3254 (#1).
3255 \MessageBreak
3256 It should be a mini-table type
3257 \MessageBreak

```

```

3258     (parttoc...sectlot)}%
3259     {Correct the source code.
3260     \MessageBreak
3261     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3262 \else
3263     \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
3264 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:
  \mtc@tmpde@name
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 3265 \if@mtc@setdepth@
                   \mtc@toks 3266 \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
                   \setcounter 3267 \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
3268                   {\mtcPackageError[<E0008>]{minitoc}%
3269                   {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
3270                   \MessageBreak
3271                   an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
3272                   {Correct the source code.
3273                   \MessageBreak
3274                   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}%
3275 \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
3276 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0013>]{minitoc}%
3277   {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
3278   \MessageBreak
3279   "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
3280 \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
3281 \else
3282 \mtcPackageError[<E0010>]{minitoc}%
3283   {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
3284   {Correct the source code.
3285   \MessageBreak
3286   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
3287 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

9.67 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```

3288 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false

```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
\mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
  \arabic
  \addtocontents
  \setcounter

```

```

3289 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
3290 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
3291 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
3292 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\mtcPackageError[<E0005>]{minitoc}%
3293   {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
3294   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
3295 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
3296 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3297 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3298 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0031>]{minitoc}%
3299   {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
3300   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}\fi
3301 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
3302 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

`\AtBeginDocument` The `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

`\mtc@sv@lofdepth`
`\mtc@sv@tocdepth` First, for the list of figures:
`\mtc@svf@tocdepth`

```

\arabic 3303 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\addtocontents 3304 \AtBeginDocument{%
\setcounter 3305 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
3306   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
3307   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
3308     {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
3309     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3310   \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
3311   \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3312   \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3313   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3314   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3315   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
3316     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
3317     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3318   \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
3319   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
3320 }}%
3321 {%
3322   \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
3323   \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
3324   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
3325   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
3326     {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
3327     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi
3328   \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
3329   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
3330   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3331   {\if@mtc@Himlof@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
3332     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
3333     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}\fi

```



```

3334 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
3335 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 3336 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 3337 \AtBeginDocument{%
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 3338 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 3339 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
\arabic 3340 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
\addtocontents 3341 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
\setcounter 3342 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3343 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
3344 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3345 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
3346 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
3347 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
3348 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
3349 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
3350 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3351 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
3352 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
3353 }}%
3354 {%
3355 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
3356 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
3357 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
3358 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
3359 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
3360 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3361 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
3362 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
3363 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{lotdepth}{#1}}}%
3364 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
3365 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
3366 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
3367 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
3368 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restorelotdepth}}}}

```

9.68 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part | chapter | section]
```

`\@ifundefined` Depending of the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@glofix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

3369 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3370   \@ifundefined{section}%
3371     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0001>]{minitoc}%
3372      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
3373       \MessageBreak
3374       Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
3375       \MessageBreak
3376       optional argument [part]}}%
3377   \@ifundefined{part}%
3378     {\mtcPackageError[<E0001>]{minitoc}%
3379      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
3380      {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
3381   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0006>]{minitoc}%
3382    {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
3383     \MessageBreak
3384     with the [part] optional argument,
3385     \MessageBreak
3386     which becomes the default}}%
3387   \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}%
3388   }}%
3389   {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
3390 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

`\if@mtcfixglossary@` Then we define a flag (`\if@mtcfixglossary@`) and the command `\mtcfixglossary`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

`\mtcfixglossary`

`\addcontentsline`

```

3391 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \@mtcfixglossary@false
3392 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
3393   \@mtcfixglossary@false
3394   \expandafter%
3395   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3396   \expandafter%
3397   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3398   \expandafter%
3399   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
3400   \if@mtcfixglossary@
3401     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
3402     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
3403     \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
3404   \else
3405     \mtcPackageError[<E0026>]{minitoc}%
3406     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
3407      \MessageBreak
3408      is wrong}%
3409     {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
3410   \fi
3411 }%

```

9.69 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

`\@ifundefined` Depending of the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@ixfix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```
3412 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3413   \@ifundefined{section}%
3414     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0002>]{minitoc}%
3415      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
3416       \MessageBreak
3417        Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
3418         \MessageBreak
3419         optional argument [part]}%
3420     \@ifundefined{part}%
3421       {\mtcPackageError[<E0002>]{minitoc}%
3422        {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
3423         {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
3424     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0007>]{minitoc}%
3425      {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
3426       \MessageBreak
3427        the [part] optional argument,
3428         \MessageBreak
3429         which becomes the default}%
3430     \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}%
3431     }%
3432     {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
3433 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

`\if@mtcfixindex@` Then we define a flag and the command `\mtcfixindex`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.
`\mtcfixindex`
`\addcontentsline`

```
3434 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
3435 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
3436   \@mtcfixindex@false
3437   \expandafter%
3438   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3439   \expandafter%
3440   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3441   \expandafter%
3442   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
3443   \if@mtcfixindex@
3444   \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}}%
```

```

3445 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}}}%
3446 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
3447 \else
3448 \mtcPackageError[<E0027>]{minitoc}%
3449     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
3450     \MessageBreak
3451     is wrong}%
3452     {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
3453 \fi
3454 }%

```

9.70 The `\mtcselectlanguage` command

`\mtcselectlanguage` This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language.mld* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag `\if@mtc@insellang@` is true while we are in this macro.

```

\if@mtc@insellang@
  \IfFileExists
    \@input
      3455 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
      3456 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
      3457     \@mtc@insellang@true
      3458     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
      3459     {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0010>]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
      3460     \MessageBreak
      3461     }}%
      3462     {\mtcPackageError[<E0006>]{minitoc}%
      3463     {#1 is not a known language,
      3464     \MessageBreak
      3465     #1.mld not found.
      3466     \MessageBreak
      3467     Command ignored}%
      3468     {See the minitoc documentation.
      3469     \MessageBreak
      3470     Correct the source using a valid language name.
      3471     \MessageBreak
      3472     Press RETURN}}%
      3473     \@mtc@insellang@false
      3474 }

```

9.71 The `\mtcloadmlo` internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used only in some *.mld* files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of *minitoc.dtx*. The *.mlo* files are generated by *filecontents* environments in the *minitoc.ins* file. But first, we verify that this *.mlo* file exists.



This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag `\if@mtc@insellang@`.

```

3475 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
3476     \if@mtc@insellang@
3477     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
3478         {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0011>]{minitoc}%
3479             {#1 minitoc language object selected.
3480             \MessageBreak}}%
3481     {\mtcPackageError[<E0007>]{minitoc}%
3482         {#1 is not a known minitoc
3483         \MessageBreak
3484         language object file (.mlo),
3485         \MessageBreak
3486         #1.mlo not found.
3487         \MessageBreak
3488         Command ignored}%
3489     {See the minitoc documentation.
3490     \MessageBreak
3491     Correct the source using a valid language name.
3492     \MessageBreak
3493     Press RETURN}}%
3494 \else
3495     \mtcPackageError[<E0032>]{minitoc}%
3496     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
3497     \MessageBreak
3498     outside of a .mld file}%
3499     {It will be ignored}
3500     \@mtc@insellang@false
3501 \fi
3502 }

```

9.72 The “coffee breaks”

`\addcoffeeline` For the minutes package [169] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we define `\addcoffeeline`, `\coffeeline` and `\l@coffee`, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

```

3503 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3504     \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}
3505 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
3506 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtoctline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}

```

9.73 Initialization of counters

```

\AtBeginDocument  At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and
\@ifundefined     sections, if they are defined.
  \setcounter
3507 \AtBeginDocument{%
3508 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{ }\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
3509 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{ }\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3510 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{ }\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

9.74 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

9.74.1 Options `tight` and `loose`, `k-tight` and `k-loose`

```

\DeclareOption  These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.
  \iftightmtc
  \ifktightmtc 3511 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
3512 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
3513 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
3514 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default

```

9.74.2 Options `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles`

```

\DeclareOption  These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.
\if@mtc@checkfiles
3515 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
3516 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}

```

9.74.3 Options `dotted` and `undotted`

```

\DeclareOption  These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.
\ifundottedmtc
3517 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
3518 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default

```

9.74.4 Option notoccite

```

\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [9].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
3519 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}

```

9.74.5 Option shorttext

```

\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@longextensions@
3520 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{\@longextensions@false
3521 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0020>]{minitoc}%
3522 {You have forced the use of short extensions}}

```

9.75 The insection option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` This option is available only if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined. It is to be revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)¹⁰.

```

3523 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
3524 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3525   \@ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
3526     \mtcPackageError[<E0035>]{minitoc}%
3527     {You have used the ‘insection’ option in
3528     \MessageBreak
3529     a document where chapters are defined.
3530     \MessageBreak
3531     This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
3532     {Remove this option.
3533     \MessageBreak
3534     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
3535     }}%
3536   {%
3537     \DeclareOption{insection}%
3538     {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
3539   }%
3540 }{}

```

¹⁰Please, do not dream too much!

9.76 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named `document.maf`. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

`\DeclareOption`

```
3541 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
3542 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
3543 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
```

9.77 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@admisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

`\mtc@listmisslanguages`

`\mtc@admisslanguage`

`\mtc@LML`

`\MessageBreak`

```
3544 \def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
3545 \def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
3546 \def\mtc@admisslanguage#1{%
3547     \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
3548     \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}
```

`\if@mtc@misslang` Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding `.mld` file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding `.mlo` file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\mtc@setlangopt` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

`\mtc@setlangopt`

`\mtc@setlangopto`

`\IfFileExists`

`\DeclareOption`

`\mtc@admisslanguage`

`\mtcPackageWarningNoLine`

```
3549 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
3550 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
3551     \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
3552     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
3553     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
3554     \mtc@admisslanguage{#1.mld}
3555     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0050>]{minitoc}%
3556     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
3557     \MessageBreak
3558     The "#1" language option
3559     \MessageBreak
3560     will not be available.
3561     \MessageBreak
3562     Please install it from a recent distribution
3563     \MessageBreak
3564     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
3565 }%
3566 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
3567     \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
```



```

3568     {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
3569     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
3570     \mtc@admisslanguage{#1.mlo}
3571     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0051>]{minitoc}%
3572     {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
3573     \MessageBreak
3574     The "#1" language option
3575     \MessageBreak
3576     will not be available.
3577     \MessageBreak
3578     Please install it from a recent distribution
3579     \MessageBreak
3580     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
3581 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}%
3582     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
3583     \mtc@admisslanguage{#1.mld}
3584     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0050>]{minitoc}%
3585     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
3586     \MessageBreak
3587     The "#1" language option will not be available.
3588     \MessageBreak
3589     Please install it from a recent distribution
3590     \MessageBreak
3591     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
3592     }%
3593     }%
3594 }%

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
  \IfFileExists
  \DeclareOption 3595 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 3596   \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@admisslanguage 3597   {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
3598   {\@mtc@misslangtrue
3599   \mtc@admisslanguage{#1.mld}
3600   \mtcPackageError[<E0038>]{minitoc}%
3601   {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
3602   \MessageBreak
3603   A mandatory minitoc language object file,
3604   \MessageBreak
3605   #1.mld, is not found.
3606   \MessageBreak
3607   We will try to continue with
3608   \MessageBreak
3609   current/default values}%
3610   {See the minitoc documentation.
3611   \MessageBreak
3612   Please fix your minitoc installation.
3613   \MessageBreak
3614   Press <return> to continue}%

```

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):
  \ptctitle
  \plftitle 3615      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  \plttitle 3616      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  \mtctitle 3617      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  \mlftitle 3618      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  \mlttitle 3619      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  \stctitle 3620      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  \slftitle 3621      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  \slttitle 3622      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  \slttitle 3623      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  3624 }}%

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document:
\if@mtc@misslang
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 3625 \AtEndDocument{%
  \MessageBreak 3626   \if@mtc@misslang
\mtc@listmisslanguages 3627   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0093>]{minitoc}%
  \@gobblethre 3628     {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
  3629     \MessageBreak
  3630     in your installation.
  3631     \MessageBreak
  3632     Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
  3633     \MessageBreak
  3634     in the \string\jobname.log file.
  3635     \MessageBreak
  3636     Please install the missing files from
  3637     \MessageBreak
  3638     a recent distribution
  3639     \MessageBreak
  3640     or from the CTAN archives}%
  3641   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0094>]{minitoc}%
  3642   {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
  3643   \MessageBreak
  3644   \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%
  3645   \fi
  3646 }%

\DeclareOption Each language option reads the corresponding language.mld file via the specialized macro
\mtc@setlangopt \mtcselectlanguage, after verification by \mtc@setlangopt or \mtc@setlangopto
\mtc@setlangopto (when a .mlo file is required), by \mtc@setlangoptm when the language is mandatory. If
\mtc@setlangoptm the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should
be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same
file, but, by convention, there should be a language.mld file for each language option, given
that this file may load another one (as american.mld loads english.mld).

3647 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
3648 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
3649 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
3650 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%

```

```

3651 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
3652 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
3653 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
3654 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
3655 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
3656 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
3657 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
3658 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
3659 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
3660 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
3661 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
3662 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
3663 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
3664 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
3665 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
3666 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
3667 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
3668 \mtc@setlangopt{bi the}%
3669 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
3670 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
3671 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
3672 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
3673 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
3674 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
3675 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
3676 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
3677 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
3678 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
3679 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
3680 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
3681 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
3682 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%      % .mlo
3683 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%    % .mlo
3684 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
3685 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
3686 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%
3687 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
3688 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
3689 \mtc@setlangoptm{english}%      % mandatory
3690 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
3691 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
3692 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
3693 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
3694 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
3695 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
3696 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
3697 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
3698 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%      % .mlo
3699 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%    % .mlo
3700 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
3701 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
3702 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
3703 \mtc@setlangopt{français}%
3704 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%

```

```

3705 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
3706 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
3707 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
3708 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
3709 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
3710 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
3711 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%
3712 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
3713 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
3714 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
3715 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
3716 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
3717 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
3718 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
3719 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul1}%           % .mlo
3720 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul2}%           % .mlo
3721 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul3}%           % .mlo
3722 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul4}%           % .mlo
3723 \mtc@setlangopto{hangul-u8}%         % .mlo
3724 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja1}%           % .mlo
3725 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja2}%           % .mlo
3726 \mtc@setlangopto{hanja-u8}%         % .mlo
3727 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%
3728 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
3729 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
3730 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
3731 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
3732 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
3733 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
3734 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
3735 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
3736 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
3737 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
3738 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
3739 \mtc@setlangopto{japanese}%         % .mlo
3740 \mtc@setlangopto{japanese2}%         % .mlo
3741 \mtc@setlangopto{japanese3}%         % .mlo
3742 \mtc@setlangopto{japanese4}%         % .mlo
3743 \mtc@setlangopto{japanese5}%         % .mlo
3744 \mtc@setlangopto{japanese6}%         % .mlo
3745 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
3746 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
3747 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
3748 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
3749 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
3750 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
3751 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
3752 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
3753 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
3754 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
3755 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
3756 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
3757 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
3758 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%

```

```

3759 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-omega}%      % .mlo
3760 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
3761 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
3762 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
3763 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
3764 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
3765 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
3766 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
3767 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
3768 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
3769 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
3770 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
3771 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
3772 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
3773 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
3774 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
3775 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
3776 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
3777 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
3778 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
3779 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
3780 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
3781 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
3782 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
3783 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
3784 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
3785 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
3786 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
3787 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca}%          % .mlo
3788 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-cca1}%        % .mlo
3789 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lh}%          % .mlo
3790 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyralt}%    % .mlo
3791 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrkoi}%    % .mlo
3792 \mtc@setlangopt{russian-lhcyrwin}%    % .mlo
3793 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
3794 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
3795 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
3796 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
3797 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
3798 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
3799 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
3800 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
3801 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
3802 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
3803 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
3804 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
3805 \mtc@setlangopt{thai}%                % .mlo
3806 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
3807 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
3808 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
3809 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
3810 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%
3811 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
3812 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%

```

```

3813 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
3814 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
3815 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
3816 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
3817 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
3818 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
3819 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
3820 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
3821 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%

```

9.78 The hints option

`\DeclareOption` We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:
`\if@mtc@hints@`

```

3822 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
3823 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}

```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` The hints option is made of three parts: the first, `\mtc@hints@begindoc`, is executed via `\AtBeginDocument` and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and examines some flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the `document.log` file and/or warnings on the screen and in the `document.log` file. Note that the hints option does not signal errors, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the \LaTeX run.

9.78.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for a `\AtBeginDocument` block):

```

\mtc@hints@begindoc
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 3824 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 3825 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 3826 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
3827 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
3828 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
3829 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3830   {==> You requested the hints option
3831     \MessageBreak
3832     Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%

```

9.78.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the alphanum package (part of the jura class [85]), and emit a warning,
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` because this package is incompatible with minitoc:

```
3833 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
3834   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3835   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0025>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3836     {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
3837     \MessageBreak
3838     It is incompatible
3839     \MessageBreak
3840     with the minitoc package}}}%
```

9.78.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the appendix package [252]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```
3841 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
3842 \@mtc@hints@given@true
3843 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3844   {--- The appendix package is loaded.
3845   \MessageBreak
3846   See the minitoc package documentation
3847   \MessageBreak
3848   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
```

9.78.1.3 Hint about the tocbibind package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the tocbibind package [253]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```
3849 \@ifpackageloaded{tocbibind}%
3850   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3851   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3852     {--- The tocbibind package is loaded.
3853     \MessageBreak
3854     See the minitoc package documentation
3855     \MessageBreak
3856     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
```

9.78.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes

`\@ifclassloaded` We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [147, 195]:
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

3857 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
3858   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3859   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3860   {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
3861   \MessageBreak
3862   See the minitoc package documentation
3863   \MessageBreak
3864   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
3865 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
3866   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3867   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3868   {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
3869   \MessageBreak
3870   See the minitoc package documentation
3871   \MessageBreak
3872   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
3873 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
3874   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3875   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3876   {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
3877   \MessageBreak
3878   See the minitoc package documentation
3879   \MessageBreak
3880   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.78.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the tocloft package [250]:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3881 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
3882   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3883   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3884   {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
3885   \MessageBreak
3886   See the minitoc package documentation
3887   \MessageBreak
3888   for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

9.78.1.6 Hint about the titletoc package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the titletoc package [33], and emit a warning, because this package is
\if@mtc@hints@given@ incompatible with minitoc:
3889 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
3890   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3891   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3892   {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
3893   \MessageBreak

```



```

3894         It is incompatible
3895         \MessageBreak
3896         with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.78.1.7 Hint about the placeins package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test if the placeins package [10] is loaded and, if yes, we check that the right options are
\if@mtc@ss@insection@ selected:
  \@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3897 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
3898   {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
3899   \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
3900   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3901   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0031>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3902   {--- The placeins package is loaded
3903   \MessageBreak
3904   without the section option,
3905   \MessageBreak
3906   but minitoc used the insection option
3907   \MessageBreak
3908   which implies it. Try to inverse the
3909   \MessageBreak
3910   loading order and use consistent options.
3911   \MessageBreak
3912   You may have got a message
3913   \MessageBreak
3914   ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
3915   }%
3916   \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
3917   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3918   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0084>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3919   {--- The placeins package is loaded
3920   \MessageBreak
3921   with the above option,
3922   \MessageBreak
3923   but minitoc used the insection option
3924   \MessageBreak
3925   which is incompatible with it.
3926   \MessageBreak
3927   Try to remove the above option
3928   \MessageBreak
3929   and use consistent options}%
3930   }}}%
3931   \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
3932   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3933   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0085>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3934   {--- The placeins package is loaded
3935   \MessageBreak
3936   with the below option,
3937   \MessageBreak
3938   but minitoc used the insection option

```

```

3939         \MessageBreak
3940         which is incompatible with it.
3941         \MessageBreak
3942         Try to remove the below option
3943         \MessageBreak
3944         and use consistent options}%
3945     }{}%
3946 \fi
3947 \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
3948     \@mtc@hints@given@true
3949     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0032>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3950     {--- The placeins package loaded is
3951     \MessageBreak
3952     too old. You should use a version
3953     \MessageBreak
3954     dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
3955 }%
3956 }{}%

```

9.78.1.8 Hint about the memoir class

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [257, 258] is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

3957 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
3958     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3959     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3960     {--- The memoir class is loaded.
3961     \MessageBreak
3962     See the minitoc package documentation
3963     \MessageBreak
3964     for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
3965     }{}%

```

9.78.1.9 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are
\if@mtc@hints@given@ incompatible with minitoc:

```

3966 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
3967     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3968     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0026>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3969     {--- The amsart class is loaded.
3970     \MessageBreak
3971     It is incompatible
3972     \MessageBreak
3973     with the minitoc package}{}%
3974 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%

```

```

3975  {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3976  \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0027>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3977  {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
3978  \MessageBreak
3979  It is incompatible
3980  \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.78.1.10 Hint about the amsbook class

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
3981 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
3982  {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3983  \mtcPackageInfo[<I0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3984  {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
3985  \MessageBreak
3986  See the minitoc package documentation
3987  \MessageBreak
3988  for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
3989  }{}%

```

9.78.1.11 Hint about the abstract package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the abstract package [251], then its options:
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 3990 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
3991  {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
3992  \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
3993  {\@mtc@hints@given@true
3994  \mtcPackageInfo[<I0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3995  {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
3996  \MessageBreak
3997  loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
3998  \MessageBreak
3999  You need to look at the
4000  \MessageBreak
4001  documentation to adjust.
4002  \MessageBreak}
4003  }{}%

```

9.78.1.12 Hint about the jura class

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is incompatible with
\if@mtc@hints@given@ minitoc:

```

```

4004 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
4005   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
4006     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0029>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4007     {--- The jura class is loaded.
4008       \MessageBreak
4009       It is incompatible
4010       \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectioning commands

`\part` To check if the sectioning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing a `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For each sectioning command, we must perform the comparison for the command itself, its unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [214] may interfere, hence the formal precautions in the messages.

9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of `\part`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \part, \@part and \@spart:
  \ifundefined
    \part 4011 \@mtc@hints@w@false
  \mtc@hints@part 4012 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax
    \@part 4013   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \mtc@hints@@part 4014 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@part\mtc@hints@@part\relax
    \@spart 4015   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \mtc@hints@@spart 4016 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4017   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 4018 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
4019   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0030>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4020   {--- The \string\part\space command is altered
4021     \MessageBreak
4022     after minitoc}
4023   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
4024     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4025     {--- It may be the consequence
4026       \MessageBreak
4027       of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
4028   \fi
4029 \fi

```

9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of `\chapter`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
  \ifundefined
    \chapter 4030 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 4031 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 4032   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 4033 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 4034   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 4035 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4036   \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 4037 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  4038   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0028>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  4039   {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
  4040     \MessageBreak
  4041     after minitoc}
  4042   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  4043     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  4044     {--- It may be the consequence
  4045       \MessageBreak
  4046       of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
  4047   \fi
  4048 \fi

```

9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of `\section`

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
  \ifundefined
    \section 4049 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 4050 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 4051   {\@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@sect 4052   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 4053   \@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@ssect 4054   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4055   \@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 4056   \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  4057 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
  4058   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0039>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  4059   {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
  4060     \MessageBreak
  4061     after minitoc}
  4062   \if@mtc@hyper@used@
  4063     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  4064     {--- It may be the consequence
  4065       \MessageBreak
  4066       of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}
  4067   \fi
  4068   \relax\else\fi}{}%

```

9.78.1.14 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]listofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]listofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```
\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 4069 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 4070 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
                  4071 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
                  4072 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
```

`\mtc@sv@tableofcontents` Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First, the commands for the main summaries:

```
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 4073 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 4074 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 4075 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 4076 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 4077 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 4078 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
                  4079 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
                  4080 \def\listoftables%
                  4081 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}
```

`\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents` Then, their “fake” siblings:

```
\faketableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 4082 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\faketableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 4083 \def\faketableofcontents%
\fake\listoffigures 4084 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 4085 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fake\listoffigures
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 4086 \def\fake\listoffigures%
\fake\listoftables 4087 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 4088 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fake\listoftables
                  4089 \def\fake\listoftables%
                  4090 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
                  4091 \fi
```

`\mtc@hints@beginndoc` And the `\mtc@hints@beginndoc` definition is finished (it begins in section [9.78.1](#) on page [382](#)):

```
4092 }
```

9.78.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
4093 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

9.78.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 4094 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 4095 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 4096 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 4097 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
4098 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ If yes, we verify that the placeins package [10] has been loaded with the correct options or that
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ the insection option of the minitoc package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4099 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
4100 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
4101 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0056>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4102 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
4103 \MessageBreak
4104 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
4105 \MessageBreak
4106 hence the ‘insection’ package
4107 \MessageBreak
4108 option is recommended}%
4109 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
4110 \fi
4111 \fi
```

9.78.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 4112 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4113 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 4114 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 4115 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0062>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 4116 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 4117 \MessageBreak
4118 but not \string\doparttoc}
4119 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4120 \fi
4121 \fi
4122 \if@partlof@used@
4123 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
4124 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0060>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4125 {You have used \string\partlof,
4126 \MessageBreak
4127 but not \string\dopartlof}
4128 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4129 \fi
4130 \fi
4131 \if@partlot@used@
4132 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
4133 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0061>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4134 {You have used \string\partlot,
4135 \MessageBreak
4136 but not \string\dopartlot}
4137 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4138 \fi
4139 \fi
4140 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 4141 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4142 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 4143 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 4144 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0059>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 4145 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 4146 \MessageBreak
4147 but not \string\dominitoc}
4148 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4149 \fi
4150 \fi
4151 \if@minilof@used@
4152 \if@dominilof@used@\else
4153 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0057>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4154 {You have used \string\minilof,
4155 \MessageBreak
4156 but not \string\dominilof}
4157 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4158 \fi

```



```

4159 \fi
4160 \if@minilot@used@
4161   \if@dominilot@used@\else
4162     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0058>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4163     {You have used \string\minilot,
4164     \MessageBreak
4165     but not \string\dominilot}
4166   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4167 \fi
4168 \fi
4169 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
  \if@secttoc@used@
    \if@dosecttoc@used@ 4170 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4171 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 4172   \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4173   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0065>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 4174     {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 4175     \MessageBreak
4176     but not \string\dosecttoc}
4177   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4178 \fi
4179 \fi
4180 \if@sectlof@used@
4181   \if@dosectlof@used@\else
4182     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0063>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4183     {You have used \string\sectlof,
4184     \MessageBreak
4185     but not \string\dosectlof}
4186   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4187 \fi
4188 \fi
4189 \if@sectlot@used@
4190   \if@dosectlot@used@\else
4191     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0064>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4192     {You have used \string\sectlot,
4193     \MessageBreak
4194     but not \string\dosectlot}
4195 \fi
4196 \fi
4197 \fi

```

9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 4198 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4199 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 4200 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 4201 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0075>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 4202 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 4203 \MessageBreak
4204 but not \string\parttoc}
4205 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4206 \fi
4207 \fi
4208 \if@dopartlof@used@
4209 \if@partlof@used@\else
4210 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0076>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4211 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
4212 \MessageBreak
4213 but not \string\partlof}
4214 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4215 \fi
4216 \fi
4217 \if@dopartlot@used@
4218 \if@partlot@used@\else
4219 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0077>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4220 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
4221 \MessageBreak
4222 but not \string\partlot}
4223 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4224 \fi
4225 \fi
4226 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 4227 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4228 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 4229 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 4230 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0078>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 4231 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
\if@minilot@used@ 4232 \MessageBreak
4233 but not \string\minitoc}
4234 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4235 \fi
4236 \fi
4237 \if@dominilof@used@
4238 \if@minilof@used@\else
4239 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0079>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4240 {You have used \string\dominilof,
4241 \MessageBreak
4242 but not \string\minilof}
4243 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4244 \fi

```

```

4245 \fi
4246 \if@dominilot@used@
4247 \if@minilot@used@\else
4248 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0080>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4249 {You have used \string\dominilot,
4250 \MessageBreak
4251 but not \string\minilot}
4252 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4253 \fi
4254 \fi
4255 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@ 4256 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 4257 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4258 \if@secttoc@used@\else
\if@sectlof@used@ 4259 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0081>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 4260 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
\if@sectlot@used@ 4261 \MessageBreak
4262 but not \string\secttoc}
4263 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4264 \fi
4265 \fi
4266 \if@dosectlof@used@
4267 \if@sectlof@used@\else
4268 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0082>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4269 {You have used \string\dosectlof,
4270 \MessageBreak
4271 but not \string\sectlof}
4272 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4273 \fi
4274 \fi
4275 \if@dosectlot@used@
4276 \if@sectlot@used@\else
4277 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0083>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4278 {You have used \string\dosectlot,
4279 \MessageBreak
4280 but not \string\sectlot}
4281 \fi
4282 \fi
4283 \fi
4284 \fi

```

9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); and similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 4285 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 4286 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 4287 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 4288 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0071>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 4289 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 4290 \MessageBreak
4291 \string\tableofcontents
4292 \MessageBreak
4293 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
4294 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4295 \fi
4296 \fi
4297 \if@partlof@used@
4298 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
4299 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0069>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4300 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
4301 \MessageBreak
4302 \string\listoffigures
4303 \MessageBreak
4304 nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
4305 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4306 \fi
4307 \fi
4308 \if@partlot@used@
4309 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
4310 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0070>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4311 {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
4312 \MessageBreak
4313 \string\listoftables
4314 \MessageBreak
4315 nor \string\fakelistoftables}
4316 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4317 \fi
4318 \fi
4319 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@minitoc@used@ 4320 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 4321 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 4322 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 4323 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0068>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 4324 {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 4325 \MessageBreak
4326 \string\tableofcontents
4327 \MessageBreak
4328 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
4329 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4330 \fi
4331 \fi

```

```

4332 \if@minilof@used@
4333   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
4334     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0066>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4335     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
4336       \MessageBreak
4337       \string\listoffigures
4338       \MessageBreak
4339       nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
4340   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4341   \fi
4342 \fi
4343 \if@minilot@used@
4344   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
4345     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0067>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4346     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
4347       \MessageBreak
4348       \string\listoftables
4349       \MessageBreak
4350       nor \string\fakelistoftables}
4351   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4352   \fi
4353 \fi
4354 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
  \if@secttoc@used@ 4355 \if@mtc@section@def@
  \ifmtc@toc@used@ 4356 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 4357 \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
  \ifmtc@lof@used@ 4358 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0074>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 4359 {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
  \ifmtc@lot@used@ 4360 \MessageBreak
  4361 \string\tableofcontents
  4362 \MessageBreak
  4363 nor \string\faketableofcontents}
  4364 \@mtc@hints@given@true
  4365 \fi
  4366 \fi
  4367 \if@sectlof@used@
  4368 \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
  4369 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0072>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  4370 {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
  4371 \MessageBreak
  4372 \string\listoffigures
  4373 \MessageBreak
  4374 nor \string\fakelistoffigures}
  4375 \@mtc@hints@given@true
  4376 \fi
  4377 \fi
  4378 \if@sectlot@used@
  4379 \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
  4380 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0073>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

4381     {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
4382     \MessageBreak
4383     \string\listoftables
4384     \MessageBreak
4385     nor \string\fake\listoftables}
4386 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4387 \fi
4388 \fi
4389 \fi

```

9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\@mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
\if@longextensions@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
\if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
\value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 11, either redesign the document.
\if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@section@def@
4390 \def\@mtc@hints@checklongext{%
4391 \if@longextensions@
4392 \else
4393 \if@mtc@part@def@
4394 \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax
4395 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4396 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0054>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4397 {You have used short extensions
4398 \MessageBreak
4399 and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
4400 \fi
4401 \fi
4402 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
4403 \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax
4404 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4405 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0053>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4406 {You have used short extensions
4407 \MessageBreak
4408 and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
4409 \fi
4410 \else
4411 \if@mtc@section@def@
4412 \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax
4413 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4414 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0055>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4415 {You have used short extensions
4416 \MessageBreak
4417 and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
4418 \fi
4419 \fi
4420 \fi

```

¹¹On the long term, a good investment.

```
4421 \fi}
4422 \mtc@hints@checklongext
```

9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

```
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ section 9.9.1 on page 250.
  \if@mtc@hints@given@
    4423 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@\else
    4424   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
    4425     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0037>]{minitoc(hints)}%
    4426     {The sectsty package should be
    4427       \MessageBreak
    4428       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
    4429     \@mtc@hints@given@true
    4430   \fi
    4431 \fi
```

9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

```
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ section 9.9.2 on page 250.
  \if@mtc@hints@given@
    4432 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@\else
    4433   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
    4434     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0038>]{minitoc(hints)}%
    4435     {The varsects package should be
    4436       \MessageBreak
    4437       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
    4438     \@mtc@hints@given@true
    4439   \fi
    4440 \fi
```

9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

```
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.3 on page 250.
  \if@mtc@hints@given@
    4441 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@\else
    4442   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
    4443     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0086>]{minitoc(hints)}%
    4444     {The fncychap package should be
    4445       \MessageBreak
    4446       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
```

```

4447     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4448     \fi
4449 \fi

```

9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

```

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ section 9.9.4 on page 251.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4450 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@\else
4451     \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
4452         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0092>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4453         {The hangcaption package should be
4454             \MessageBreak
4455             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4456         \@mtc@hints@given@true
4457     \fi
4458 \fi

```

9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

```

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ section 9.9.5 on page 251.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4459 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@\else
4460     \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
4461         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0087>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4462         {The quotchap package should be
4463             \MessageBreak
4464             loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4465         \@mtc@hints@given@true
4466     \fi
4467 \fi

```

9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ section 9.9.6 on page 251.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4468 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@\else
4469     \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
4470         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0088>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4471         {The romannum package should be
4472             \MessageBreak

```



```

4473     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4474     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4475     \fi
4476 \fi

```

9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the sfheaders package

```

\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ We test if sfheaders has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ section 9.9.7 on page 251.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4477 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
4478     \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
4479         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0089>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4480         {The sfheaders package should be
4481         \MessageBreak
4482         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4483         \@mtc@hints@given@true
4484     \fi
4485 \fi

```

9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the alnumsec package

```

\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ We test if alnumsec has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ section 9.9.8 on page 252.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4486 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
4487     \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
4488         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0090>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4489         {The alnumsec package should be
4490         \MessageBreak
4491         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4492         \@mtc@hints@given@true
4493     \fi
4494 \fi

```

9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the captcont package

```

\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ We test if captcont has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ section 9.9.9 on page 252.
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

```

4495 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
4496     \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
4497         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0091>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4498         {The captcont package should be

```

```

4499     \MessageBreak
4500     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4501     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4502 \fi
4503 \fi

```

9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.10 on page 252.
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4504 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@else
4505 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
4506     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0033>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4507     {The caption package should be
4508     \MessageBreak
4509     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4510     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4511 \fi
4512 \fi

```

9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.11 on page 252.
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4513 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@else
4514 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
4515     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0034>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4516     {The caption2 package should be
4517     \MessageBreak
4518     loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4519     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4520 \fi
4521 \fi

```

9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.12 on page 253.
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@`
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

4522 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@else
4523 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
4524     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0035>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

4525     {The ccaption package should be
4526       \MessageBreak
4527       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4528     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4529   \fi
4530 \fi

```

9.78.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.13 on page 253.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

4531 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@else
4532   \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
4533     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0036>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4534     {The mcaption package should be
4535       \MessageBreak
4536       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
4537     \@mtc@hints@given@true
4538   \fi
4539 \fi

```

9.78.2.19 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ For parttocs:

```

4540 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
4541   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4542   {You have attempted to insert
4543     \MessageBreak
4544     empty parttocs}
4545   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4546 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ For partlofs:

```

4547 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
4548   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4549   {You have attempted to insert
4550     \MessageBreak
4551     empty partlofs}
4552   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4553 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

```
4554 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
4555   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4556   {You have attempted to insert
4557   \MessageBreak
4558   empty partlots}
4559   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4560 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` For minitocs:

```
4561 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
4562   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4563   {You have attempted to insert
4564   \MessageBreak
4565   empty minitocs}
4566   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4567 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@` For minilofs:

```
4568 \if@mtc@empty@minilof@
4569   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4570   {You have attempted to insert
4571   \MessageBreak
4572   empty minilofs}
4573   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4574 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@` For minilots:

```
4575 \if@mtc@empty@minilot@
4576   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4577   {You have attempted to insert
4578   \MessageBreak
4579   empty minilots}
4580   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4581 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@` For secttocs:

```
4582 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
4583   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4584   {You have attempted to insert
4585   \MessageBreak
```

```

4586   empty secttocs}
4587   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4588 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@` For sectlofs:

```

4589 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
4590   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4591   {You have attempted to insert
4592   \MessageBreak
4593   empty sectlofs}
4594   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4595 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@` For sectlots:

```

4596 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
4597   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4598   {You have attempted to insert
4599   \MessageBreak
4600   empty sectlots}
4601   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4602 \fi

```

9.78.2.20 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

`\if@firstpartis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstpartis`:

```

4603 \if@firstpartis@used@
4604   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0051>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4605   {You have invoked an obsolete
4606   \MessageBreak
4607   command: \string\firstpartis}
4608   \@mtc@hints@given@true
4609 \fi

```

`\if@firstchapteris@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstchapteris`:

```

4610 \if@firstchapteris@used@
4611   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0050>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4612   {You have invoked an obsolete

```

```

4613 \MessageBreak
4614 command: \string\firstchapteris}
4615 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4616 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

```

4617 \if@firstsectionis@used@
4618 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0052>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4619 {You have invoked an obsolete
4620 \MessageBreak
4621 command: \string\firstsectionis}
4622 \@mtc@hints@given@true
4623 \fi

```

9.78.2.21 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the `hints` option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the `document.log` file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

```

4624 \if@mtc@hints@given@
4625 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0024>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4626 {Some hints have been written
4627 \MessageBreak
4628 in the \jobname.log file}
4629 \else
4630 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0019>]{minitoc(hints)}%
4631 {No hints have been written
4632 \MessageBreak
4633 in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
4634 \fi
4635 }

```

9.79 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, `english`:
`\ExecuteOptions`

```

4636 \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
4637 {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```

```

\mtcPackageError Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
\providecommand
  \ptctitle 4638      {\mtcPackageError[<E0036>]{minitoc}%
  \plftitle 4639      {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
  \plttitle 4640      \MessageBreak
  \mtctitle 4641      The minitoc language object file (.mld),
  \mlftitle 4642      \MessageBreak
  \mlttitle 4643      english.mld is not found.
  \stctitle 4644      \MessageBreak
  \slftitle 4645      We will try to continue with default values}%
  \slttitle 4646      {See the minitoc documentation.
  \slttitle 4647      \MessageBreak
  \slttitle 4648      Please fix your minitoc installation.
  \slttitle 4649      \MessageBreak
  \slttitle 4650      Press <return> to continue}%
  \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  \slttitle 4660      }%

```

\ProcessOptions* Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
4661 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

9.79.1 Processing the insection option

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@ For the insection option, we load the placeins package [10] with its options verbose and
  \RequirePackage section, after the flafter package (described in [162] and [189, page 286]); the correct loading
  \@ifpackageloaded is verified:
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
  4662 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
  4663   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
  4664   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
  4665   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
  4666     {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
  4667 \fi

```

9.79.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the `notoccite` option, we just load the `notoccite` package [9]:
`\RequirePackage`

```
4668 \if@mtc@notoccite@
4669   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
4670 \fi
```

9.79.3 Processing the listfiles option

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file
`\tf@mtc` *document.maf*. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions),
`\if@longextensions@` then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the exist-
`\mtc@maf@long` ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes *docu-*
`\mtc@maf@short` *ment.mtc* in the list (but *not* the *document.maf*¹² file). We must also check the existence of
`\mtc@addtomaf` `\jobname.mtc1` if long extensions are used.

```
\IfFileExists
\jobname 4671 \def\mtc@maf{%
4672   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0009>]{minitoc}%
4673   {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
4674   \MessageBreak
4675   Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
4676   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4677   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
4678   \if@longextensions@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
4679   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4680 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
4681   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
4682 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
4683   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
4684 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
4685   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
4686   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
4687   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
4688   \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
4689 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc1}}{%
4690   \loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
4691   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
4692   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
4693   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
4694   \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
4695 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
4696   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
4697   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
4698   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
4699   \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}
4700 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
```

¹²Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it should not be in the list.


```

4701      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
4702 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@relax
4703      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
4704      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
4705      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
4706      \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
4707 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@relax
4708      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
4709      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
4710      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
4711      \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
4712 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@relax
4713      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
4714      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
4715      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
4716      \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` If this option is active, we call `\mtc@maf` in a `\AtEndDocument` block.

```

\AtEndDocument
  \mtc@maf 4717 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi

```

9.79.4 Processing the hints option

`\if@mtc@hints@` For the hints option, we set its first part in a `\AtBeginDocument` block and its third (last) part in a `\AtEndDocument` block:

```

\mtc@hints@begindoc
  \AtEndDocument 4718 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 4719 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
                  4720 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
                  4721 \fi

```

9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the hints option executed in the preamble):

`\@ifundefined` For the `\part` command:

```

\mtc@hints@part
  \part 4722 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 4723      \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
  \@part 4724      \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@@spart
  \@spart

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
  \chapter 4725 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 4726 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
  \@chapter 4727 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
  \@schapter

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
  \section 4728 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@@sect 4729 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
  \@sect 4730 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@ssect
  \@ssect

```

9.80 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

`\mtc@classck` `\mtcPackageError` It may happen that you use a preparation command (like `\dominitoc`) or an insertion command (like `\dominitoc`) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like `article`). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in a `\AtBeginDocument` block.

```

4731 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
4732   \mtcPackageError[<E0037>]{minitoc}%
4733     {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
4734       \MessageBreak
4735       with the document class}%
4736     {Correct the source code.
4737       \MessageBreak
4738       Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
4739 }

```

A `\AtBeginDocument` bloc:

```

\AtBeginDocument

4740 \AtBeginDocument{%

\providecommand Part-level preparation commands:
  \doparttoc
  \dopartlof 4741 \providecommand{\doparttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doparttoc}}%
  \dopartlot 4742 \providecommand{\dopartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dopartlof}}%
  4743 \providecommand{\dopartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\dopartlot}}%

```

```

\doinitoc Chapter-level preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 4744 \providecommand{\doinitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{doinitoc}}%
          4745 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
          4746 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%

\dosecttoc Section-level preparation commands:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 4747 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
          4748 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
          4749 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot 4750 % \ifcase\LANG\relax
          4751 % Part-level insertion commands:
          4752 % \or\relax
          4753 % Commandes d'insertion au niveau partie:
          4754 % \fi
          4755 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
          4756 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
          4757 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%

\minitoc Chapter-level insertion commands:
\minilof
\minilot 4758 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
          4759 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
          4760 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%

\secttoc Section-level insertion commands:
\sectlof
\sectlot 4761 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
          4762 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
          4763 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
          4764 }

```

And the package is terminated.

```
4765 </minitoc>
```

9.81 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

`\jobname` This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set `\jobname`
`\input` to `fminitoc` in place of `minitoc`. As `minitoc.ins` generates the `minitoc.lan` and
`fminitoc.lan` files which set a language number `\LANG`, and `minitoc.dtx` reads then the
`\jobname.lan` file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)
in `minitoc.dtx`, the language being selected by `\ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...`
`\fi` constructs. The `\relax` primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```
4766 <{*fminitoc}
4767 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}%
4768           [2007/01/09 minitoc french documentation start file]
4769 \input{minitoc.dtx}
4770 </fminitoc>
```

Chapter 10

Commented code of mtcoff

Contents

10.1	Why mtcoff?	413
10.2	Identification of the package	414
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	414
10.4	Faking simple commands	417
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	417
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	418
10.7	Disabling the font commands	418
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	420
10.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	420
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	420
10.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	421
10.12	Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command	421
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	421
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	422
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	422
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	423
10.17	Caution for some commands	423
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	425
10.19	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	425
10.20	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and <code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> internal commands	425
10.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	425
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	426
10.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	426

10.1 Why mtcoff?

The minitoc package [106, 107] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept

of a replacement package, `mtcoff` (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the `minitoc` package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the `minitoc` package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the `minitoc` package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of `minitoc`. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of \LaTeX ¹; we need the `mtcmess` package
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
4771 (*mtcoff)
4772 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
4773 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2006/06/27 v30 The mtcoff package]
4774 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

`\count@` As `minitoc` declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using `\count@`
`\dimen@` or `\dimen@`. For `\mtcskipamount`, we must use its default definition, `\bigskipamount`.
`\c@minitocdepth`
`\mtcindent` 4775 \let\c@minitocdepth\count@
`\mtcskipamount` 4776 \let\mtcindent\dimen@
`\bigskipamount` 4777 \let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount
`\c@parttocdepth` 4778 \let\c@parttocdepth\count@
`\mtcindent` 4779 \let\ptcindent\dimen@
`\c@secttocdepth`
`\stcindent`

¹ This checking is not really useful for the `mtcoff` package itself, but it is good to check that your version of \LaTeX is not too old to support `minitoc`.

```
4780 \let\c@secttocdepth\count@
4781 \let\stcindent\dimen@
```

```
\c@mtc The basic mini-table counters are provided by \count@:
\c@ptc
\c@stc 4782 \let\c@mtc\count@
4783 \let\c@ptc\count@
4784 \let\c@stc\count@
```

```
\mtcgapbeforeheads The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:
\mtcgapafterheads
```

```
4785 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
4786 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}
```

```
\@ifundefined We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before
\kernafterparttoc the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros
\kernafterpartlof is used.
\kernafterpartlot
```

```
\kernaftersecttoc 4787 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 4788 \def\kernafterparttoc{%
\kernaftersectlot 4789 \mtcoffwarn@true
\kernafterminitoc 4790 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
\kernafterminilof 4791 {The macro \string\kernafterparttoc
\kernafterminilot 4792 \MessageBreak
4793 should not be used out of context
4794 \MessageBreak}%
4795 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4796 \def\kernafterpartlof{%
4797 \mtcoffwarn@true
4798 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4799 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlof
4800 \MessageBreak
4801 should not be used out of context
4802 \MessageBreak}%
4803 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4804 \def\kernafterpartlot{%
4805 \mtcoffwarn@true
4806 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4807 {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot
4808 \MessageBreak
4809 should not be used out of context
4810 \MessageBreak}%
4811 \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4812 }%
4813 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
4814 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
4815 {}%
4816 \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
```

```

4817         \mtcoffwarn@true
4818         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4819         {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
4820         \MessageBreak
4821         should not be used out of context
4822         \MessageBreak}%
4823         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4824 \def\kernaftersectlof{%
4825     \mtcoffwarn@true
4826     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4827     {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
4828     \MessageBreak
4829     should not be used out of context
4830     \MessageBreak}%
4831     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4832 \def\kernaftersectlot{%
4833     \mtcoffwarn@true
4834     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4835     {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
4836     \MessageBreak
4837     should not be used out of context
4838     \MessageBreak}%
4839     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4840     }%
4841     }%
4842     {%
4843 \def\kernafterminitoc{%
4844     \mtcoffwarn@true
4845     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4846     {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
4847     \MessageBreak
4848     should not be used out of context
4849     \MessageBreak}%
4850     \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
4851 \def\kernafterminilof{%
4852     \mtcoffwarn@true
4853     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4854     {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
4855     \MessageBreak
4856     should not be used out of context
4857     \MessageBreak}%
4858     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
4859 \def\kernafterminilot{%
4860     \mtcoffwarn@true
4861     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
4862     {The macro \string\kernafterminilot
4863     \MessageBreak
4864     should not be used out of context
4865     \MessageBreak}%
4866     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
4867     }%

```


10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\mtcskip   Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableofcontents 4868 \let\mtcskip\relax
\fakeableoffigures 4869 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\adjustptc 4870 \let\fakeableoffigures\relax
\adjustmtc 4871 \let\fakeableoftables\relax
\adjuststc 4872 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 4873 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 4874 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 4875 \let\decrementptc\relax
\decrementstc 4876 \let\decrementmtc\relax
\incrementptc 4877 \let\decrementstc\relax
\incrementmtc 4878 \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementstc 4879 \let\incrementmtc\relax
               4880 \let\incrementstc\relax

```

```

\partend   The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 4881 \let\partend\relax
\sectend      4882 \let\partbegin\relax
\sectbegin    4883 \let\chapterend\relax
               4884 \let\chapterbegin\relax
               4885 \let\sectend\relax
               4886 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

`\gobbleopt@` The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal \LaTeX macro `\@ifnextchar` (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command `\gobbleopt@`.

```
4887 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}
```

```

\@ifnextchar   Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doarttoc
\doartlof      4888 \def\doarttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\doartlot      4889 \def\doartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc       4890 \def\doartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof       4891 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot       4892 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
               4893 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
  \dominitoc
  \dominilof 4894 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \dominilot 4895 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \minitoc   4896 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \minilof   4897 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \minilot   4898 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  4899 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
  \dosecttoc
  \dosectlof 4900 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \dosectlot 4901 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \secttoc   4902 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \sectlof   4903 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  \sectlot   4904 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
  4905 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
  \mtcprepare
  4906 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

10.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
  \tf@mtc    \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
  \mtc@string
\appendixmtc 4907 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter  4908 \let\mtc@string\relax
  \xchapter  4909 \let\appendixmtc\relax
  \pchapter  4910 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
    \psect   4911 \let\xchapter\relax
  \l@xpart   4912 \let\pchapter\relax
    \xpart   4913 \let\psect\relax
  \l@xsect   4914 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
    \xsect   4915 \let\xpart\relax
  4916 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
  4917 \let\xsect\relax

```

10.7 Disabling the font commands

```

\empty  We disable the minitoc font commands (like \mtcSSfont) with \empty, because some users
        might have used:

```

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here.

```
\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 4918 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 4919 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 4920 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 4921 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 4922 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 4923 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 4924 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 4925 \let\plffont\empty
\pltfont 4926 \let\plfSfont\empty
\pltSfont 4927 \let\pltfont\empty
\ptifont 4928 \let\pltSfont\empty
         4929 \let\ptifont\empty

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 4930 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 4931 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 4932 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 4933 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 4934 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 4935 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 4936 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 4937 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 4938 \let\mltfont\empty
         4939 \let\mltSfont\empty
         4940 \let\mtifont\empty

\stcfont  Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4941 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont 4942 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont 4943 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont 4944 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont 4945 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont 4946 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont 4947 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont 4948 \let\sltfont\empty
         4949 \let\sltSfont\empty
         4950 \let\stifont\empty
```

`\coffee` Font for “coffee” ☹ lines:

```
4951 \let\coffee\empty
```

10.8 Disabling the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@gobbletwo` These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:

```
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetfont 4952 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 4953 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 4954 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 4955 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 4956 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 4957 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 4958 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
4959 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo
```

10.9 Disabling the new `\l@...` commands

`\l@startpart` The minitoc package defines the `\l@starXXX` commands to format TOC entries for starred sectioning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:

```
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 4960 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@startpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 4961 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 4962 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 4963 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
4964 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
4965 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
4966 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}
```

10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

`\@gobble` We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):

```
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 4967 \let\firstpartis\@gobble
\firstsectionis 4968 \let\firstchapteris\@gobble
4969 \let\firstsectionis\@gobble
```

10.11 Disabling the `\mtcselectlanguage` command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
4970 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble

```

10.12 Disabling the `\mtcloadmlo` command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcloadmlo
4971 \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

10.13 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule 4972 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 4973 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule 4974 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 4975 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule 4976 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 4977 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule 4978 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 4979 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule 4980 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 4981 \let\slfrule\relax
\pltrule 4982 \let\noslfrule\relax
\nopltrule 4983 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule 4984 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 4985 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule 4986 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 4987 \let\sltrule\relax
4988 \let\nosltrule\relax
4989 \let\nosltrule\relax

```



```

\beforeminitoc  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 5017 \let\beforeminitoc\empty
\afterminitoc  5018 \let\beforeminilof\empty
\afterminilof  5019 \let\beforeminilot\empty
\afterminilot  5020 \let\afterminitoc\empty
\thispageminicotstyle  5021 \let\afterminilof\empty
\thispageminilofstyle  5022 \let\afterminilot\empty
\thispageminilotstyle  5023 \let\thispageminicotstyle\empty
                    5024 \let\thispageminilofstyle\empty
                    5025 \let\thispageminilotstyle\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot  5026 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc  5027 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof  5028 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot  5029 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle  5030 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\thispagesectlofstyle  5031 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle  5032 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
                    5033 \let\thispagesectlofstyle\empty
                    5034 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

10.16 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@longextensions@  There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
    \iftightmtc
    \ifktightmtc 5035 \newif\if@longextensions@ \@longextensions@true
\ifundottedmtc 5036 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
    \l@listof 5037 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 5038 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
    \chapter 5039 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
            5040 \let\l@listof\chapter

```



10.17 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and a `\AtEndDocument` block to signal that you have used these commands:

```

5041 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
5042 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@

```

```

5043 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<F0007>]{mtcoff}%
5044 {You should scan (backwards) your .log
5045 \MessageBreak
5046 file to find some commands needing
5047 \MessageBreak
5048 to be replaced if you decide to
5049 \MessageBreak
5050 DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
5051 \MessageBreak
5052 document. It is more wise to keep the
5053 \MessageBreak
5054 \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
5055 \MessageBreak
5056 and to comment out only one of them}
5057 \fi}

```

\mtcaddchapter Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the
 \mtcaddsection line number):

```

\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 5058 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 5059 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0004>]{mtcoff}%
\addcontentsline 5060 {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
5061 \MessageBreak
5062 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
5063 \MessageBreak}
5064 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
5065 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
5066 \else
5067 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
5068 \fi}
5069 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
5070 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0006>]{mtcoff}%
5071 {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
5072 \MessageBreak
5073 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
5074 \MessageBreak}
5075 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
5076 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
5077 \else
5078 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
5079 \fi}
5080 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
5081 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0005>]{mtcoff}%
5082 {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
5083 \MessageBreak
5084 by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
5085 \MessageBreak}
5086 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
5087 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
5088 \else
5089 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
5090 \fi}

```


10.18 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 5091 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 5092 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
5093 \let\l@coffee\relax
5094 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
5095 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

10.19 Disabling the `mtchideinmain...` environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 5096 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
5097   {\empty}{\empty}
5098 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5099   {\empty}{\empty}
5100 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
5101   {\empty}{\empty}

```

10.20 Inhibition of the `\mtc@saveXXXdepth` and `\mtc@restoreXXXdepth` internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcOFF package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 5102 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restorelotdepth 5103 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
5104 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
5105 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty
5106 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
5107 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty

```

10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixglossary` command

```

\mtcfixglossary This command accepts one optional argument:

```

```
5108 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax}
```

10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
5109 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax}
```

10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but `mtcoff` simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

```
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection 5110 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
\addcontentsline 5111 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0002>]{mtcoff}%
5112 {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
5113 \MessageBreak
5114 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
5115 \MessageBreak}
5116 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
5117 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
5118 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0001>]{mtcoff}%
5119 {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
5120 \MessageBreak
5121 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
5122 \MessageBreak}
5123 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
5124 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
5125 \mtcPackageWarning[<F0003>]{mtcoff}%
5126 {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
5127 \MessageBreak
5128 \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
5129 \MessageBreak}
5130 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```

And the `mtcoff` package is terminated.

```
5131 </mtcoff>
```

Chapter 11

Commented code of mtcmess

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
  \PackageInfo
  \MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning
  \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 5132 <*mtcmess>
  \PackageWarningNoLine 5133 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 5134 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
  \PackageError 5135 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][]%
    5136   {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
    5137 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][]%
    5138   {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
    5139 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][]%
    5140   {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}%
    5141 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][]%
    5142   {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}%
    5143 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

¹ By example, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

Chapter 12

Patch for the memoir class

This code must be loaded to fix an incompatibility of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.

```
5144 (*mtcpatchmem)
5145 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
5146 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
5147   [2007/01/09 v51 Package mtcpatchmem]
5148 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
5149 \mctcPackageInfo[<M0001>]{mtcpatchmem}%
5150   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
5151 \renewcommand{\@m@mchapter}[1][ ]{%
5152   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
5153   \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
5154 }
5155 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
5156 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
5157 % entry for all fields.
5158   \ifx\ch@pt@c@empty
5159     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
5160     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
5161   \else
5162 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If #1| is empty then only
5163 % one was found.
5164     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
5165     \ifx@empty#1@empty
5166       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
5167     \else
5168       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
5169     \fi
5170   \fi
5171   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
5172     \if@mainmatter
5173       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

5174     \fi
5175     \fi
5176     \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
5177     \ifartopt
5178         \@makechapterhead{#2}%
5179         \@afterheading
5180     \else
5181         \insertchapterspace
5182         \if@twocolumn
5183             \topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
5184         \else
5185             \@makechapterhead{#2}%
5186         \fi
5187         \@afterheading
5188     \fi
5189     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
5190         \if@mainmatter
5191             \ifanappendix
5192                 \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
5193                     \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
5194             \else
5195                 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
5196                     \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
5197             \fi
5198         \else
5199             \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
5200         \fi
5201     \else
5202         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
5203     \fi
5204     \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
5205 }
5206 </mtcpatchmem>

```

Chapter 13

The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

Contents

13.1	“Acadian” language: <code>acadian.mld</code>	434
13.2	“Acadien” language: <code>acadien.mld</code>	435
13.3	“Afrikaan” language: <code>afrikaan.mld</code>	435
13.4	“Afrikaans” language: <code>afrikaans.mld</code>	435
13.5	“Albanian” language: <code>albanian.mld</code>	436
13.6	“American” language: <code>american.mld</code>	436
13.7	“Arab” language: <code>arab.mld</code>	436
13.8	“Arab2” language: <code>arab2.mld</code>	437
13.9	“Arabi” language: <code>arabi.mld</code>	437
13.10	“Arabic” language: <code>arabic.mld</code>	438
13.11	“Armenian” language: <code>armenian.mld</code>	438
13.12	“Australian” language: <code>australian.mld</code>	439
13.13	“Austrian” language: <code>austrian.mld</code>	439
13.14	“Bahasa” language: <code>bahasa.mld</code>	439
13.15	“Bahasai” language: <code>bahasai.mld</code>	440
13.16	“Bahasam” language: <code>bahasam.mld</code>	440
13.17	“Bangla” language: <code>bangla.mld</code>	441
13.18	“Basque” language: <code>basque.mld</code>	441
13.19	“Bicig” language: <code>bicig.mld</code>	442
13.20	“Bicig2” language: <code>bicig2.mld</code>	442
13.21	“Bicig3” language: <code>bicig3.mld</code>	443
13.22	“Bithe” language: <code>bithe.mld</code>	444
13.23	“Brazil” language: <code>brazil.mld</code>	444
13.24	“Brazilian” language: <code>brazilian.mld</code>	445
13.25	“Breton” language: <code>breton.mld</code>	445
13.26	“British” language: <code>british.mld</code>	446
13.27	“Bulgarian” language: <code>bulgarian.mld</code>	446
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language: <code>bulgarianb.mld</code>	447
13.29	“Buryat” language: <code>buryat.mld</code>	447
13.30	“Buryat2” language: <code>buryat2.mld</code>	448

13.31	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld	448
13.32	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld	449
13.33	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld	449
13.34	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld	449
13.35	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld	449
13.36	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo	450
13.37	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo	450
13.38	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld	451
13.39	“Czech” language: czech.mld	451
13.40	“Danish” language: danish.mld	452
13.41	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld	452
13.42	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld	453
13.43	“English” language: english.mld	454
13.44	“English1” language: english1.mld	454
13.45	“English2” language: english2.mld	455
13.46	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld	455
13.47	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld	456
13.48	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld	456
13.49	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld	457
13.50	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld	458
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld	458
13.52	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo	459
13.53	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo	459
13.54	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld	460
13.55	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld	460
13.56	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld	461
13.57	“Francais” language: francais.mld	461
13.58	“French” language: french.mld	461
13.59	“French1” language: french1.mld	462
13.60	“French2” language: french2.mld	463
13.61	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld	463
13.62	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld	464
13.63	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld	464
13.64	“Galician” language: galician.mld	464
13.65	“German” language: german.mld	465
13.66	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld	465
13.67	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld	466
13.68	“Greek” language: greek.mld	466
13.69	“Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld	467
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld	468
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld	469
13.72	“Guarani” language: guarani.mld	470
13.73	“Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo	470
13.74	“Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo	471
13.75	“Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo	471
13.76	“Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo	472
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo	473
13.78	“Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo	473
13.79	“Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo	474
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo	474
13.81	“Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld	475
13.82	“Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	475
13.83	“Hindi” language: hindi.mld	476

13.84	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	476
13.85	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	477
13.86	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	477
13.87	“Indon” language: indon.mld	478
13.88	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	478
13.89	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	478
13.90	“Irish” language: irish.mld	479
13.91	“Italian” language: italian.mld	480
13.92	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	480
13.93	“Japanese” language: japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	481
13.94	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	481
13.95	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	482
13.96	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	482
13.97	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo	483
13.98	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	483
13.99	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	484
13.100	“Khalka” language: khalkha.mld	484
13.101	“Latin” language: latin.mld	484
13.102	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	485
13.103	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	485
13.104	“Letton” language: letton.mld	486
13.105	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	486
13.106	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	487
13.107	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	487
13.108	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	488
13.109	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	488
13.110	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	489
13.111	“Malay” language: malay.mld	489
13.112	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	490
13.113	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	490
13.114	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	491
13.115	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	491
13.116	“Manju” language: manju.mld	492
13.117	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	492
13.118	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	492
13.119	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	493
13.120	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	493
13.121	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	493
13.122	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	494
13.123	“Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	494
13.124	“Norsk” language: norsk.mld	495
13.125	“Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	495
13.126	“Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	496
13.127	“Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	496
13.128	“Polish” language: polish.mld	497
13.129	“Polish2” language: polish2.mld	497
13.130	“Polski” language: polski.mld	498
13.131	“Portuges” language: portuges.mld	498
13.132	“Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	499
13.133	“Romanian” language: romanian.mld	499
13.134	“Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	500
13.135	“Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	500

13.136 “Russian” language: russian.mld	501
13.137 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	501
13.138 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	502
13.139 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	503
13.140 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	504
13.141 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	505
13.142 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	505
13.143 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	506
13.144 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	506
13.145 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	507
13.146 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	507
13.147 “Samin” language: samin.mld	508
13.148 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	508
13.149 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	509
13.150 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	509
13.151 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	510
13.152 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	510
13.153 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	511
13.154 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	512
13.155 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	512
13.156 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	513
13.157 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	513
13.158 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	514
13.159 “Thai” language: thai.mld and thai.mlo	514
13.160 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	515
13.161 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	515
13.162 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	515
13.163 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	516
13.164 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	516
13.165 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	516
13.166 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	516
13.167 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	517
13.168 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	518
13.169 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	518
13.170 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	518
13.171 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	519
13.172 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	519
13.173 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld	520
13.174 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld	520
13.175 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld	521

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details. It is loaded either via a package option¹ in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package, either via the command:

```
\mtcselectlanguage           \mtcselectlanguage{<language>}
```

¹ It can also be a global option for the document.

Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

<code>\ptctitle</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code>	<code>\stctitle</code>
<code>\plftitle</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code>	<code>\slftitle</code>
<code>\pltttitle</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code>	<code>\sltttitle</code>

Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the babel package [37, 38, 39, 56], the CJK system [167, 168], the H_AT_EX system [146, in korean], the Antomega system [150], the ArabT_EX [154, 155], BangT_EX [202], Devanāgarī for T_EX [204], ethiop [29], FarsiT_EX [109]², guarani [32], malayalam [3] et omal [4], MonT_EX [97, 100], or ArmT_EX [101] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.



But for some oriental languages³, the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file⁴, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via `\mtcselectlanguage`.

`filecontents` To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses `filecontents` environments to generate the .mlo files.



Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language.mld* file (and of the *language.mlo* file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document.log* file. But the presence of the *english.mld* file is mandatory, because english is the default language.

13.1 “Acadian” language: acadian.mld

The acadian language⁵ is just french, so we load the french.mld file (see section 13.58 on page 461):

```
5207 <{*acadian}
5208 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5209 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5210 </acadian>
```

² By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiT_EX Project Group. See the FarsiT_EX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

³ Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangŭl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

⁴ The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

⁵ Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

13.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

The “acadien” language⁶ is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 461):

```
5211 ⟨*acadien⟩
5212 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
5213 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5214 ⟨/acadien⟩
```

13.3 “Afrikaan” language: `afrikaan.mld`

The titles for the “afrikaan” language⁷ come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 40]:

```
5215 ⟨*afrikaan⟩
5216 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
5217 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
5218 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
5219 %% Braams, Johannes
5220 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
5221 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
5222 \def\plttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
5223 %%
5224 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
5225 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
5226 \def\mlttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
5227 %%
5228 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
5229 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
5230 \def\slttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
5231 ⟨/afrikaan⟩
```

13.4 “Afrikaans” language: `afrikaans.mld`

The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load `afrikaan.mld` (see section 13.3):

```
5232 ⟨*afrikaans⟩
5233 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
5234 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
5235 ⟨/afrikaans⟩
```

⁶ Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

⁷ Spoken in South Africa, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.42 on page 453.

13.5 “Albanian” language: `albanian.mld`

The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the `albanian.dtx` file (with a contribution of Adi ZAIMI) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 83]:

```
5236 (*albanian)
5237 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5238 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
5239 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
5240 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zami1st at yahoo.com).
5241 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
5242 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
5243 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
5244 %%
5245 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
5246 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
5247 \def\mlttitle{Tabelat}%
5248 %%
5249 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
5250 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
5251 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
5252 \end{albanian}
```

13.6 “American” language: `american.mld`

The “american” language is just like “english”⁸, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```
5253 (*american)
5254 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
5255 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5256 \end{american}
```

13.7 “Arab” language: `arab.mld`

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the `ArabTeX` package [154, 155] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```
5257 (*arab)
5258 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
5259 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty
```

⁸ It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

5260 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
5261 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
5262 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
5263 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
5264 \def\pltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}
5265 %%
5266 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
5267 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
5268 \def\mltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
5269 %%
5270 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
5271 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
5272 \def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
5273 </arab>

```

13.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the Arab \TeX package [154, 155] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

5274 <*arab2>
5275 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
5276 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
5277 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
5278 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
5279 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\a@tok}%
5280 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
5281 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
5282 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
5283 %%
5284 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
5285 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
5286 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
5287 %%
5288 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
5289 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
5290 \def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
5291 </arab2>

```

13.9 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the A rabi package [135] (by Youssef JABRI), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

5292 (*arabi)
5293 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]
5294 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty.
5295 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package,
5296 %% Youssef Jabri)
5297 %% (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
5298 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
5299 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5300 \def\plttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5301 %%
5302 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
5303 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5304 \def\mlttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5305 %%
5306 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
5307 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5308 \def\slttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5309 %%
5310 </arabi>

```

13.10 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.7 on page 436):

```

5311 (*arabic)
5312 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
5313 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
5314 </arabic>

```

13.11 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the ArmT_EX package [101] (by Serguei D’ACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vardan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

5315 (*armenian)
5316 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
5317 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty
5318 %% from ArmTeX
5319 %% Sergei D’Achian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
5320 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
5321 \def\plftitle{Patkernerikank}%
5322 \def\plttitle{Aghyusaknerikank}%
5323 %%

```

```
5324 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
5325 \def\mlftitle{Patkernerı cank}%
5326 \def\mltttitle{Aghyusaknerı cank}%
5327 %%
5328 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
5329 \def\slftitle{Patkernerı cank}%
5330 \def\sltttitle{Aghyusaknerı cank}%
5331 </armenian>
```

13.12 “Australian” language: `australian.mld`

The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```
5332 <#australian>
5333 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
5334 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5335 </australian>
```

13.13 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.65 on page 465):

```
5336 <#austrian>
5337 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5338 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
5339 </austrian>
```

13.14 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on the next page):

```
5340 <#bahasa>
5341 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
5342 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
5343 </bahasa>
```

13.15 “Bahasai” language: `bahasai.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language⁹ (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 64]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.16. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.14 on the page before, 13.87 on page 478, and 13.88 on page 478.

```

5344 (*bahasai)
5345 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
5346 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
5347 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
5348 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
5349 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
5350 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
5351 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
5352 %%
5353 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
5354 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
5355 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
5356 %%
5357 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
5358 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
5359 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
5360 \end{bahasai}

```

13.16 “Bahasam” language: `bahasam.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)¹⁰ are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 65]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.14 on the preceding page. For other names for this language, see sections 13.111 on page 489 and 13.117 on page 492.

```

5361 (*bahasam)
5362 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]
5363 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty
5364 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
5365 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry and Margolis, Bob
5366 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
5367 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
5368 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
5369 %%
5370 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%

```

⁹ Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the Indonesian variant.

¹⁰ Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the Malaysian variant.


```

5371 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
5372 \def\mltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
5373 %%
5374 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
5375 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
5376 \def\sltttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
5377 </bahasam>

```

13.17 “Bangla” language: bangla.mld

The titles for the “bangla” language¹¹ are taken from the BangTeX package [202] (by Palash Baran PAL); they need specific fonts.

```

5378 < *bangla >
5379 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
5380 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
5381 %% from BangTeX
5382 %% Needs specific fonts
5383 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}%
5384 \def\plftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
5385 \def\pltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
5386 %%
5387 \def\mtctitle{suu\*c*i}%
5388 \def\mlftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
5389 \def\mltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
5390 %%
5391 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
5392 \def\slftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
5393 \def\sltttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
5394 </bangla >

```

13.18 “Basque” language: basque.mld

The titles for the “basque” language¹² are taken from the basque.dtx file in the babel package [38, 39, 45], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

```

5395 < *basque >
5396 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
5397 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
5398 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
5399 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
5400 %% Needs special fonts

```

¹¹ Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India.

¹² Spoken in the Basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.

```

5401 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
5402 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
5403 \def\pltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
5404 %%
5405 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
5406 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
5407 \def\mltttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
5408 %%
5409 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
5410 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
5411 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
5412 </basque>

```

13.19 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

The titles for the “bicig” language¹³ are taken from the MonTeX package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 492, 13.20, and 13.21 on the following page.

```

5413 <(*bicig)
5414 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
5415 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
5416 %% needs mongol fonts
5417 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
5418 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
5419 \def\pltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
5420 %%
5421 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
5422 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
5423 \def\mltttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
5424 %%
5425 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
5426 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaalt}}%
5427 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"in jagsaaalt}}%
5428 </bicig>

```

13.20 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language¹⁴ are taken from the MonTeX package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 492, 13.19, and 13.21 on the following page.

¹³The `bicig` is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur. See also section 13.161 on page 515.

¹⁴The `bicig`, or `uighur`, is a written form of the mongolian language, `bicig2` is a variant. See also section 13.162 on page 515.

```

5429 (*bicig2)
5430 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
5431 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty
5432 %% needs mongol fonts
5433 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
5434 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5435 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5436 %%
5437 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
5438 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5439 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5440 %%
5441 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
5442 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5443 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5444 </bicig2>

```

13.21 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language¹⁵ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 492, 13.19 on the page before and 13.20 on the preceding page.

```

5445 (*bicig3)
5446 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
5447 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty
5448 %% needs mongol fonts
5449 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
5450 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5451 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5452 %%
5453 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
5454 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5455 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5456 %%
5457 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
5458 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
5459 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
5460 </bicig3>

```

¹⁵The `bicig`, or `uighur`, is a written form of the mongolian language, `bicig3` is a variant. See also section 13.163 on page 516.

13.22 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language¹⁶ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 492 and 13.116 on page 492.

The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to the effect that all the ambiguities of Mongolian are eliminated.

```

5461 (*bithe)
5462 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
5463 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty
5464 %% needs mongol fonts
5465 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
5466 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
5467 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
5468 %%
5469 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
5470 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
5471 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
5472 %%
5473 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
5474 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
5475 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
5476 </bithe)

```

13.23 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language¹⁷ are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (for portugese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 74]:

```

5477 (*brazil)
5478 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
5479 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty
5480 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
5481 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
5482 \def\ptctitle{Sum\`ario}%
5483 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5484 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
5485 %%
5486 \def\mtctitle{Sum\`ario}%
5487 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5488 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
5489 %%

```

¹⁶The *bithe* is a written form of the *manju* variant of the mongolian language.

¹⁷It is the portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. These titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations. See section 13.132 on page 499.

```

5490 \def\stctitle{Sum\ 'ario}%
5491 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
5492 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
5493 </brazil>

```

13.24 “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.23 on the preceding page):

```

5494 <(*brazilian)
5495 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
5496 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
5497 </brazilian)

```

13.25 “Breton” language: breton.mld

The titles for the “breton” language¹⁸ are taken from `breton.dtx` file in the `babel` package [38, 39, 75]:

```

5498 <(*breton)
5499 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
5500 %% Breton titles for minitoc.sty
5501 %% from breton.dtx (babel)
5502 %% Rolland, Christian
5503 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
5504 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\ 'u}%
5505 \def\plttitle{Listenn an taolenno\ 'u}%
5506 %%
5507 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
5508 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\ 'u}%
5509 \def\mlttitle{Listenn an taolenno\ 'u}%
5510 %%
5511 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
5512 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\ 'u}%
5513 \def\slttitle{Listenn an taolenno\ 'u}%
5514 </breton)

```

¹⁸Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany.

13.26 “British” language: `british.mld`

The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```
5515 ⟨*british⟩
5516 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
5517 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5518 ⟨/british⟩
```

13.27 “Bulgarian” language: `bulgarian.mld`

The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [38, 39, 50]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.28 on the following page.

```
5519 ⟨*bulgarian⟩
5520 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5521 %% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
5522 %% from bulgarian.dtx (babel)
5523 %% Boshnakov, Georgi
5524 %% Needs special fonts
5525 \def\ptctitle{%
5526   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5527 \def\plftitle{%
5528   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
5529     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5530 \def\plttitle{%
5531   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
5532     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5533 %%
5534 \def\mtctitle{%
5535   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5536 \def\mlftitle{%
5537   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
5538     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5539 \def\mlttitle{%
5540   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
5541     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5542 %%
5543 \def\stctitle{%
5544   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5545 \def\slftitle{%
5546   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
5547     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
5548 \def\slttitle{%
5549   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
5550     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
```

```
5551 </bulgarian>
```

13.28 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG) of the `babel` package [38, 39, 66, 160]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.27 on the page before.

```
5552 (*bulgarianb)
5553 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
5554 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
5555 %% From russianb.dtx
5556 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
5557 \def\ptctitle{%
5558   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5559 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
5560   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
5561 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
5562   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5563 %%
5564 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
5565   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5566 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
5567   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
5568 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
5569   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5570 %%
5571 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
5572   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
5573 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
5574   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
5575 \def\sltttitle{% Tablici
5576   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
5577 </bulgarianb>
```

13.29 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

The titles for the “buryat” language¹⁹ are taken from the `MonTeX` package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.118 on page 492.

```
5578 (*buryat)
5579 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
5580 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty
5581 %% Needs special fonts
```

¹⁹Spoken in some regions of Mongolia, in the Buryat republic, near Lake Baikal.

```

5582 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5583 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5584 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5585 %%
5586 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5587 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5588 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5589 %%
5590 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
5591 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5592 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5593 </buryat>

```

13.30 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.29 on the page before) are taken from the `MONTEX` package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.118 on page 492.

```

5594 <{*buryat2}
5595 \ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
5596 %% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
5597 %% Needs special fonts
5598 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5599 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5600 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5601 %%
5602 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5603 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5604 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5605 %%
5606 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
5607 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
5608 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
5609 </buryat2>

```

13.31 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld



The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```

5610 <{*canadian}
5611 \ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5612 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
5613 </canadian>

```


13.32 “Canadien” language: `canadien.mld`



The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58 on page 461):

```
5614 <*canadien>
5615 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
5616 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5617 </canadien>
```

13.33 “Castillan” language: `castillan.mld`

The “castillan” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.153 on page 511):

```
5618 <*castillan>
5619 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
5620 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
5621 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
5622 </castillan>
```

13.34 “Castillian” language: `castillian.mld`

The “castillian” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. “Castillian” is the english name for “castillan”. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.153 on page 511):

```
5623 <*castillian>
5624 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
5625 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
5626 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
5627 </castillian>
```

13.35 “Catalan” language: `catalan.mld`

The titles for the “catalan” language²⁰ are taken from the `catalan.dtx` file (adapted from spanish by GONVcal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 47]:

²⁰Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona.

```

5628 (*catalan)
5629 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
5630 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty
5631 %% from catalan.dtx (babel)
5632 %% Badenes, Goncal
5633 \def\ptctitle{\`Index}%
5634 \def\plftitle{\`Index de figures}%
5635 \def\plttitle{\`Index de taules}%
5636 %%
5637 \def\mtctitle{\`Index}%
5638 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5639 \def\mlttitle{Taules}%
5640 %%
5641 \def\stctitle{\`Index}%
5642 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5643 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
5644 </catalan>

```

13.36 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.37.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```

5645 (*chinese1)
5646 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
5647 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
5648 %%   for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5649 %%   created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5650 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5651 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
5652 %%
5653 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
5654 </chinese1>

```

13.37 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo

The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.36.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `chinese2.mlo`.

```

5655 <{*chinese2}
5656 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
5657 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
5658 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
5659 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
5660 %%
5661 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
5662 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
5663 %%
5664 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
5665 </chinese2>

```

13.38 “Croatian” language: `croatian.mld`

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file (by Alan Paić) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 71]:

```

5666 <{*croatian}
5667 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5668 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
5669 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)
5670 %% Pai\{c}, Alan
5671 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5672 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
5673 \def\pltttitle{Tablice}%
5674 %%
5675 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5676 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
5677 \def\mltttitle{Tablice}%
5678 %%
5679 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
5680 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
5681 \def\sltttitle{Tablice}%
5682 </croatian>

```

13.39 “Czech” language: `czech.mld`

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Milos LOKAJCEK) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 69]:

```

5683 <{*czech}
5684 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2006/01/13]

```

```

5685%% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
5686%% from czech.dtx (babel)
5687%% Lokajicek, Milos
5688%% Warning: defines \w as a ring accent
5689\def\w#1{\accent'27 #1}
5690\def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
5691\def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5692\def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5693%%
5694\def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
5695\def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5696\def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5697%%
5698\def\stctitle{Obsah}%
5699\def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
5700\def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
5701</czech>

```

13.40 “Danish” language: danish.mld

The titles for the “danish” language are taken from the danish.dtx file (by Henning LARSEN) in the babel package [38, 39, 67]:

```

5702<*(danish)
5703\ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
5704%% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
5705%% from danish.dtx (babel)
5706%% Larsen, Henning
5707\def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5708\def\plftitle{Figurer}%
5709\def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
5710%%
5711\def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5712\def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
5713\def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
5714%%
5715\def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
5716\def\slftitle{Figurer}%
5717\def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
5718</danish>

```

13.41 “Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the devanagari.sty file (by Anshuman PANDEY, CV RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [204] (Devanāgarī).

See also section 13.83 on page 476. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.ramovar.org>.

```

5719 (*devanagari)
5720 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]
5721 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles for minitoc.sty
5722 %% from devanagari.sty by
5723 %% Pandey, Anshuman
5724 %% Radhakrishnan, CV
5725 %% Wagner, Zden\v{e}k
5726 %% Smith, John
5727 %% Carmody, Kevin
5728 %% Mahoney, Richard
5729 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
5730 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
5731 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
5732 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
5733 %%
5734 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
5735 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
5736 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
5737 %%
5738 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
5739 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
5740 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
5741 </devanagari>

```

13.42 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language are taken from the dutch.dtx file (by Johannes BRAAMS) in the babel package [38, 39, 40]:

```

5742 (*dutch)
5743 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
5744 % Dutch titles for minitoc.sty
5745 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
5746 %% Braams, Johannes
5747 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5748 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5749 \def\pltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5750 %%
5751 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5752 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5753 \def\mltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5754 %%
5755 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
5756 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
5757 \def\sltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
5758 </dutch>

```

13.43 “English” language: `english.mld`



The titles for the “english” language are taken from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 41]. *The presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*

See also sections 13.6 on page 436, 13.12 on page 439, 13.26 on page 446, 13.31 on page 448, 13.120 on page 493, 13.164 on page 516, and 13.168 on page 518.

```
5759 (*english)
5760 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
5761 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5762 %% from english.dtx (babel)
5763 %% Braams, Johannes
5764 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
5765 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
5766 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables}%
5767 %%
5768 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5769 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5770 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5771 %%
5772 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5773 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5774 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
5775 </english>
```

13.44 “English1” language: `english1.mld`

The titles for the “english1” language come from the `english.dtx` file (by Johannes BRAAMS) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 41], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```
5776 (*english1)
5777 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
5778 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5779 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes
5780 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
5781 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5782   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
5783   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5784 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5785   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
5786   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5787 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
5788   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
5789   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
5790 %%
5791 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%

```

```

5792 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5793 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5794 %%
5795 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5796 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5797 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
5798 </english1>

```

13.45 “English2” language: english2.mld

The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the english.dtx file (by Johannes BRAAMS) in the babel package [38, 39, 41], with some adaptations for the titles at the part level.

```

5799 <{*english2}>
5800 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
5801 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
5802 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes
5803 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
5804 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
5805 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
5806 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
5807 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
5808 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
5809 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
5810 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or
5811 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
5812 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
5813 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5814 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5815 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
5816 %%
5817 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
5818 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
5819 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
5820 %%
5821 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
5822 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
5823 \def\sltttitle{Tables}%
5824 </english2>

```

13.46 “Esperant” language: esperant.mld

The titles for the “esperant” (espéranto) language are taken from the esperanto.dtx file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the babel package [38, 39, 76]. The esperanto

(artificial) language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF²¹ (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```

5825 <*esperant>
5826 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]
5827 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty
5828 %% from esperanto.dtx (babel)
5829 %% Ruiz-Altaba, Marti and Knappen. Jörg
5830 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
5831 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5832 \def\pltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5833 %%
5834 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
5835 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5836 \def\mltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5837 %%
5838 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
5839 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
5840 \def\sltttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
5841 </esperant>

```

13.47 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.46 on the page before):

```

5842 <*esperanto>
5843 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
5844 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
5845 </esperanto>

```

13.48 “Estonian” language: `estonian.mld`

The titles for the “estonian” language are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 77]:

```

5846 <*estonian>
5847 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
5848 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty
5849 %% from estonian.dtx (babel)
5850 %% Saar, Enn
5851 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
5852 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%

```

²¹ See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.


```

5853 \def\pltttitle{Tabelid}%
5854 %%
5855 \def\mtcttitle{Sisukord}%
5856 \def\mlfttitle{Joonised}%
5857 \def\mltttitle{Tabelid}%
5858 %%
5859 \def\stcttitle{Sisukord}%
5860 \def\slfttitle{Joonised}%
5861 \def\sltttitle{Tabelid}%
5862 </estonian>

```

13.49 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the ethiop package [29]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the following page.

```

5863 (*ethiopia)
5864 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
5865 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
5866 %% Needs special fonts
5867 \def\ptcttitle{yezate}%
5868 \def\plfttitle{%
5869   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5870   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5871 \def\pltttitle{%
5872   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5873   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5874 %%
5875 \def\mtcttitle{yezate}%
5876 \def\mlfttitle{%
5877   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5878   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5879 \def\mltttitle{%
5880   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5881   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5882 %%
5883 \def\stcttitle{yezate}%
5884 \def\slfttitle{%
5885   ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
5886   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5887 \def\sltttitle{%
5888   yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
5889   mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
5890 </ethiopia>

```

13.50 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.49 on the page before). See also section 13.49 on the preceding page.

```
5891 (*ethiopian)
5892 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
5893 %% Needs ethopian special fonts
5894 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
5895 </ethiopian>
```

13.51 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [29]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.49 on the page before.

```
5896 (*ethiopian2)
5897 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
5898 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
5899 %% Needs special fonts
5900 \def\ptctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
5901 \def\plftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d
5902   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
5903 \def\plttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
5904   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
5905 %%
5906 \def\mtctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
5907 \def\mlftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d
5908   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
5909 \def\mlttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
5910   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
5911 %%
5912 \def\stctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
5913 \def\slftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d
5914   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
5915 \def\slttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
5916   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
5917 </ethiopian2>
```

13.52 “Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX [109] system²², by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.53.

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

```
5918 <farsi1>
5919 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
5920 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
5921 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
5922 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
5923 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
5924 %% http://www.farsitex.org
5925 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
5926 </farsi1>
```

13.53 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system [109]²², by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.52.

The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

```
5927 <farsi2>
5928 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
5929 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
5930 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
5931 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
5932 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
5933 %% http://www.farsitex.org
5934 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
5935 </farsi2>
```

²²By Mohammad Ghodsi (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

13.54 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.ldf` file in the `Arabi` system[135], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

5936 ⟨*farsi3⟩
5937 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]
5938 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system
5939 %% by Youssef Jabri.
5940 \def\ptctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
5941 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5942 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5943 %%
5944 \def\mtctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
5945 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5946 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5947 %%
5948 \def\stctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
5949 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
5950 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
5951 ⟨/farsi3⟩

```

13.55 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 62]. See also section 13.56 on the following page.

```

5952 ⟨*finnish⟩
5953 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
5954 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
5955 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
5956 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
5957 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5958 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
5959 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
5960 %%
5961 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5962 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
5963 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
5964 %%
5965 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
5966 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
5967 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
5968 ⟨/finnish⟩

```

13.56 “Finnish2” language: `finnish2.mld`

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 62]. See also section 13.55 on the page before.

```

5969 (*finnish2)
5970 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]
5971 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
5972 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
5973 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
5974 \def\ptctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
5975 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
5976 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
5977 %%
5978 \def\mtctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
5979 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
5980 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
5981 %%
5982 \def\stctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
5983 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
5984 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
5985 </finnish2>

```

13.57 “Français” language: `français.mld`

The “français”²³ language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58):

```

5986 (*français)
5987 \ProvidesFile{français.mld}[2004/12/14]
5988 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
5989 </français>

```

13.58 “French” language: `french.mld`

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 57]. See also sections 13.1 on page 434, 13.2 on page 435, 13.32 on page 449, 13.57, 13.61 on page 463, 13.62 on page 464, and 13.63 on page 464.

```

5990 (*french)
5991 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]

```

²³The right spelling is “français”, but I did not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

```

5992 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
5993 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
5994 %% Flipo, Daniel
5995 \def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
5996 \def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
5997 \def\pltttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
5998 %%
5999 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
6000 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
6001 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
6002 %%
6003 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
6004 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
6005 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
6006 </french>

```

13.59 “French1” language: french1.mld

The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` (by Daniel FLIPO) file in the `babel` package [38, 39, 57], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

6007 (*french1)
6008 \ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
6009 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
6010 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
6011 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
6012 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
6013   Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
6014   \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
6015 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
6016   Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
6017   \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
6018 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
6019   Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
6020   \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
6021 %%
6022 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
6023 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
6024 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
6025 %%
6026 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
6027 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
6028 \def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
6029 </french1>

```

13.60 “French2” language: french2.mld

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the babel package [38, 39, 57], with some adaptations for the part-level titles²⁴. See also section 9.5.6 on page 248, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the mtc-2nd.tex example file in section 4.2 on page 88.

```

6030 (*french2)
6031 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]
6032 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
6033 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
6034 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFDD)
6035 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
6036 \or premi\‘ere partie\or
6037 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\‘eme\fi} partie\or
6038 troisi\‘eme partie\or quatri\‘eme partie\or cinqui\‘eme partie\or
6039 sixi\‘eme partie\or septi\‘eme partie\or huiti\‘eme partie\or
6040 neuvi\‘eme partie\or dixi\‘eme partie\or onzi\‘eme partie\or
6041 douzi\‘eme partie\or treizi\‘eme partie\or quatorzi\‘eme partie\or
6042 quinzi\‘eme partie\or seizi\‘eme partie\or dix-septi\‘eme partie\or
6043 dix-huiti\‘eme partie\or dix-neuvi\‘eme partie\or
6044 vingti\‘eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}
6045 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
6046 Sommaire \else
6047 Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
6048 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
6049 Liste des figures\else
6050 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
6051 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
6052 Liste des tableaux\else
6053 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
6054 %%
6055 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
6056 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
6057 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
6058 %%
6059 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
6060 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
6061 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
6062 </french2>

```

13.61 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 461.

²⁴This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

```

6063 (*frenchb)
6064 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
6065 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
6066 </frenchb>

```

13.62 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 461.

```

6067 (*frenchle)
6068 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
6069 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
6070 </frenchle>

```

13.63 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 461.

```

6071 (*frenchpro)
6072 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
6073 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
6074 </frenchpro>

```

13.64 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language²⁵ are taken from the galician.dtx file (by Manuel CARRIBA) in the babel package [38, 39, 53]:

```

6075 (*galician)
6076 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2006/01/13]
6077 %% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
6078 %% from galician.dtx (babel)
6079 %% Carriba, Manuel
6080 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
6081 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6082 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
6083 %%
6084 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%

```

²⁵Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.


```

6085 \def\mlfttitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6086 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
6087 %%
6088 \def\stctitle{\'Indice Xeral}%
6089 \def\slfttitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
6090 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de T\'aboas}%
6091 </galician>

```

13.65 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [38, 39]. See also the section 13.13 on page 439.

```

6092 (*german)
6093 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
6094 %% German titles for minitoc.sty
6095 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
6096 \def\plfttitle{Figuren}%
6097 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
6098 %%
6099 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
6100 \def\mlfttitle{Figuren}%
6101 \def\mltttitle{Tabellen}%
6102 %%
6103 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
6104 \def\slfttitle{Figuren}%
6105 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
6106 </german>

```

13.66 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “germanb” language is a variant for the “german” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file (by Johannes BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the babel package [38, 39, 72]:

```

6107 (*germanb)
6108 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
6109 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
6110 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
6111 %% Braams, Johannes and Raichle, Bernd
6112 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
6113 \def\plfttitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6114 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6115 %%
6116 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
6117 \def\mlfttitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6118 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%

```

```

6119 %%
6120 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6121 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
6122 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
6123 </germanb>

```

13.67 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “`germanb2`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language, with short titles. See also section 13.66 on the preceding page. The titles are taken from the `babel` package [38, 39]:

```

6124 <(*germanb2)>
6125 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6126 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
6127 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
6128 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
6129 \def\pltttitle{Tabellen}%
6130 %%
6131 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6132 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
6133 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6134 %%
6135 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6136 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
6137 \def\sltttitle{Tabellen}%
6138 </germanb2>

```

13.68 “Greek” language: `greek.mld`

The titles for the “`greek`” language (modern greek) are taken from the `greek.dtx` file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 80]. Greek fonts are required.

```

6139 <(*greek)>
6140 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
6141 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
6142 %% from greek.dtx (babel)
6143 %% Syropoulos, Apostolos
6144 %% Needs greek fonts.
6145 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
6146 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
6147 \def\pltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
6148 %%
6149 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
6150 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
6151 \def\mltttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
6152 %%

```

```
6153 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
6154 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
6155 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
6156 </greek>
```

13.69 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

The titles for the “greek-mono” language²⁶ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [150]:

```
6157 <*greek – mono>
6158 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
6159 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
6160 %% Needs Omega
6161 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6162 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6163 %%
6164 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
6165 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
6166 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
6167 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
6168 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6169 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
6170 ^03bd}}%
6171 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
6172 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6173 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
6174 %%
6175 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
6176 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
6177 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
6178 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
6179 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6180 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
6181 ^03bd}}%
6182 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
6183 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6184 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
6185 %%
6186 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
6187 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
6188 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
6189 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
6190 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6191 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
6192 ^03bd}}%
6193 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
6194 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
```

²⁶Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

```
6195 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^03ac^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
6196 </greek – mono>
```

13.70 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language²⁷ are taken from the file omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [150]:

```
6197 <*greek – polydemo>
6198 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
6199 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
6200 %% Needs Omega
6201 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6202 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6203 %%
6204 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
6205 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
6206 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
6207 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
6208 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
6209 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
6210 ^^^^03bd}}%
6211 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
6212 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
6213 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
6214 %%
6215 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
6216 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
6217 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
6218 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
6219 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
6220 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
6221 ^^^^03bd}}%
6222 \def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
6223 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
6224 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
6225 %%
6226 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
6227 {^^^^03a0^^^^03b5^^^^03c1^^^^03b9^^^^03b5^^^^03c7^^^^1f79^^^^03bc%
6228 ^^^^03b5^^^^03bd^^^^03b1}}%
6229 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
6230 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
6231 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c3^^^^03c7^^^^03b7^^^^03bc^^^^1f71^^^^03c4^^^^03c9%
6232 ^^^^03bd}}%
6233 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
6234 {^^^^039a^^^^03b1^^^^03c4^^^^1f71^^^^03bb^^^^03bf^^^^03b3^^^^03bf%
6235 ^^^^03c2 ^^^^03c0^^^^03b9^^^^03bd^^^^1f71^^^^03ba^^^^03c9^^^^03bd}}%
6236 </greek – polydemo>
```

²⁷ Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

13.71 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language²⁸ are taken from the omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. Kryokov and Dmitry Ivanov) in the Antomega project [150]:

```

6237 (*greek – polykatha)
6238 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
6239 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
6240 %% Needs Omega
6241 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6242 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6243 %%
6244 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
6245 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
6246  ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
6247 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
6248 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6249  ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
6250  ^03bd}}%
6251 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
6252 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6253  ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
6254 %%
6255 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
6256 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
6257  ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
6258 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
6259 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6260  ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
6261  ^03bd}}%
6262 \def\mlttitle{\localgreek%
6263 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6264  ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
6265 %%
6266 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
6267 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
6268  ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
6269 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
6270 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6271  ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
6272  ^03bd}}%
6273 \def\slttitle{\localgreek%
6274 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
6275  ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
6276 /greek – polykatha)

```

²⁸Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios Korais, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsolete by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

13.72 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [32]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```
6277 <*guarani>
6278 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
6279 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty
6280 %% from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
6281 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
6282 %%
6283 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
6284 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
6285 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
6286 %%
6287 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice general}%
6288 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
6289 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
6290 %%
6291 \def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
6292 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
6293 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
6294 </guarani>
```

13.73 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [241]. See [124, page 150] and [205].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file `hangul.cap` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74 on the next page, 13.75 on the following page, 13.76 on page 472, 13.77 on page 473, 13.78 on page 473, 13.79 on page 474, and 13.80 on page 474.

The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul1.mlo`.

```
6295 <*hangul1>
6296 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
6297 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
6298 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6299 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6300 %%
```

```

6301%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6302%% Hangul captions
6303%% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
6304%%
6305 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
6306 </hangul1>

```

13.74 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file `hangul.cpx` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the preceding page, 13.75, 13.76 on the following page, 13.77 on page 473, 13.78 on page 473, 13.79 on page 474, and 13.80 on page 474.

The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul2.mlo`.

```

6307 <*(hangul2)
6308 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
6309%% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
6310%% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6311%% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6312%%
6313%% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6314%% Hangul captions
6315%% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
6316%% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
6317%%
6318 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
6319 </hangul2>

```

13.75 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file `hangul2.cap` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the page before, 13.74, 13.76 on the next page, 13.77 on page 473, 13.78 on page 473, 13.79 on page 474, and 13.80 on page 474.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul3.mlo`.

```

6320 (*hangul3)
6321 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
6322 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
6323 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6324 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6325 %%
6326 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6327 %% Hangul captions set 2
6328 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
6329 %%
6330 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
6331 </hangul3>

```

13.76 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 470, 13.74 on the page before, 13.75 on the preceding page, 13.77 on the next page, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on page 474, and 13.80 on page 474.

The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```

6332 (*hangul4)
6333 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
6334 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
6335 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6336 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6337 %%
6338 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6339 %% Hangul captions set 2, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
6340 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
6341 %%
6342 \mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
6343 </hangul4>

```


13.77 “Hangul-u8” language: `hangul-u8.mld` and `hangul-u8.mlo`

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the H_LA_TE_X system [146, in korean] by KOAUNghi Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.73 on page 470, 13.74 on page 471, 13.75 on page 471, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.78, 13.79 on the following page, and 13.80 on the next page. See [124, page 150] and [205].

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```
6344 (*hangul - u8)
6345 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
6346 %% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX package
6347 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
6348 %%
6349 %% Hangul captions for Lambda
6350 %%
6351 \mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
6352 </hangul - u8>
```

13.78 “Hanja1” language: `hanja1.mld` and `hanja1.mlo`

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 470, 13.74 on page 471, 13.75 on page 471, 13.76 on the page before, 13.77, 13.79 on the next page, and 13.80 on the following page.

The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```
6353 (*hanja1)
6354 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
6355 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package
6356 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6357 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6358 %%
6359 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6360 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
6361 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
6362 %%
6363 \mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
```

6364 </hanja1>

13.79 “Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file hanja.cap of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 470, 13.74 on page 471, 13.75 on page 471, 13.76 on page 472, 13.77 on the page before, 13.78 on the preceding page, and 13.80.

The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja2.mlo.

```
6365 (*hanja2)
6366 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
6367 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
6368 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6369 %% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
6370 %%
6371 %% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
6372 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
6373 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
6374 %%
6375 \mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
6376 </hanja2>
```

13.80 “Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda* Λ) are taken from the file u8hanja.tex of the H_LA_TE_X system [146, in korean] by KOAUNGHU Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.73 on page 470, 13.74 on page 471, 13.75 on page 471, 13.76 on page 472, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.78 on the page before, and 13.79. See [124, page 150] and [205].

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja-u8.mlo.

```
6377 (*hanja - u8)
6378 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
6379 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
6380 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
6381 %%
6382 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
```

```

6383 %%
6384 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
6385 </hanja - u8>

```

13.81 “Hebrew” language: `hebrew.mld`

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [154, 155], which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 13.82.

```

6386 <{*hebrew}>
6387 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
6388 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty
6389 %% Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
6390 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
6391             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
6392 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
6393             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
6394 \def\plttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
6395             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
6396 %%
6397 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
6398             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
6399 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
6400             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
6401 \def\mlttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
6402             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
6403 %%
6404 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
6405             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
6406 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
6407             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
6408 \def\slttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
6409             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
6410 </hebrew>

```

13.82 “Hebrew2” language: `hebrew2.mld`

The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris Lavva) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 68], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.81.

```

6411 <{*hebrew2}>
6412 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]
6413 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package.
6414 %% Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)

```

```

6415 %% Need hebrew fonts.
6416 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
6417   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
6418   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6419 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{%
6420   \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
6421   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6422 \def\pltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
6423   \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
6424   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
6425 %%
6426 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{%
6427   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
6428   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6429 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{%
6430   \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
6431   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6432 \def\mltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
6433   \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
6434   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
6435 %%
6436 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{%
6437   \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\ %
6438   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6439 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{%
6440   \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\ %
6441   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
6442 \def\sltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
6443   \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmeme\hebtav\
6444   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
6445 </hebrew2>

```

13.83 “Hindi” language: hindi.mld

The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load devanagari.mld (see section 13.41 on page 452):

```

6446 < *hindi>
6447 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]
6448 \mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
6449 </hindi>

```

13.84 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by Anshuman PANDEY, CV RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY,

Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [204] (Devanāgarī) after conversion. See also section 13.41 on page 452. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.ramovar.org>.

```

6450 ⟨*hindi – modern⟩
6451 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]
6452 %% Hindi modern titles for minitoc.sty
6453 %% from captions.dn in ‘‘Devanagari for TeX’’ by
6454 %% Pandey, Anshuman
6455 %% Radhakrishnan, CV
6456 %% Wagner, Zden\v{e}k
6457 %% Smith, John
6458 %% Carmody, Kevin
6459 %% Mahoney, Richard
6460 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
6461 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
6462 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
6463 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
6464 %%
6465 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
6466 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
6467 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
6468 %%
6469 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
6470 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
6471 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
6472 ⟨/hindi – modern⟩

```

13.85 “Hungarian” language: `hungarian.mld`

The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load `magyar.mld`. See section 13.108 on page 488.

```

6473 ⟨*hungarian⟩
6474 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
6475 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
6476 ⟨/hungarian⟩

```

13.86 “Icelandic” language: `icelandic.mld`

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the `icelandic.dtx` file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 46]:

```

6477 ⟨*icelandic⟩
6478 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]

```

```

6479 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty
6480 %% from icelandic.dtx (babel)
6481 %% Árnason, Einar
6482 %% need inputenc with 8-bits encoding
6483 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
6484 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
6485 \def\pltttitle{Töfluskrá}%
6486 %%
6487 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
6488 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
6489 \def\mltttitle{Töfluskrá}%
6490 %%
6491 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
6492 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
6493 \def\sltttitle{Töfluskrá}%
6494 </icelandic>

```

13.87 “Indon” language: `indon.mld`

The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 440):

```

6495 <(*indon)
6496 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
6497 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
6498 </indon>

```

13.88 “Indonesian” language: `indonesian.mld`

The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 440):

```

6499 <(*indonesian)
6500 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6501 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
6502 </indonesian>

```

13.89 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 63]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some

normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English's than to neolatin languages. The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it. You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>

```
6503 (*interlingua)
6504 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
6505 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty
6506 %% from interlingua.dtx (babel)
6507 %% Kleiweg, Peter
6508 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
6509 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
6510 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
6511 %%
6512 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
6513 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
6514 \def\mltttitle{Tabellas}%
6515 %%
6516 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
6517 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
6518 \def\sltttitle{Tabellas}%
6519 </interlingua>
```

13.90 “Irish” language: irish.mld

The titles for the “irish” language come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 42]:

```
6520 (*irish)
6521 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
6522 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty
6523 %% from irish.dtx (babel)
6524 %% Braams, Johannes and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
6525 \def\ptctitle{Cl'ar 'Abhair}%
6526 \def\plftitle{L'ear'aid'\{i}}%
6527 \def\pltttitle{T'abla'\{i}}%
6528 %%
6529 \def\mtctitle{Cl'ar 'Abhair}%
6530 \def\mlftitle{L'ear'aid'\{i}}%
6531 \def\mltttitle{T'abla'\{i}}%
6532 %%
6533 \def\stctitle{Cl'ar 'Abhair}%
6534 \def\slftitle{L'ear'aid'\{i}}%
6535 \def\sltttitle{T'abla'\{i}}%
6536 </irish>
```

13.91 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 55]. See also section 13.92.

```

6537 (*italian)
6538 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6539 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty
6540 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
6541 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
6542 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
6543 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
6544 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6545 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6546 %%
6547 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
6548 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6549 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6550 %%
6551 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
6552 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6553 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6554 </italian>

```

13.92 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.91.

```

6555 (*italian2)
6556 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6557 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
6558 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
6559 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
6560 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
6561 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
6562 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6563 \def\pltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6564 %%
6565 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
6566 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6567 \def\mltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6568 %%
6569 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
6570 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
6571 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
6572 </italian2>

```


13.93 “Japanese” language: `japanese.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

They are several variants for the `japanese` titles. The titles for a first variant of the “`japanese`” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA²⁹. See also sections 13.94, 13.95 on the next page, 13.96 on the following page, 13.97 on page 483, and 13.98 on page 483. The titles for the “`japanese`” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```
6573 (*japanese)
6574 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
6575 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
6576 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
6577 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
6578 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
6579 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
6580 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
6581 </japanese>
```

13.94 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.mld` and `japanese2.mlo`

The titles for the “`japanese2`” language (`japanese`, second variant) are taken from file `JIS.cap` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93, 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on the next page, 13.97 on page 483, and 13.98 on page 483. The titles for the “`japanese2`” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

```
6582 (*japanese2)
6583 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6584 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
6585 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6586 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6587 %%
6588 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6589 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
6590 %% encoding: EUC
6591 %%
6592 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
6593 </japanese2>
```

²⁹ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.95 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld` and `japanese3.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the preceding page, 13.94 on the page before, 13.96, 13.97 on the next page, and 13.98 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```
6594 (*japanese3)
6595 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
6596 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
6597 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6598 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6599 %%
6600 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6601 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
6602 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
6603 %%
6604 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
6605 \</japanese3>
```

13.96 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld` and `japanese4.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the page before, 13.94 on the preceding page, 13.95, 13.97 on the following page, and 13.97 on the next page. The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```
6606 (*japanese4)
6607 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
6608 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
6609 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6610 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6611 %%
6612 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6613 %% Japanese captions
6614 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS
6615 %%
6616 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
6617 \</japanese4>
```

13.97 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.mld` and `japanese5.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [167, 168] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on page 481, 13.94 on page 481, 13.95 on the preceding page, 13.96 on the page before, and 13.98. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```

6618 (*japanese5)
6619 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
6620 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
6621 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
6622 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
6623 %%
6624 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
6625 %% Japanese captions
6626 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
6627 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
6628 %%
6629 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
6630 </japanese5>

```

13.98 “Japanese6” language: `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA³⁰. See also sections 13.93 on page 481, 13.94 on page 481, 13.95 on the page before, 13.96 on the preceding page, and 13.97. The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese6.mlo`.

```

6631 (*japanese6)
6632 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]
6633 %% Japanese6 titles for minitoc.sty
6634 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
6635 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
6636 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
6637 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
6638 \mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
6639 </japanese6>

```

³⁰ <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

13.99 “Kannada” language: `kannada.mld`

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state of India. The titles are taken from the `kanlel.sty` package file from the KannadateX project³¹ by C.S. YOGANANDA. Specific fonts are required.

```

6640 (*kannada)
6641 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2006/02/14]
6642 %% from kanlel.sty of KannadateX (C.S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in)
6643 %%
6644 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}
6645 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6646 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6647 %%
6648 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}
6649 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6650 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6651 %%
6652 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}
6653 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
6654 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
6655 </kannada>

```

13.100 “Khalka” language: `khalkha.mld`

“khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load `xalx.mld` (see sections 13.173 on page 520, 13.174 on page 520, and 13.175 on page 521):

```

6656 (*khalkha)
6657 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
6658 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
6659 </khalkha>

```

13.101 “Latin” language: `latin.mld`

The titles for the “latin” language are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 48]. See also section 13.102 on the next page.

```

6660 (*latin)
6661 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
6662 %% Latin titles for minitoc.sty

```

³¹ <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadateX>

```

6663 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
6664 %% Beccari, Claudio
6665 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
6666 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6667 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6668 %%
6669 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
6670 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6671 \def\mlttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6672 %%
6673 \def\stctitle{Index}%
6674 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6675 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6676 </latin>

```

13.102 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof KONRAD ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [38, 39, 48], but abbreviated. See also section 13.101 on the preceding page.

```

6677 <(*latin2)
6678 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6679 %% Latin titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
6680 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
6681 %% Beccari, Claudio
6682 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
6683 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
6684 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
6685 %%
6686 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
6687 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
6688 \def\mlttitle{Tabulae}%
6689 %%
6690 \def\stctitle{Index}%
6691 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
6692 \def\slttitle{Tabulae}%
6693 </latin2>

```

13.103 “Latvian” language: latvian.mld

The titles for the “latvian” language³² come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [150]. See also section 13.104 on the next page.

³²Note that “latvian” is the original name for “Letton”.

```

6694 (*latvian)
6695 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
6696 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project)
6697 %% Needs Omega
6698 %% Alexej M. Kryokov
6699 %% Dmitry Ivanov
6700 %%
6701 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
6702 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
6703 \def\pltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6704 %%
6705 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
6706 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
6707 \def\mltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6708 %%
6709 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturs}}%
6710 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
6711 \def\sltttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
6712 \end{latvian}

```

13.104 “Letton” language: `letton.mld`

The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.103 on the preceding page.

```

6713 (*letton)
6714 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
6715 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
6716 \end{letton}

```

13.105 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file³³ (by Sigitas Tolusis) for the `babel` package [38, 39]:

```

6717 (*lithuanian)
6718 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
6719 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty
6720 %% from lithuanian.ldf
6721 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip
6722 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
6723 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
6724 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6725 \def\pltttitle{Lentel\protect\c u s}%

```

³³Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip>.

```

6726 %%
6727 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
6728 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6729 \def\mltttitle{Lentel\protect\.es}%
6730 %%
6731 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
6732 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
6733 \def\slttitle{Lentel\protect\.es}%
6734 </lithuanian>

```

13.106 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language³⁴ are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 81]. See also section 13.167 on page 517. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.107).

```

6735 (*lowsorbian)
6736 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
6737 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6738 %% from lSORbian.dtx (babel)
6739 %% Werner, Eduard
6740 \def\ptctitle{Wop\`simje\`se}%
6741 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6742 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6743 %%
6744 \def\mtctitle{Wop\`simje\`se}%
6745 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6746 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6747 %%
6748 \def\stctitle{Wop\`simje\`se}%
6749 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
6750 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
6751 </lowsorbian>

```

13.107 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowsorbian”, so we just load `lowersorbian.mld`. See section 13.106.

```

6752 (*lsorbian)
6753 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]

```

³⁴Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```

6754 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
6755 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
6756 %% Werner, Eduard
6757 \selectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
6758 </lsorbian>

```

13.108 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the babel package [38, 39, 49]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.85 on page 477). See also sections 13.109 and 13.110 on the following page for variants (it seems that magyar.dtx might have evolved).

```

6759 (*magyar)
6760 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
6761 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
6762 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6763 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6764 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
6765 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6766 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6767 %%
6768 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
6769 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6770 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6771 %%
6772 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
6773 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak}%
6774 \def\sltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok}%
6775 </magyar>

```

13.109 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the babel package [38, 39]. See also sections 13.108 and 13.110 on the following page.

```

6776 (*magyar2)
6777 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
6778 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
6779 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6780 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6781 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
6782 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
6783 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
6784 %%

```



```

6785 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
6786 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak list\'aja}%
6787 \def\mltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok list\'aja}%
6788 %%
6789 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
6790 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak list\'aja}%
6791 \def\sltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok list\'aja}%
6792 </magyar2>

```

13.110 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the magyar.dtx file in the babel package [38, 39, 49]. See also sections 13.108 on the page before and 13.109 on the preceding page.

```

6793 (*magyar3)
6794 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
6795 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
6796 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
6797 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
6798 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
6799 \def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
6800 \def\pltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
6801 %%
6802 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
6803 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
6804 \def\mltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
6805 %%
6806 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\'ek}%
6807 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak jegyz\'eke}%
6808 \def\sltttitle{T\'abl\'azatok jegyz\'eke}%
6809 </magyar3>

```

13.111 “Malay” language: malay.mld

The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.16 on page 440):

```

6810 (*malay)
6811 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
6812 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
6813 </malay>

```

13.112 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language³⁵, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [3] by Alex AJ. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.114 on the following page and 13.115 on the next page.

```

6814 (*malayalam – keli)
6815 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
6816 %%
6817 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
6818 %%
6819 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
6820 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
6821 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
6822 %%
6823 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
6824 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
6825 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
6826 %%
6827 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
6828 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
6829 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
6830 \</malayalam – keli)

```

13.113 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo

This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* (Λ) (the version of \LaTeX for Omega) via the omal package [4] (by Alex AJ) of the Malayalam-Omega project³⁶. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the omal package.

```

6831 (*malayalam – omega)
6832 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2006/02/13]
6833 % from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)
6834 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}
6835 %
6836 \</malayalam – omega)

```

³⁵The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.

³⁶<http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

13.114 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3] by Alex AJ. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.112 on the preceding page and 13.115.

```

6837 (*malayalam – rachana)
6838 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]
6839 %%
6840 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
6841 %%
6842 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6843 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6844 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6845 %%
6846 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6847 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6848 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6849 %%
6850 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6851 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{\C<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6852 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{\F<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6853 (/malayalam – rachana)

```

13.115 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3] by Alex AJ. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.112 on the preceding page and 13.114.

```

6854 (*malayalam – rachana2)
6855 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
6856 %%
6857 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
6858 %%
6859 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6860 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6861 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6862 %%
6863 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6864 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
6865 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
6866 %%
6867 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
6868 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%

```

```
6869 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
6870 </malayalam – rachana2>
```

13.116 “Manju” language: manju.mld

The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load bithe.mld (see section 13.22 on page 444):

```
6871 <(*manju)
6872 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
6873 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
6874 </manju>
```

13.117 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load bahasam.mld (see section 13.16 on page 440):

```
6875 <(*meyalu)
6876 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
6877 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
6878 </meyalu>
```

13.118 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the MonTeX package [97, 100]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.19 on page 442, 13.20 on page 442, 13.21 on page 443, 13.22 on page 444, 13.29 on page 447, 13.30 on page 448, 13.173 on page 520, 13.174 on page 520, and 13.175 on page 521.

```
6879 <(*mongol)
6880 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
6881 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
6882 %% Needs mongol fonts
6883 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6884 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi" in jagsaalt}}%
6885 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti" in jagsaalt}}%
6886 %%
6887 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
6888 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi" in jagsaalt}}%
6889 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti" in jagsaalt}}%
```

```

6890 %%
6891 \def\stctitle{\mnr Garqig}}%
6892 \def\slftitle{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
6893 \def\slttitle{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
6894 </mongol>

```

13.119 “Naustrian” language: `naustrian.mld`

The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language), so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.122 on the next page.

```

6895 (*naustrian)
6896 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
6897 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
6898 </naustrian>

```

13.120 “Newzealand” language: `newzealand.mld`

The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```

6899 (*newzealand)
6900 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
6901 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
6902 </newzealand>

```

13.121 “Ngerman” language: `ngerman.mld`

The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language³⁷, so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.122 on the next page.

```

6903 (*ngerman)
6904 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
6905 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
6906 </ngerman>

```

³⁷A revised version of the `germanb` variant of the german language.

13.122 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb” language³⁸ are taken from the file `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 73]. See also sections 13.119 on the preceding page, and 13.121 on the page before.

```

6907 (*ngermanb)
6908 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
6909 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty
6910 %% from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
6911 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
6912 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
6913 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6914 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6915 %%
6916 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6917 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6918 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6919 %%
6920 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6921 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
6922 \def\slttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
6923 </ngermanb>

```

13.123 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language³⁹ are taken from the `babel` package [38, 39, 73]. See also section 13.122.

```

6924 (*ngermanb2)
6925 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6926 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
6927 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
6928 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
6929 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
6930 %%
6931 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
6932 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
6933 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
6934 %%
6935 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
6936 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
6937 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
6938 </ngermanb2>

```

³⁸ A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

³⁹ A variant of the german language, with revised spelling and short titles.

13.124 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the norsk.dtx file (by Johannes BRAAMS, Haavard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the babel package [38, 39, 43], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.126 on the next page.

```

6939 <*norsk>
6940 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
6941 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty
6942 %% from noesk.dtx (babel)
6943 %% Braams, Johannes and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
6944 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
6945 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6946 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
6947 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
6948 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
6949 %%
6950 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
6951 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
6952 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
6953 %%
6954 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
6955 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
6956 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
6957 </norsk>

```

13.125 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the babel package [38, 39, 43], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 13.124.

```

6958 <*norsk2>
6959 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
6960 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
6961 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6962 \def\ptctitle{Innhold}%
6963 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
6964 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
6965 %%
6966 \def\mtctitle{Innhold}%
6967 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
6968 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
6969 %%
6970 \def\stctitle{Innhold}%
6971 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
6972 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%

```

```
6973 </norsk2>
```

13.126 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language⁴⁰ are taken from norsk.dtx file (by Johannes BRAAMS, Haavard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the babel package [38, 39, 43], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.124 on the page before.

```
6974 (*nynorsk)
6975 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
6976 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
6977 %% from norsk.dtx (babel)
6978 %% Braams, Johannes and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
6979 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
6980 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6981 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
6982 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
6983 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
6984 %%
6985 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
6986 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
6987 \def\pltttitle{Tabellar}%
6988 %%
6989 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
6990 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
6991 \def\slttitle{Tabellar}%
6992 </nynorsk>
```

13.127 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.126.

```
6993 (*nynorsk2)
6994 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
6995 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
6996 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
6997 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
6998 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
6999 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
7000 %%
```

⁴⁰Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialect spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.


```

7001 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
7002 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
7003 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
7004 %%
7005 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
7006 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
7007 \def\sltttitle{Tabelliste}%
7008 </nynorsk2>

```

13.128 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the `polish.dtx` file (by Elmar SCHALUECK and Michael JANICH) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 78]. See also sections 13.129 and 13.130 on the following page.

```

7009 <{*polish}>
7010 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
7011 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty
7012 %% from polish.dtx (babel)
7013 %% Schalueck, Elmar and Janich, Michael
7014 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
7015 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7016 \def\pltttitle{Spis tablic}%
7017 %%
7018 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
7019 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7020 \def\mltttitle{Spis tablic}%
7021 %%
7022 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
7023 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7024 \def\sltttitle{Spis tablic}%
7025 </polish>

```

13.129 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

The titles for the “polish2” language⁴¹ are taken from the `omega-polish.ldf` (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [150]. See also sections 13.128 and 13.130 on the following page.

```

7026 <{*polish2}>
7027 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
7028 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
7029 %% Needs Omega
7030 %% Alexej M. Kryokov

```

⁴¹“Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

```

7031 %% Dmitry Ivanov
7032 %%
7033 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
7034 \def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
7035 \def\pltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
7036 %%
7037 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
7038 \def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
7039 \def\mltttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
7040 %%
7041 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
7042 \def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
7043 \def\slttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
7044 </polish2>

```

13.130 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI) in the \LaTeX package [199, 247]. See also sections 13.128 on the page before and 13.129 on the preceding page.

```

7045 (*polski)
7046 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
7047 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
7048 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
7049 %% Mariusz Olko, Marcin Woli\'nski.
7050 %%
7051 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
7052 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7053 \def\pltttitle{Spis tabel}%
7054 %%
7055 \def\mtctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7056 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7057 \def\mltttitle{Spis tabel}%
7058 %%
7059 \def\stctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7060 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
7061 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
7062 </polski>

```

13.131 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.132 on the next page), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```

7063 (*portuges)
7064 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
7065 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
7066 \portuges)

```

13.132 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 74].

See also section 13.23 on page 444, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```

7067 (*portuguese)
7068 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
7069 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
7070 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
7071 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
7072 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'}udo}%
7073 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
7074 \def\pltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
7075 %%
7076 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'}udo}%
7077 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
7078 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
7079 %%
7080 \def\stctitle{Conte\'}udo}%
7081 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
7082 \def\sltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
7083 \portuguese)

```

13.133 “Romanian” language: romanian.mld

The titles for the “romanian” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Horst UMSTATTER and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 60].

```

7084 (*romanian)
7085 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
7086 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
7087 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
7088 %% Horst, Umstatter and Juhasz, Robert
7089 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
7090 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
7091 \def\pltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
7092 %%

```

```

7093 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
7094 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
7095 \def\mltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
7096 %%
7097 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
7098 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
7099 \def\sltttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
7100 </romanian>

```

13.134 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUŞ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the Romanian \TeX package [217]. See also sections 13.133 on the page before and 13.135. Alas, Romanian \TeX is not compatible with the babel package [38, 39].

```

7101 (*romanian2)
7102 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]
7103 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
7104 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
7105 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
7106 %% Bernd Raichle
7107 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
7108 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
7109 \def\pltttitle{Lista de tabele}%
7110 %%
7111 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
7112 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
7113 \def\mltttitle{Lista de tabele}%
7114 %%
7115 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
7116 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
7117 \def\sltttitle{Lista de tabele}%
7118 </romanian2>

```

13.135 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUŞ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the Romanian \TeX package [217]. See also sections 13.133 on the page before and 13.134. Alas, Romanian \TeX is not compatible with the babel package [38, 39].

```

7119 (*romanian3)
7120 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]
7121 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
7122 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
7123 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)

```

```

7124%% Bernd Raichle
7125\def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
7126\def\plttitle{Indice de figuri}%
7127\def\plttitle{Tabele}%
7128%%
7129\def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
7130\def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
7131\def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
7132%%
7133\def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
7134\def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
7135\def\slttitle{Tabele}%
7136</romanian3>

```

13.136 “Russian” language: `russian.mld`

The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the babel package [38, 39]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```

7137<(*russian)
7138\ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
7139%% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
7140\def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
7141\def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
7142\def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
7143%%
7144\def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
7145\def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
7146\def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
7147%%
7148\def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
7149\def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
7150\def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
7151</russian>

```

13.137 “Russian2m” language: `russian2m.mld`

The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russian2m.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [150]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.136.

```

7152<(*russian2m)
7153\ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
7154%% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
7155%% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts

```

```

7156%% Alexej M. Kryokov
7157%% Dmitry Ivanov
7158%%
7159\def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
7160 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
7161  ^0438^0435}}%
7162\def\plftitle{\localrussian%
7163 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a  ^0438^043b%
7164  ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
7165  ^0439}}%
7166\def\plttitle{\localrussian%
7167 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a  ^0442^0430%
7168  ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
7169%%
7170\def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
7171 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
7172  ^0438^0435}}%
7173\def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
7174 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a  ^0438^043b%
7175  ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
7176  ^0439}}%
7177\def\mlttitle{\localrussian%
7178 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a  ^0442^0430%
7179  ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
7180%%
7181\def\stctitle{\localrussian%
7182 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
7183  ^0438^0435}}%
7184\def\slftitle{\localrussian%
7185 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a  ^0438^043b%
7186  ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
7187  ^0439}}%
7188\def\slttitle{\localrussian%
7189 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a  ^0442^0430%
7190  ^0431^043b^0438^0446}}%
7191</russian2m)

```

13.138 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the omega-russian.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYOKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [150]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.136 on the preceding page.

```

7192(*russian2o)
7193\ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
7194%% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
7195%% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
7196%% Alexej M. Kryokov
7197%% Dmitry Ivanov

```

```

7198 %%
7199 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
7200 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
7201  ^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
7202 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
7203 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0438%
7204  ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446%
7205  ^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
7206 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
7207 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0442%
7208  ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
7209 %%
7210 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
7211 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
7212  ^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
7213 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
7214 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0438%
7215  ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446%
7216  ^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
7217 \def\mlttitle{\localrussian%
7218 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0442%
7219  ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
7220 %%
7221 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
7222 {^^^^041e^^^^0433^^^^043b^^^^0430^^^^0432^^^^043b^^^^0435^^^^043d%
7223  ^^^^0456^^^^0435}}%
7224 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
7225 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0438%
7226  ^^^^043b^^^^043b^^^^044e^^^^0441^^^^0442^^^^0440^^^^0430^^^^0446%
7227  ^^^^0456^^^^0439}}%
7228 \def\slttitle{\localrussian%
7229 {^^^^0421^^^^043f^^^^0438^^^^0441^^^^043e^^^^043a^^^^044a  ^^^^0442%
7230  ^^^^0430^^^^0431^^^^043b^^^^0438^^^^0446^^^^044a}}%
7231 </russian2o>

```

13.139 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH et Werner LEMBERG) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 66, 160]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.136 on page 501. The parttoc title varies depending if chapters are defined or not by the document class.

```

7232 (*russianb)
7233 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
7234 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
7235 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
7236 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
7237 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
7238 \def\ptctitle{%

```

```

7239 {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
7240 \else
7241 \def\ptctitle{%
7242   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
7243 \fi
7244 \def\plftitle{%
7245   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
7246     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
7247 \def\plttitle{%
7248   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
7249     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
7250 %%
7251 \def\mtctitle{%
7252   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
7253 \def\mlftitle{%
7254   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
7255     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
7256 \def\mlttitle{%
7257   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
7258     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
7259 %%
7260 \def\stctitle{%
7261   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
7262 \def\slftitle{%
7263   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
7264     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
7265 \def\slttitle{%
7266   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
7267     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
7268 </russianb>

```

13.140 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [97, 100]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.136 on page 501.

```

7269 <*russianc>
7270 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
7271 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
7272 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
7273 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
7274 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7275 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7276 %%
7277 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7278 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7279 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7280 %%
7281 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%

```



```

7282 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7283 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7284 \langle/russianc>

```

13.141 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the russian.sty (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the cmcyralt package [36].

The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca.mlo.

```

7285 \langle*russian – cca>
7286 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
7287 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
7288 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
7289 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
7290 %% Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
7291 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
7292 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
7293 \langle/russian – cca>

```

13.142 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the cmcyralt.sty file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package [130].

The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-cca1.mlo.

```

7294 \langle*russian – cca1>
7295 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
7296 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
7297 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
7298 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
7299 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
7300 %% Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
7301 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
7302 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
7303 \langle/russian – cca1>

```

13.143 “Russian-lh” language: `russian-lh.mld` and `russian-lh.mlo`

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the `russian.sty` file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [194].

The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lh.mlo`.

```
7304 (*russian – lh)
7305 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
7306 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty
7307 %% From russian.sty in the LH package
7308 %% LH fonts in special encoding
7309 %% Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
7310 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
7311 </russian – lh>
```

13.144 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: `russian-lhcyralt.mld` and `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the `lhcyralt.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the `lhcyr` package [262].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
7312 (*russian – lhcyralt)
7313 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
7314 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
7315 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
7316 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
7317 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
7318 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
7319 </russian – lhcyralt>
```

13.145 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the lhcyrkoi.sty file (by Vadim V. ЗHYТНИКОВ) in the lhcyr package [262].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
7320 (*russian – lhcyrkoi)
7321 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
7322 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
7323 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
7324 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
7325 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
7326 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
7327 </russian – lhcyrkoi)
```

13.146 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrwin.sty file (by Vadim V. ЗHYТНИКОВ) in the lhcyr package [262].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrwin.mlo. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

```
7328 (*russian – lhcyrwin)
7329 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
7330 %% Russian-lhcyrwin titles for minitoc.sty
7331 %% From lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
7332 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
7333 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
7334 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
7335 </russian – lhcyrwin)
```

13.147 “Samin” language: `samin.mld`

The titles for the “samin” language⁴² come from the `samin.dtx` file (by Regnor JERNSLETTEN) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 61]. Specific fonts are required.

```

7336 (*samin)
7337 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
7338 %% North Sámi (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
7339 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
7340 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
7341 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
7342 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
7343 \def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
7344 %%
7345 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
7346 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
7347 \def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
7348 %%
7349 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
7350 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
7351 \def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
7352 </samin>

```

13.148 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` language [38, 39, 58]:

```

7353 (*scottish)
7354 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
7355 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty
7356 %% from scottish.dtx (babel)
7357 %% Grant, Fraser
7358 \def\ptctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
7359 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
7360 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%
7361 %%
7362 \def\mtctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
7363 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
7364 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%
7365 %%
7366 \def\stctitle{Cl\‘ar-obrach}%
7367 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
7368 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%

```

⁴²Several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sámi case. This note is copied and adapted from the `samin.dtx` file. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group.

```
7369 </scottish>
```

13.149 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 70]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.150.

```
7370 <{*serbian}
7371 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
7372 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty
7373 %% from serbian.dtx (babel)
7374 %% Muhamedagi\ '{c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
7375 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
7376 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
7377 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
7378 %%
7379 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
7380 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
7381 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
7382 %%
7383 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
7384 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
7385 \def\sltttitle{Tabele}%
7386 </serbian>
```

13.150 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld

The titles for the “serbianc” language⁴³ have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.149.

```
7387 <{*serbianc}
7388 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
7389 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
7390 %%
7391 %% Marko Èehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
7392 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
7393 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
7394 \def\ptctitle{%
7395   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
```

⁴³The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

7396 \def\plftitle{%
7397   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
7398 \def\plttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
7399 %%
7400 \def\mtctitle{%
7401   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrz\cyra\cyrje}}%
7402 \def\mlftitle{%
7403   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
7404 \def\mlttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
7405 %%
7406 \def\stctitle{%
7407   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrz\cyra\cyrje}}%
7408 \def\slftitle{%
7409   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
7410 \def\slttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
7411 </serbianc>

```

13.151 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the slovak.dtx file (by Jana CHLEBIKOVA and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the babel package [38, 39, 54]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

7412 <(*slovak)
7413 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
7414 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
7415 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
7416 %% Chlebikova, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
7417 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
7418 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
7419 \def\plttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
7420 %%
7421 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
7422 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
7423 \def\mlttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
7424 %%
7425 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
7426 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
7427 \def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
7428 </slovak>

```

13.152 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The titles for the “slovene” language come from the slovene.dtx file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the babel package [38, 39, 84]:

```

7429 (*slovene)
7430 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
7431 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty
7432 %% from slovene.dtx (babel)
7433 %% Zavrtnik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
7434 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
7435 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
7436 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
7437 %%
7438 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
7439 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
7440 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
7441 %%
7442 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
7443 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
7444 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
7445 </slovene>

```

13.153 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 31]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.33 on page 449). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.18 on page 441), “catalan” (section 13.35 on page 449), and “galician” (section 13.64 on page 464). Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.154 on the next page). And “spanish3” (see section 13.155 on the following page) is a version for the Antomega [150] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 13.156 on page 513).

```

7446 (*spanish)
7447 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]
7448 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7449 %% from spanish.dtx (babel)
7450 %% Bezos, Javier
7451 \expandafter\ifx\curname chapter\endcsname\relax
7452 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
7453 \else
7454 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
7455 \fi
7456 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7457 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7458 %%
7459 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
7460 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7461 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7462 %%
7463 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
7464 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%

```

```
7465 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7466 </spanish>
```

13.154 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the spanish.dtx file in the babel package [38, 39, 31], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.153 on the preceding page.

```
7467 <(*spanish2)
7468 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
7469 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7470 \def\ptcttitle{\'Indice General}%
7471 \def\plfttitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
7472 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
7473 %%
7474 \def\mtcttitle{Contenido}%
7475 \def\mlfttitle{Figuras}%
7476 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
7477 %%
7478 \def\stcttitle{Contenido}%
7479 \def\slfttitle{Figuras}%
7480 \def\sltttitle{Tablas}%
7481 </spanish2>
```

13.155 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the omega-spanish.ldf file of the Antomega project [150]. See section 13.153 on the page before.

```
7482 <(*spanish3)
7483 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]
7484 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7485 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the \pack{Antomega} project.
7486 \def\ptcttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
7487 \def\plfttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
7488 \def\pltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
7489 %%
7490 \def\mtcttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
7491 \def\mlfttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
7492 \def\mltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
7493 %%
7494 \def\stcttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice general}}%
7495 \def\slfttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
7496 \def\sltttitle{\localspanish{^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
7497 </spanish3>
```


13.156 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier Bezos) from the `CervanTeX` package [30]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.153 on page 511.

```

7498 (*spanish4)
7499 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
7500 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
7501 %% from spanish.dtx (CervanTeX)
7502 %% Bezos, Javier
7503 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
7504 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
7505 \else
7506 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
7507 \fi
7508 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
7509 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
7510 %%
7511 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
7512 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
7513 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
7514 %%
7515 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
7516 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
7517 \def\slttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
7518 </spanish4>

```

13.157 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld

The titles for the “swedish” language are taken from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michel RYNNING) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 59]. See also section 13.158 on the next page.

```

7519 (*swedish)
7520 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
7521 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty
7522 %% from swedish.dtx (babel)
7523 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
7524 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7525 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
7526 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
7527 %%
7528 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7529 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
7530 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
7531 %%
7532 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%

```

```

7533 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
7534 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
7535 </swedish>

```

13.158 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for swedish) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSON) in the $\text{S}\text{L}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ package [181]. See also section 13.157 on the preceding page.

```

7536 <{*swedish2}
7537 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
7538 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty
7539 %% from rapport.doc (slatex)
7540 %% Mattisson, Sven
7541 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7542 \def\plftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
7543 \def\pltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
7544 %%
7545 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7546 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
7547 \def\mltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
7548 %%
7549 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
7550 \def\slftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
7551 \def\sltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
7552 </swedish2>

```

13.159 “Thai” language: `thai.mld` and `thai.mlo`

The titles for the “thai” language come from the `thaicjk.ldf` file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [167, 168]. The `thailatex` package [183] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`.

```

7553 <{*thai}
7554 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
7555 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
7556 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
7557 %%
7558 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
7559 </thai>

```

13.160 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld

The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre MACKAY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 51]:

```

7560 (*turkish)
7561 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
7562 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
7563 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
7564 %% Burc, Mustafa
7565 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
7566 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
7567 \def\pltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
7568 %%
7569 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
7570 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
7571 \def\mltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
7572 %%
7573 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
7574 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
7575 \def\slttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
7576 \end{turkish}

```

13.161 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld

The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section 13.19 on page 442):

```

7577 (*uighur)
7578 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
7579 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
7580 \end{uighur}

```

13.162 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld

The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig2.mld` file (see section 13.20 on page 442):

```

7581 (*uighur2)
7582 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
7583 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
7584 \end{uighur2}

```

13.163 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld

The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 13.19 on page 442):

```
7585 <(*uighur3)
7586 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
7587 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
7588 </uighur3>
```

13.164 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld

The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```
7589 <(*UKenglish)
7590 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
7591 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7592 </UKenglish>
```

13.165 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld

The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section 13.166.

```
7593 <(*ukraineb)
7594 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2006/12/19]
7595 %% Ukrainian titles for minitoc.sty
7596 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
7597 %% Andrij Shvaika, Olga Lapko
7598 \selectlanguage{ukrainian}%
7599 </ukraineb>
```

13.166 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld

The titles for the “ukrainian” language come from the ukraineb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO and Andrij M. SHVAIKA) in the babel package [38, 39, 79]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is ukraineb (see section 13.165).

```

7600 (*ukrainian)
7601 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
7602 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
7603 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
7604 %% Shvaika, Andrij and Lapko, Olga
7605 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
7606 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
7607 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7608         \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
7609 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7610         \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsfts}}%
7611 %%
7612 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
7613 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7614         \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
7615 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7616         \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsfts}}%
7617 %%
7618 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
7619 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7620         \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
7621 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
7622         \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsfts}}%
7623 \</ukrainian>

```

13.167 “Uppersorbian” language: `uppersorbian.mld`

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language⁴⁴ are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [38, 39, 82]. See also section 13.106 on page 487. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.169 on the following page).

```

7624 (*uppersorbian)
7625 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
7626 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
7627 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
7628 %% Werner, Eduard
7629 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
7630 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
7631 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
7632 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
7633 %%
7634 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
7635 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
7636 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
7637 %%
7638 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%

```

⁴⁴Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or *wendisch*, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```
7639 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
7640 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
7641 \langle/upporsorbian\rangle
```

13.168 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”⁴⁵, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 454):

```
7642 \langle*USenglish\rangle
7643 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
7644 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7645 \langle/USenglish\rangle
```

13.169 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “upporsorbian”, so we just load `upporsorbian.mld`. See section 13.167 on the preceding page.

```
7646 \langle*usorbian\rangle
7647 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
7648 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
7649 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
7650 %% Werner, Eduard
7651 \selectlanguage{upporsorbian}%
7652 \langle/usorbian\rangle
```

13.170 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the `vietnam` package. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.171 on the next page.

```
7653 \langle*vietnam\rangle
7654 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
7655 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
7656 %%
7657 \def\ptctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7658 \def\plftitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\ ~e}%
7659 \def\pltttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\ h\ a}ng}%
```

⁴⁵It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

7660 %%
7661 \def\mtctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7662 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
7663 \def\mltttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
7664 %%
7665 \def\stctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
7666 \def\slftitle{Danh s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
7667 \def\slttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
7668 </vietnam>

```

13.171 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.170 on the preceding page.

```

7669 (*vietnamese)
7670 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
7671 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
7672 </vietnamese>

```

13.172 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language come from the welsh.dtx file (by Johannes BRAAMS) in the babel package [38, 39, 44]:

```

7673 (*welsh)
7674 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
7675 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty
7676 %% from welsh.dtx (babel)
7677 %% Braams, Johannes
7678 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
7679 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7680 \def\pltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7681 %%
7682 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
7683 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7684 \def\mltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7685 %%
7686 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
7687 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
7688 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
7689 </welsh>

```

13.173 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the MonTeX package [97, 100]. Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.100 on page 484, 13.174, and 13.175 on the next page.

```

7690 <*xalx>
7691 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
7692 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
7693 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7694 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7695 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7696 %%
7697 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7698 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7699 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7700 %%
7701 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
7702 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7703 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7704 </xalx>

```

13.174 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the MonTeX package [97, 100]. This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.173).

```

7705 <*xalx2>
7706 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
7707 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
7708 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
7709 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7710 \def\pltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7711 %%
7712 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
7713 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7714 \def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7715 %%
7716 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
7717 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
7718 \def\sltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
7719 </xalx2>

```


13.175 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the MonTeX package [97, 100]. This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.173 on the page before).

```
7720 <*xalx3>
7721 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
7722 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
7723 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7724 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7725 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7726 %%
7727 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7728 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7729 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7730 %%
7731 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
7732 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
7733 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
7734 </xalx3>
```

Part III

Complements

Contents of the Third Part

Bibliography	524
Changes History	546
Index	576

Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 524
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T_EX pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUDEMANCHE. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>.
- [3] Alex AJ. *Typesetting Malayalam Using L^AT_EX 2_ε*, April 2003. <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 41, 191, 434, 490, 491
- [4] Alex AJ. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω*, January 2006. <mailto:indicTeX@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/omega/latex/contrib/malayalam-omega/doc/manual-malayalam.pdf>. 41, 191, 434, 490
- [5] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006. Available from: http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html. <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>.
- [6] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: A_MS-L^AT_EX*. Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/instr-l.pdf>. 85
- [7] ANONYMOUS. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from: <http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>.
- [8] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICHAREAU. *L^AT_EX pour l'impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html.
- [9] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 49, 85, 214, 230, 249, 274, 277, 280, 375, 408

- [10] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 29, 85, 202, 204, 216, 230, 385, 391, 407
- [11] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 130, 211, 221
- [12] Donald ARSENEAU. *chapterbib.sty*, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 57, 196, 211
- [13] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T_EX Using the CJK B_ET_EX Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfT_EX under Windows* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.
- [14] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>.
- [15] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 94
- [16] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *bibtopic.sty*, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 57, 195
- [17] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [18]. 525
- [18] David BAUSUM. *T_EX: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [17]. 525
- [19] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour B_ET_EX 2_ε*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/JMPL.ps.gz>. 46
- [20] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/>. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>.
- [21] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>.
- [22] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online], July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. 58, 217

- [23] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T_EX: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>.
- [24] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>.
- [25] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encoding for L^AT_EX 2_ε multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>.
- [26] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in L^AT_EX 2_ε and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroT_EX*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>.
- [27] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 539
- [28] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>.
- [29] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 41, 200, 434, 457, 458
- [30] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, September 2003. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://filemon.mecanica.upm.es/CervanTeX/spanish.dtx>. 41, 513
- [31] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 511, 512
- [32] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T_EX*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 41, 203, 434, 470
- [33] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 85, 219, 384
- [34] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The ℵ (Aleph) Project*. *TUGboat*, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 215

- [35] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *TEX*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006.
- [36] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from:
<ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 505
- [37] Johannes BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with TEX's standard document styles*. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 434
- [38] Johannes BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with TEX's standard document classes*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 36, 41, 71, 194, 195, 200, 228, 434, 435, 436, 440, 441, 444, 445, 446, 447, 449, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 475, 477, 478, 479, 480, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 494, 495, 496, 497, 499, 500, 501, 503, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 515, 516, 517, 519
- [39] Johannes BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with TEX's standard document classes (user)*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 36, 41, 71, 194, 195, 200, 228, 434, 435, 436, 440, 441, 444, 445, 446, 447, 449, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 475, 477, 478, 479, 480, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 494, 495, 496, 497, 499, 500, 501, 503, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 515, 516, 517, 519
- [40] Johannes BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 435, 453
- [41] Johannes BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 454, 455
- [42] Johannes BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 479
- [43] Johannes BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 495, 496
- [44] Johannes BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 519
- [45] Johannes BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, and Julio SANCHEZ. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 441
- [46] Johannes BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 477

- [47] Johannes BRAAMS and Goncal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 449
- [48] Johannes BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 484, 485
- [49] Johannes BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 488, 489
- [50] Johannes BRAAMS and Georgi BOSHPANOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 446
- [51] Johannes BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 515
- [52] Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, Chris ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L^AT_EX 2_ε Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base>.
- [53] Johannes BRAAMS and Manuel CARRIBA. *Galician support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 464
- [54] Johannes BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBIKOVA, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 510
- [55] Johannes BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 480
- [56] Johannes BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L^AT_EX styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 434
- [57] Johannes BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *French support from the babel system*, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 461, 462, 463

- [58] Johannes BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 508
- [59] Johannes BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 513
- [60] Johannes BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 499
- [61] Johannes BRAAMS and Regnor JERNSLETTEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 508
- [62] Johannes BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 460, 461
- [63] Johannes BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 478
- [64] Johannes BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 440
- [65] Johannes BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 440
- [66] Johannes BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vsv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 447, 503
- [67] Johannes BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 452

- [68] Johannes BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 475
- [69] Johannes BRAAMS and Milos LOKAJICEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 451
- [70] Johannes BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 509
- [71] Johannes BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 451
- [72] Johannes BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 465
- [73] Johannes BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 494
- [74] Johannes BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm> or mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 444, 499
- [75] Johannes BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 445
- [76] Johannes BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 455
- [77] Johannes BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 456
- [78] Johannes BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALUECK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 497

- [79] Johannes BRAAMS and Andrij SHVAIKA. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 516
- [80] Johannes BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 466
- [81] Johannes BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/lorsbian.dtx>. 487
- [82] Johannes BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 517
- [83] Johannes BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/albaban.dtx>. 436
- [84] Johannes BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 510
- [85] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/jura/>. 85, 193, 204, 383
- [86] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>.
- [87] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The ϵ -TeX manual (version 2)*. The $\mathcal{N}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{S}$ Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf. 199
- [88] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L^AT_EX*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006.
- [89] David CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/xr.dtx>. 26, 221, 287
- [90] David CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 221
- [91] David CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 112

- [92] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts in Pdf \LaTeX* [online], September 2005. Available from: <http://ipe.comp.geom.org/pdftex.html>. <mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr>.
- [93] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make \LaTeX (te \LaTeX) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>. <mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 200
- [94] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/subfigure.pdf>. 31, 85, 132, 211, 219
- [95] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 50, 73, 85, 195, 233, 252
- [96] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 31, 85, 138, 195, 211, 218, 219, 366
- [97] Oliver CORFF. *Mon \TeX – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 41, 191, 208, 434, 442, 443, 444, 447, 448, 492, 504, 520, 521
- [98] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch.Pentaglot.html>. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 209
- [99] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 208
- [100] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *Mon \TeX – Mongolian for \LaTeX 2 ϵ , Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 41, 191, 208, 434, 442, 443, 444, 447, 448, 492, 504, 520, 521
- [101] Serguei D'ACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vardan AKOPIAN. *Arm \TeX : a System for Writing in Armenian with \TeX and \LaTeX (written in armenian)*, June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 41, 194, 434, 438
- [102] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 198
- [103] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *\LaTeX , Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003.
- [104] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 200

- [105] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx>. 19, 94, 218, 547
- [106] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, January 2007. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 94, 413
- [107] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The mini toc package*, January 2007. <mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 93, 413
- [108] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>.
- [109] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiT_EX and the Iranian T_EX Community*. *TUGboat*, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 41, 201, 434, 459
- [110] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from: <http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>.
- [111] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T_EX FAQ. Your 396 Questions Answered*, November 2005. Version 3.15a. Available from: <ftp://cam.ctan.org/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>.
- [112] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516, November 1990.
- [113] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with \LaTeX* , March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/tex/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>.
- [114] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>.
- [115] Chuck GENSCHE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>. 216
- [116] Helen GILHOOLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. Langues orientales. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. Translation and adaptation to french by Cécile DESPRAIRIES.
- [117] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURAI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S. SUTOR. *The \LaTeX Web Companion: Integrating T_EX, HTML, and XML*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June 1999. With Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE and Robert S. SUTOR.
- [118] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, June 2005. <http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 200, 203, 220, 233, 567

- [119] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph* **8**, July 2004. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 215
- [120] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from:
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>.
- [121] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004.
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 57, 195, 211
- [122] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004.
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 57, 211
- [123] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>.
 Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 206, 570
- [124] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, April 2004.
<mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>. Available from:
<http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X.desc.html>. 470, 473, 474
- [125] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of Ω : Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc.* *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 214
- [126] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. Ω , a $T_{E}X$ extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes. In Wlodek BZYL and PLATA-PRZECHLEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European $T_{E}X$ Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdnask, Poland, 1994. GUST. 214, 534
- [127] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from:
http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf.
- [128] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 39-40:139–166, May 2001.
 Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/cahiers/r25-cahiers39-40/131-yannis.html>.
- [129] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL. Ω , une extension de $T_{E}X$ incluant UNICODÉ et des filtres de type lex. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [126]. 214
- [130] Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994.
 Available from:
<ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 505
- [131] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005.
<mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 206, 253
- [132] Alan HOENIG. *T_EX Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. \LaTeX & $T_{E}X$ Strategies for Fonts, Graphics, & More.

- [133] Hiroya IKEDA. *p \LaTeX 2 ϵ* , September 2001. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 216
- [134] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in \LaTeX* ⁴⁶, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp. Available from: http://www.moiivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf.
- [135] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the \Arabi package. The Users Guide*, February 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user_guide.pdf. 36, 41, 194, 437, 460
- [136] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in \LaTeX 2 ϵ* . *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>.
- [137] Zhuhan JIANG. *The \vruler package*, October 1996. <mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>.
- [138] David M. JONES. *hangcaption.sty*, August 1992. <mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 50, 76, 85, 203, 234, 251
- [139] Ki-Joo KIM. *A Bib \TeX Guide via Examples*, April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/bibtex_guide.pdf.
- [140] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from \LaTeX* , April 2004. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.geocities.com/latex2pdf.pdf>.
- [141] Ki-Joo KIM. *\LaTeX Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from: http://www.geocities.com/latex_fonts.pdf.
- [142] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 34, 198
- [143] Donald E. KNUTH. *The \TeX book*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover \TeX 3, 1991. 196, 205, 219, 220, 535
- [144] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993. 198
- [145] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le \TeX book, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003. French translation of [143], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 205

⁴⁶This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [146] Un KOAUNGI. *H_{ET}EX: a $\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ package for the Korean language support*, April 2005. In Korean. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 191, 203, 434, 473, 474
- [147] Markus KOHM and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares $\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ 2_ε-Paket*, July 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 39, 47, 59, 71, 85, 134, 151, 191, 195, 204, 211, 218, 232, 233, 383, 565
- [148] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to $\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition, February 2004. 215
- [149] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in $\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ 2_ε*. *MAPS*, 11:52–54, 1999. <mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf.
- [150] Alexej M. KRYUKOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/omega/contrib/antomega/doc/omega/antomega/antomega.pdf>. 41, 194, 434, 467, 468, 469, 485, 497, 501, 502, 511, 512
- [151] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>.
- [152] Frank KÜSTER. *a_lnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/>. 50, 72, 85, 193, 233, 252
- [153] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de TEX et $\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$* . Masson, Paris, December 1997.
- [154] Klaus LAGALLY. *Arab TEX —Typetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European TEX Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. C_STUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf. 36, 41, 194, 434, 436, 437, 475
- [155] Klaus LAGALLY. *Arab TEX Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 36, 41, 194, 434, 436, 437, 475
- [156] Leslie LAMPORT. *$\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$: A Document Preparation System — User’s Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 54, 205
- [157] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for $\text{E}\text{T}\text{E}\text{X}$ version 2e*, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 191

- [158] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>.
- [159] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.recom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 29
- [160] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 36, 447, 503
- [161] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ldocstrip.pdf>.
- [162] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 29, 216, 407
- [163] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for authors*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 191
- [164] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 191
- [165] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX 2_ε font selection*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 191, 212, 270, 348, 352
- [166] L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *L^AT_EX font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 200, 212
- [167] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for L^AT_EX 2_ε — Multilingual support beyond babel*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>. 36, 41, 197, 218, 219, 434, 450, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 481, 482, 483, 514
- [168] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], August 2005. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 36, 41, 197, 218, 219, 434, 450, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 481, 482, 483, 514
- [169] Knut LICKERT. *L^AT_EX 2_ε for people in associations: minutes.sty*, January 2001. <mailto:knut@lickert.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/>. 208, 270, 373
- [170] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 50, 72, 85, 202, 233, 250
- [171] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001. <mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.dtx>. 29

- [172] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997. <mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 50, 72, 85, 218, 233, 251
- [173] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced L^AT_EX*, September 1994. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available from: http://www.moivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/latex-advanced.pdf.
- [174] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with L^AT_EX* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>.
- [175] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur L^AT_EX sans jamais oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from: <http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>.
- [176] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O’Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 191, 198, 538
- [177] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of “Understanding Japanese Information Processing”*, 1996. See [176]. Available from: <ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 191, 198
- [178] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O’Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999.
- [179] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. 57, 218
- [180] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of B_BT_EX)*, June 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf. 191, 195
- [181] Sven MATTISSON. *S^AT_EX: Swedish speaking version of L^AT_EX* [online], November 1989. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>. 41, 218, 514
- [182] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002. <mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 50, 67, 85, 125, 218, 232, 250
- [183] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Poonlap VEERATHANABUTR. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. <mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/thailatex/>. 219, 514
- [184] Frank MITTELBACH. *ε-T_EX: Guidelines for future T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>.

- [185] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts”* [27]. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>.
- [186] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000.
<mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 87, 112
- [187] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>.
- [188] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>.
- [189] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris ROWLEY. *The L^AT_EX Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004.
29, 138, 191, 206, 211, 216, 407
- [190] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris ROWLEY. *Der L^AT_EX-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005.
German version.
- [191] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris ROWLEY. *L^AT_EX Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005.
French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 561
- [192] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):199–205, September 1997.
Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>.
- [193] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002.
<mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>.
- [194] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from:
<http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 506
- [195] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *The KOMA-Script Bundle*, March 2005. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 39, 47, 59, 71, 85, 134, 151, 191, 195, 204, 211, 218, 232, 233, 383, 565
- [196] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfTeX, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT_EX'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 85
- [197] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à L^AT_EX 2_ε*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003.
French translation of [198] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 191

- [198] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to L^AT_EX 2_ε*, May 2006. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 191, 198, 205, 539
- [199] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *L^AT_EX 2_ε po polsku czyli P^AL^AT_EX (wersja 1.3.1)*, May 2003. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/platex/polski.dtx>. 41, 216, 498
- [200] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *L^AT_EX à 200%*. O'Reilly France, November 2006.
- [201] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your L^AT_EX Package*, November 2004.
<mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/dtxtut/dtxtut.pdf>.
- [202] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T_EX/L^AT_EX systems* [online], January 2001. Available from:
<http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. 41, 195, 434, 441
- [203] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):119–126, 1999.
<mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>.
- [204] Anshuman PANDEY. *Devanāgarī for T_EX*, May 2006.
<mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/deneric/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 41, 200, 203, 434, 452, 477
- [205] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, Paris, September 2003. 470, 473, 474
- [206] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibT_EXing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT_EX users. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 195
- [207] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibT_EX Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibT_EX's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 195
- [208] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [210].
- [209] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [210].
- [210] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from:
<http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 540
- [211] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>.

- [212] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in Ω* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from:
<http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega9papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 214
- [213] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in Ω* . In *Congrès EuroT_EX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 214
- [214] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 59, 69, 85, 203, 207, 221, 230, 249, 388
- [215] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in \LaTeX : a manual for hyperref*, February 2004. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 85, 113
- [216] Bernd RAICHLÉ, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem T_EX und DANTE*, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung T_EX e.V., September 2003. Version 72. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>.
- [217] Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLÉ. *Romanian T_EX*, October 1996.
<mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 500
- [218] Christian ROLLAND. *\LaTeX par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999.
<mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanadoo.fr>.
- [219] Chris ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from:
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-3/tb64rowl.pdf>.
- [220] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdocA4.pdf>. 34
- [221] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec \LaTeX 2_ε*, June 2001.
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>.
- [222] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005.
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>.
- [223] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption2 package*, November 2005.
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 196, 252
- [224] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption package*, January 2006.
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 196, 252

- [225] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, January 2006. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/anleitung.pdf>. 85
- [226] D. P. STORY. *Using L^AT_EX to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from: <http://www.math.uakron/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>.
- [227] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using L^AT_EX*. Springer, October 2002. Available from: <http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>.
- [228] Daniel TAUPIN[†]. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 50, 69, 85, 220, 232, 250
- [229] Hàn Thế THÀNH. *The pdfT_EX Program*. In *EuroT_EX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>.
- [230] Hàn Thế THÀNH. *Micro-typographic extensions to the T_EX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>.
- [231] Hàn Thế THÀNH, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, and Paweł JACKOWSKI. *The pdfT_EX user manual*, February 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/pdftex/manual/pdftex-a.pdf>.
- [232] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998. <mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/>. 50, 72, 85, 217, 233, 251
- [233] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de L^AT_EX 2_ε (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>.
- [234] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to L^AT_EX 2_ε usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>.
- [235] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS⁴⁷. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers T_EX*, June 2004. French translation of [236] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 219, 225
- [236] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A T_EX DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for T_EX Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 219, 225, 542

⁴⁷TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a T_EX Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).

- [237] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 112
- [238] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 200
- [239] Piet VAN OOSTRUM. *TeX Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>.
- [240] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec BibTeX*, 2003. Available from: http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz.
- [241] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting. 470
- [242] André VIOLANTE. *ETEX: Notions de base*. Dunod, January 2007.
- [243] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977.
- [244] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and L^AT_EX3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in ETeX*, March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 191
- [245] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *TeX in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T_EX*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>.
- [246] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *TeX in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
1. Basics.
 2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
 3. Tokens, Macros.
 4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T_EX). 254
- [247] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *PETEX i pdfPETEX*, May 2005. In polish, <mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>. Available from: <http://www.gust.org.pl/doc/poczatki/platex.html>. 41, 216, 498
- [248] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 217, 218
- [249] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003. <mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 54, 211

- [250] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 42, 61, 68,
75, 85, 112, 125, 210, 211, 220, 384
- [251] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 50, 67,
85, 193, 231, 387
- [252] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 60,
85, 194, 231, 383
- [253] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 47,
85, 89, 94, 98, 99, 136, 210, 211, 219, 230, 383
- [254] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>.
- [255] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 51, 69,
85, 196, 253
- [256] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>.
- [257] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 62, 69,
85, 207, 230, 232, 253, 262, 386
- [258] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 62,
69, 85, 207, 230, 232, 253, 262, 386
- [259] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>.
50, 72, 85, 217, 233, 251
- [260] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The iftmarg package*, March 2000.
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from:
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 204, 254

- [261] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L^AT_EX Cheat Sheet*, August 2006. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>, Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100. Available from: <http://www.dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/tx/tx.pdf>.
- [262] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/supported/lhcyr/>. <mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>. 506, 507

Changes History

★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
 - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
 - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (Dan JURAFSKY).

★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
 - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
 - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
 - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
 - All the layout of the minitoc is in the `\minitableofcontents` command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
 - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyes` is useless for the user, because it is implicit after the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
 - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
 - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
 - At least three passes (3) of L^AT_EX are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
 - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).

- Some mods added to work with xr (external references). xr version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ **version 02**

- 1993/07/05
 - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying \@caption.

※ **version 03**

- 1993/07/09
 - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ **version 04**

- 1993/07/09
 - Added \if@realch to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
 - The package mtcoff allows you to use a L^AT_EX document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

★ **version 05**

- 1993/07/13
 - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ **version 06**

- 1993/07/15
 - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete \caption stuff (filters are better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [105] package).

★ **version 07**

- 1993/07/22
 - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. \chapterend and \minitocno are suppressed, \minitoc, \dominitoc and \faketableofcontents added.

★ **version 08**

- 1993/07/29
 - Spacing adjustments.

★ **version 09**

- 1993/08/04

- Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ **version 10**

- 1993/08/05
 - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ **version 11**

- 1993/08/18
 - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ **version 12**

- 1993/12/16
 - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
 - Also added a `samepage` environment.
 - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ **version 13**

- 1993/12/17
 - Added `minilof` and `minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ **version 14**

- 1994/01/03
 - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
 - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
 - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
 - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
 - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ **version 15**

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.

- 1994/01/27
 - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- ★ **version 16**
 - 1994/02/02
 - Bug fixes (typos).
- ★ **version 17**
 - 1994/06/23
 - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and `siblings`.
 - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).
- ★ **version 18**
 - 1994/06/26
 - Make `minitoc` really compatible with $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$.
 - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the `babel` package (by Johannes BRAAMS).
- ★ **version 19**
 - 1994/08/16
 - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
 - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
 - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
 - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michel RYNNING).
 - Corrected appendix in articles.
- ★ **version 20**
 - 1994/08/25
 - Corrected spacing before and after `minitocs` and `siblings`.
 - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and `siblings`) to make `minitocs` with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.
 - Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
 - Corrected vertical spacing.
 - Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.
- ★ **version 21**
 - 1994/09/07

- Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

★ version 22

- 1994/10/10
 - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

★ version 23

- 1994/11/08
 - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
 - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
 - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
 - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and `co`. These commands are obsolete.
 - Removed appendix stuff.

★ version 24

- 1994/12/21
 - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

★ version 25

- 1996/09/13
 - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

★ version 26

- 1996/11/14
 - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
 - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

★ version 27

- 1996/12/20
 - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
 - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
 - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
 - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

★ version 28

- 1997/10/29

- Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
 - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
 - Added the `shorttext` package option.
 - Added *coffee* stuff.
 - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
 - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
 - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU: `{\let@dottedtocline@undottedtocline}}` should probably be `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}}` (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
 - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
 - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.
- ★ **version 29**
 - 1999/03/16
 - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
 - 1999/06/28
 - Added the armenian language (from `ArmTeX`).
 - 1999/07/23
 - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
 - 1999/07/29
 - Added the lithuanian language.
- ★ **version 30**
 - 1999/12/06
 - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
 - Corrected a bug in `\sltnam` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).
- ★ **version 31**
 - 2000/04/04
 - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.
- ★ **version 32**
 - 2000/08/08
 - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
 - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
 - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

★ version 33

- 2000/12/07
 - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
 - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

★ version 34

- 2000/12/13
 - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
 - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: `so`, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

★ version 35

- 2001/01/09
 - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
 - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
 - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
 - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
 - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
 - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
 - Added the `interlingua` language.

★ version 36

- 2002/02/11
 - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
 - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
 - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19

- Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
 - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
 - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
 - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.

※ **version 37**

- 2003/01/24
 - Version #37 dropped.

★ **version 38**

- 2003/01/24
 - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
 - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L^AT_EX).
 - Added `mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
 - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
 - Changed the test for empty titles.
 - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
 - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
 - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
 - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
 - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).
 - Corrected `secttocs`, at least.
- 2003/03/18
 - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.

★ **version 39**

- 2003/04/09
 - Modern font commands for compatibility with the `memoir` class.
 - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and `memoir` class.
- 2003/06/08

- Added `\@fileswfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the `notoccite` package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the `notoccite` package option (loads the `notoccite` package).
 - 2004/09/08
 - Added language options and `.mld` files for dialects: `canadian (english)`, `acadian`, `acadien`, `canadien (french)`, `naustrian`, `ngerman (ngermanb)`.
 - Added comments in `.mld` files using special fonts.
 - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
 - 2004/09/17
 - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.
- ★ version 40
- 2004/12/09
 - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
 - Removed the test on the presence of the `multicol` package in `minitoc.tex`, because `multicol` is a required package.
 - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
 - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
 - Added a paragraph about a problem with the `appendix` package.
 - 2004/12/13
 - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
 - 2004/12/14
 - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
 - 2004/12/20
 - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).
- ★ version 41
- 2005/01/05
 - Corrections in documentation.
 - Message added if some sectioning commands are not available.
 - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
 - 2005/01/06
 - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
 - 2005/01/10
 - Added bibliography.
 - 2005/01/11

- \mathcal{AMS} classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
 - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`.
 - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
 - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc/\minitoc` and `co`.
 - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
 - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
 - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
 - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
 - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
 - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03
 - Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
 - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
 - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
 - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
 - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
 - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ **version 42**

- 2005/02/14
 - Version 42 not released.
 - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
 - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
 - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
 - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ **version 43**

- 2005/02/21
 - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
 - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
 - Fixed a bug in `mtcoff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
 - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
 - Moved history to the end of package code.
 - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
 - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
 - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc/\minitoc` and `co`.
- 2005/03/08
 - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
 - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
 - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
 - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
 - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
 - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
 - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.

- 2005/03/18
 - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `sectocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
 - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
 - Added a hint for the abstract package.
- 2005/04/07
 - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
 - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
 - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
 - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
 - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
 - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and `stuff`; unused.
- 2005/05/11
 - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
 - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
 - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
 - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26
 - Fixed rules in `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`.
- 2005/05/30
 - Fixed chapter-level entries in `parttocs`, when page numbers must be removed.
 - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
 - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
 - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
 - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
 - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
 - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
 - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
 - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06

- Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
 - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
 - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
 - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
 - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
 - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
 - Added “OUI”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
 - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
 - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
 - Correctly set the `\iffTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29
 - Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
 - Added `castillian.mld`.
 - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
 - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
 - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
 - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
 - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
 - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21

- Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
- Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
 - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
 - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
 - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
 - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
 - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitoc`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
 - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending of the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
 - The `memoir` class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
 - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
 - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
 - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
 - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.
 - Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
 - Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
 - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
 - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
 - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
 - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
 - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
 - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
 - Added a note about the rubber tool.
- 2005/09/15

- Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.
- 2005/09/16
 - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
 - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
 - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
 - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
 - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
 - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
 - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
 - Corrected typos.
 - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
 - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
 - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.
 - Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.
- 2005/10/04
 - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
 - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
 - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02

- Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
 - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
 - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
 - Added the french L^AT_EX Companion [191].
- 2005/11/09
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
 - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
 - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
- 2005/11/16
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
 - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added testing via internal `quarks` commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23

- Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Reordering a long sequence of citations.
 - Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
 - Fixed typos in the documentation.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Added a hint about the `varesects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
 - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Updating the bibliography.
 - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
 - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
 - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.

- 2005/12/08
 - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
 - Corrections of french quotes.
 - Added some PDF options.
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected an URL to the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
 - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
 - Correction of typos.
 - Added some labels.
 - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
 - The documentation needs 4 \LaTeX runs.
- 2005/12/22
 - Made some messages shorter.
 - Corrections in the list of messages.
 - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
 - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
 - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04
 - Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
 - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
 - Added “*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
 - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
 - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected the bibliography entry about `BangTeX`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Used the `afterpage` package in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10

- Corrections in the documentation.
- Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- Updated the bibliography.
- Added the bahasam language.
- Added the albanian language.
- Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
 - Updated french.mld (removing abusive uppercase letters).
 - Corrected the italian.mld file. Added the italian2 language.
 - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
 - Renamed the bahasa language as bahasai; bahasa is synonym of bahasai.
 - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of bahasam.
 - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of bahasai.
- 2006/01/12
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgements.
 - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
 - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of japanese3.mld.
 - Added comments in some .mld files.
 - Added magyar3.mld.
 - Updated lithuanian.mld.
- 2006/01/16
 - Correction in \mtcaddsection.
- 2006/01/17
 - Correction in \mtcfixindex and \mtcfixglossary.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
 - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in minitoc.bug) about the initialization of fonts.
 - Added romanian2.mld and romanian3.mld.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Load some packages before hyperref.
 - Added spanish4.mld.
- 2006/01/23

- Corrected the table about default titles.
- Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
- Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
 - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
 - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [147, 195], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
 - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
 - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
 - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02
 - Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added package `dblaccnt` for the “The pdfTeX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Hàn Thế THÀNH).
- 2006/02/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13

- Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
 - Added `kannada.mld`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
 - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
 - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the acknowledgments.
- 2006/02/17
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
 - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
 - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8` and `hanja-u8`.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
 - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
 - Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
 - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
 - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
 - Added `polски.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
 - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.

- 2006/03/02
 - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [118].
- 2006/03/06
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
 - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
 - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
 - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
 - The messages are now numbered.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
 - Added FAQ 37 about `.mld` files and `babel`.
 - Added `french1.mld` and `french2.mld`.
 - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
 - Added `english1.mld` and `english2.mld`.

★ version 45

- 2006/03/31
 - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.

- Added `arab2.mld`, `bicig3.mld`, `buryat2.mld`, `xalx2.mld`, and `xalx3.mld`.
- 2006/04/03
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
 - Added `swedish2.mld`.
 - The `insection` package option loads also the `flatter` package.
- 2006/04/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
 - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
 - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13
 - In the `insection` package option, load the `flatter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
 - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
 - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - Added comments about the `insection` option.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
 - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
 - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
 - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03

- Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
- Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Added a hint about the `alumnsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
 - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
 - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
 - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
 - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
 - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05

- Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/06
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/08
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.
- ★ **version 46**
- 2006/06/09
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/21
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
 - 2006/06/22
 - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
 - Added chapter “Example files”.
 - 2006/06/23
 - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
 - Use the `lipsum` package [123] in some of the examples of documents.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/06/27
 - Update the examples of documents.
 - Added the `second.tex` example file.
 - 2006/06/29
 - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
 - 2006/06/30
 - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
 - 2006/07/03
 - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
 - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
 - 2006/07/04
 - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - 2006/07/07
 - Corrections of typos.
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
 - Correction in `french2.mld`.

- 2006/07/10
 - Correction in minilots and minilofs (and siblings) about depth.
 - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/07/11
 - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/07/12
 - Update the jargon.
 - 2006/07/13
 - Corrections in the documentation.
 - The not released versions are flagged by `*` in place of `★`.
 - 2006/07/17
 - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
 - 2006/07/18
 - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
 - 2006/07/19
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
 - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
 - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
 - 2006/07/20
 - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc1` in the list of files.
 - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
 - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.
- ★ version 47**
- 2006/07/26
 - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/07/27
 - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Aeabi` system).
 - Update the bibliography.
 - 2006/07/28
 - Update the jargon.
 - 2006/07/31
 - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
 - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
 - 2006/08/01
 - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.

- Added point 45 of the FAQ.
 - 2006/08/03
 - Minor correction in warning message F0008.
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
 - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).
- ★ **version 48**
- 2006/08/04
 - Fixed typos.
 - 2006/08/22
 - Update the bibliography.
 - No preamble in `add.bib`.
 - 2006/08/23
 - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
 - Increasing `\textwidth`.
 - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
 - 2006/08/24
 - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
 - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
 - 2006/08/25
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
 - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).
 - 2006/08/28
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
 - 2006/08/29
 - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
 - 2006/08/31
 - Update the bibliography.
 - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
 - 2006/09/01
 - Update the bibliography.
 - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
 - 2006/09/05
 - Update the bibliography.

- Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
- Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
- Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
- Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
- The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
 - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
 - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
 - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
 - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
 - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
 - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
 - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
 - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
 - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
 - Renamed `hidel.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
 - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
 - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
 - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
 - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
 - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
 - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
 - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
 - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.
 - Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
 - Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
 - Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
 - Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
 - Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsfc.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
 - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
 - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
 - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
 - Added a figure about systems derived from $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ and $\text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$.
- 2006/09/13
 - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
 - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
 - Simplifications in the scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
 - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Fixed typos.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
 - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
 - Improving some tables.
 - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.
 - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
 - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
 - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.
 - Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2006/11/06
 - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
 - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.
 - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the `english.mld` file.
- 2006/11/13

- The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

★ **version 50**

- 2006/11/17
 - Removed old examples of documents: *mtc-adds.tex*, *mtc-amem.tex*, *mtc-book.tex*, *mtc-gaps.tex*, *mtc-mem1.tex*, *mtc-subf.tex*, and *mtc-tsfc.tex*.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the *tmk* script and a table describing a TDS structure for *minitoc*.
 - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
 - Updated the *INSTALL* file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
 - Added the warning message **W0094** with the list of the missing *minitoc* languages files (*.mld* and *.mlo*).
 - Corrections in the bibliography.
 - Updated the *INSTALL* file and the “Installation” chapter.
 - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
 - Updated the bibliography.
 - Added the file *minitoc-texmf.zip* (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

★ **version 51**

- 2006/12/18
 - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.
- 2006/12/20
 - Improving the index: names.
 - Updated some *.mld* files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
 - Miscellaneous corrections.
 - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
 - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
 - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
 - Indexing the files.
 - Renamed the file “*catalog*” into “*CATALOG*”.
 - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
 - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

Index

Symbols

- .F (extension) 51, 191, 275
- .G (extension) 51, 191, 311
- .H (extension) 51, 192, 334
- .M (extension) 51, 192, 272
- .P (extension) 51, 192, 311
- .S (extension) 51, 192, 334
- .T (extension) 51, 193, 279
- .U (extension) 51, 193, 311
- .V (extension) 51, 193, 334
- .aux (extension) . . 52, 55, 57, 60, 191, 195, 248
- .bst (extension) 220
- .cls (extension) 191
- .dtx (extension) 41, 191, 192, 225, 232, 434, 508, 557
- .ins (extension) 191, 192, 225, 232
- .lan (extension) 202
- .lof (extension) 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 142, 169, 170, 192, 195, 256, 258–260, 285, 292, 311, 318, 334, 341, 425, 552
- .log (extension) . 29, 31, 48, 49, 52, 54, 77, 136, 141, 142, 153, 159, 190, 192, 203, 243, 245, 260, 382, 405, 406, 434, 554, 575
- .lot (extension) 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 142, 169, 170, 192, 195, 256, 258–260, 285, 294, 295, 311, 321, 334, 343, 425, 550, 552
- .maf (extension) 49, 77, 144, 192, 206, 232, 376, 408, 560
- .mld (extension) . . 19, 35, 36, 41, 67, 71, 72, 78, 145, 153, 159, 176, 185, 187, 192, 194, 197, 222, 226, 228, 229, 231, 232, 234, 242, 372, 376–378, 430, 433, 434, 463, 550, 552, 554, 558, 559, 564, 567, 574, 575
- .mlf (extension) 26, 51, 192, 275
- .mlo (extension) . . 19, 36, 41, 67, 145, 154, 159, 177, 192, 197, 198, 202, 222, 226, 232, 234, 242, 372, 376, 378, 430, 434, 490, 559, 567, 574, 575
- .mlt (extension) 26, 51, 192, 279
- .mtc (extension) 26, 48, 51, 55, 56, 58, 192, 272, 408, 546
- .pdf (extension) 224
- .plf (extension) 29, 51, 192, 311
- .plt (extension) 29, 51, 192, 311
- .ptc (extension) 29, 51, 192, 311
- .slf (extension) 28, 51, 192, 334
- .slt (extension) 28, 51, 192, 334
- .stc (extension) 28, 51, 192, 334
- .sty (extension) . . 193, 215, 222, 224, 225, 228, 550
- .tar (extension) 225
- .tex (extension) 142, 193
- .tgz (extension) 225
- .toc (extension) . 26, 47, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 142, 169–171, 193, 195, 228, 256, 258–260, 267, 268, 284, 289, 311, 316, 334, 339, 425, 547, 550, 552
- .zip (extension) 225
- /tmp/‘whoami‘.imk (file) 224, 225
- /tmp/‘whoami‘.rmk (file) 225, 226
- /tmp/‘whoami‘.tmk (file) 224–226
- /tmp/‘whoami‘/OLD (file) 571
- \@dominilof 929, 967
- \@dominilot 948, 967
- \@dominitoc 895, 910, 967
- \@dopartlof 1651, 1671
- \@dopartlot 1670, 1671
- \@doparttoc 1632, 1671
- \@dosectlof 2278, 2298
- \@dosectlot 2297, 2298
- \@dosecttoc 2259, 2298
- \@M 386, 818, 841, 854, 1373, 1383, 1581, 2166, 2167, 2199
- \@Undottedtocline 836, 3503, 5091
- \@Undottedtoclinep 849, 864, 876, 879, 882, 887, 890, 893, 5091
- \@addtoreset 841, 1097
- \@afterheading 1299, 1313, 1327, 5179, 5187
- \@afterindenttrue 385, 840, 853
- \@centercr 601, 1348, 1954
- \@chapter 1, 317, 820, 4030, 4725, 5153, 5155
- \@dominilof 900, 968
- \@dominilof@used@false 99

- \@dominilof@used>true 940
- \@dominilot 905, 969
- \@dominilot@used>false 100
- \@dominilot@used>true 959
- \@dominitoc 895, 967
- \@dominitoc@used>false 98
- \@dominitoc@used>true 921
- \@dopartlof 1603, 1672
- \@dopartlof@used>false 93
- \@dopartlof@used>true 1644
- \@dopartlot 1607, 1673
- \@dopartlot@used>false 94
- \@dopartlot@used>true 1663
- \@doparttoc 1599, 1671
- \@doparttoc@used>false 92
- \@doparttoc@used>true 1625
- \@dosectlof 2230, 2299
- \@dosectlof@used>false 105
- \@dosectlof@used>true 2271
- \@dosectlot 2234, 2300
- \@dosectlot@used>false 106
- \@dosectlot@used>true 2290
- \@dosecttoc 2226, 2298
- \@dosecttoc@used>false 104
- \@dosecttoc@used>true 2252
- \@dotsep 2902, 2915, 2920, 2925, 2930, 2935,
2940, 2945, 2950, 2955
- \@dottedtocline 662, 735, 803,
818, 864, 876, 879, 882, 887, 890, 893,
1413, 1490, 1565, 1581, 2015, 2085,
2152, 2166
- \@dottedxxxline 2209
- \@ensure@R 6416, 6419, 6422, 6426, 6429, 6432,
6436, 6439, 6442
- \@fileswfalse 666, 739, 807, 1420, 1494, 1569,
2020, 2089, 2157
- \@firstchapteris@used>false 108
- \@firstchapteris@used>true 561
- \@firstoftwo 213
- \@firstpartis@used>false 107
- \@firstpartis@used>true 1248
- \@firstsectionis@used>false 109
- \@firstsectionis@used>true 1925
- \@gobble 4967, 4970, 4971, 5091
- \@gobblethre 3625
- \@gobblethree 3544, 3644
- \@gobbletwo 4907, 4952
- \@hangfrom 2189
- \@ifclasslater 205
- \@ifclassloaded ... 180, 3857, 3957, 3966,
3981, 4004
- \@ifnextchar 612, 682,
750, 899, 904, 909, 1359, 1432, 1506,
1611–1613, 1965, 2031, 2098, 2238–
- 2240, 2522, 4888, 4894, 4900, 4906,
5153
- \@ifpackagelater 3947
- \@ifpackageloaded 137,
154, 156, 158, 160, 162, 164, 166,
168, 170, 172, 174, 176, 178, 3833,
3841, 3849, 3881, 3889, 3897, 3990,
4662
- \@ifpackagewith 3897, 3990
- \@ifundefined .. 17, 2522, 3015, 3091, 3369,
3412, 3507, 3523, 4011, 4030, 4049,
4722, 4725, 4728, 4787
- \@input 1059, 1127, 1188, 3455, 3475
- \@inputcheck ... 235, 369, 1043, 1055, 1075,
1112, 1123, 1140, 1173, 1184, 1201,
1754, 1755, 1766, 1785, 1817, 1818,
1829, 1847, 1879, 1880, 1891, 1909,
2368, 2369, 2380, 2396, 2429, 2430,
2441, 2457, 2490, 2491, 2502, 2518
- \@longextensions@false ... 342, 347, 3520
- \@longextensions@true 344, 5035
- \@m@chapter 5151
- \@makechapterhead . 1370, 5178, 5183, 5185
- \@makephead@c 1327
- \@makephead@l 1299
- \@makephead@r 1313
- \@makeschapterhead 1380
- \@minilof@used>false 96
- \@minilof@used>true 684
- \@minilot@used>false 97
- \@minilot@used>true 752
- \@minitoc@used>false 95
- \@minitoc@used>true 614
- \@mkboth 530, 1374, 1447, 1522
- \@mtc@FEfalse 246, 259
- \@mtc@FEtrue 236, 250, 257
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false 57
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true 161
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false 56
- \@mtc@HgcLoaded@true 160
- \@mtc@Himlof@false 3303, 3334
- \@mtc@Himlof@true 3310, 3328
- \@mtc@Himlot@false 3336, 3351, 3367
- \@mtc@Himlot@true 3343, 3361
- \@mtc@Himtoc@false 3288, 3301, 3318
- \@mtc@Himtoc@true 3295
- \@mtc@LIfalse 240, 244, 246
- \@mtc@LItrue 235, 250
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false 3824
- \@mtc@abstract@loaded@true 3991
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false 65
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true 169
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false 64
- \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true 168

\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false	67	4316, 4329, 4340, 4351, 4364, 4375,	
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true	171	4386, 4395, 4404, 4413, 4429, 4438,	
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@false	66	4447, 4456, 4465, 4474, 4483, 4492,	
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true	170	4501, 4510, 4519, 4528, 4537, 4545,	
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false	47	4552, 4559, 4566, 4573, 4580, 4587,	
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true	175	4594, 4601, 4608, 4615, 4622	
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@false	46	\@mtc@hints@true	35, 3822
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true	174	\@mtc@hints@w@false	36, 4011, 4030, 4049
\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false	45	\@mtc@hints@w@true	4013, 4015, 4017, 4032,
\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true	173	4034, 4036, 4052, 4054, 4056, 4109	
\@mtc@captionLoaded@false	44	\@mtc@hyper@used@false	138
\@mtc@captionLoaded@true	172	\@mtc@hyper@used@true	141
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false	49	\@mtc@insellang@false	3455, 3473, 3500
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true	177	\@mtc@insellang@true	3457
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false	48	\@mtc@listfiles@false	3543
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true	176	\@mtc@listfiles@true	3541, 3542
\@mtc@chapter@def@false	79, 80	\@mtc@lof@used@false	3826, 4071
\@mtc@chapter@def@true	80	\@mtc@lof@used@true	4078, 4087
\@mtc@chapter@undef@false	86	\@mtc@lot@used@false	3827, 4072
\@mtc@chapter@undef@true	85, 86	\@mtc@lot@used@true	4081, 4090
\@mtc@checkfilesfalse	3516	\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false	51
\@mtc@checkfilestrue	237, 3515	\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true	179
\@mtc@empty@minilof@false	72	\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false	50
\@mtc@empty@minilof@true	694	\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true	178
\@mtc@empty@minilot@false	73	\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false	40, 186
\@mtc@empty@minilot@true	762	\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true	181
\@mtc@empty@minitoc@false	71	\@mtc@memoirnew@false	41, 189
\@mtc@empty@minitoc@true	624	\@mtc@memoirnew@true	191
\@mtc@empty@partlof@false	69	\@mtc@misslangfalse	3549
\@mtc@empty@partlof@true	1444, 1519	\@mtc@misslangtrue	3553, 3569, 3582, 3598
\@mtc@empty@partlot@false	70	\@mtc@notoccite@false	132
\@mtc@empty@parttoc@false	68	\@mtc@notoccite@true	3519
\@mtc@empty@parttoc@true	1371	\@mtc@part@def@false	77, 78
\@mtc@empty@sectlof@false	75	\@mtc@part@def@true	78
\@mtc@empty@sectlof@true	2043	\@mtc@part@undef@false	84
\@mtc@empty@sectlot@false	76	\@mtc@part@undef@true	83, 84
\@mtc@empty@sectlot@true	2110	\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false	39, 4666
\@mtc@empty@secttoc@false	74	\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true	4666
\@mtc@empty@secttoc@true	1977	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false	59
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false	55	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true	163
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true	159	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false	58
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false	54	\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true	162
\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true	158	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false	61
\@mtc@hints@false	3823	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true	165
\@mtc@hints@given@false	37	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@false	60
\@mtc@hints@given@true	910, 929,	\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true	164
948, 1614, 1633, 1652, 2241, 2260,		\@mtc@sect@floats@false	38
2279, 2542, 3834, 3842, 3850, 3858,		\@mtc@sect@floats@true	4094–4097
3866, 3874, 3882, 3890, 3900, 3917,		\@mtc@section@def@false	81, 82
3932, 3948, 3958, 3967, 3975, 3982,		\@mtc@section@def@true	82
3993, 4005, 4018, 4037, 4057, 4109,		\@mtc@section@undef@false	88
4119, 4128, 4137, 4148, 4157, 4166,		\@mtc@section@undef@true	87, 88
4177, 4186, 4205, 4214, 4223, 4234,		\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false	43
4243, 4252, 4263, 4272, 4294, 4305,		\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true	155

- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false 42
 - \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true 154
 - \@mtc@setdepth@false 3249
 - \@mtc@setdepth@true 3244, 3247
 - \@mtc@setfeature@false 3190, 3207
 - \@mtc@setfeature@true 3184, 3188
 - \@mtc@setfont@false 2662,
2680, 2719–2722, 2725, 2726, 2729,
2730, 2733–2738, 2741–2744, 2747–
2750, 2753–2759, 2762–2766, 2769–
2773
 - \@mtc@setfont@true 2657, 2660, 2717
 - \@mtc@setformat@false 2963, 2980
 - \@mtc@setformat@true 2957, 2961
 - \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false . . 3013, 3038,
3060
 - \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true 3035
 - \@mtc@setrules@false 3089, 3114, 3136
 - \@mtc@setrules@true 3111
 - \@mtc@setttitle@false 2839
 - \@mtc@setttitle@true 2834, 2837
 - \@mtc@setttitlefont@false 2798
 - \@mtc@setttitlefont@true 2793, 2796
 - \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false 63
 - \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true 167
 - \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false 62
 - \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true 166
 - \@mtc@spn@ok@false 3057
 - \@mtc@spn@ok@true 3055
 - \@mtc@sru@ok@false 3133
 - \@mtc@sru@ok@true 3131
 - \@mtc@ss@insection@false 3523
 - \@mtc@ss@insection@true 3538
 - \@mtc@toc@used@false 3825, 4070
 - \@mtc@toc@used@true 4075, 4084
 - \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false 53
 - \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true 157
 - \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false 52
 - \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true 156
 - \@mtcfixglossary@false 3391, 3393
 - \@mtcfixglossary@true . . . 3395, 3397, 3399
 - \@mtcfixindex@false 3434, 3436
 - \@mtcfixindex@true 3438, 3440, 3442
 - \@mtcpatchmemoir@false 180
 - \@mtcpatchmemoir@true 201
 - \@namedef . . . 2591, 2600, 2609, 2646, 2875
 - \@nameuse 2591, 2659,
2678, 2795, 2836, 2977, 2979, 3053,
3072, 3110, 3147, 3204, 3206, 3246
 - \@nobreakfalse . . . 523, 671, 744, 812, 1425,
1499, 1574, 2025, 2092, 2160
 - \@part 1, 272, 1586, 4011, 4722
 - \@partlof@used@false 90
 - \@partlof@used@true 1434
 - \@partlot@used@false 91
 - \@partlot@used@true 1509
 - \@parttoc@used@false 89
 - \@parttoc@used@true 1361
 - \@plus 838, 851
 - \@pnumwidth . . . 861, 2884, 2913, 2918, 2923,
2928, 2933, 2938, 2943, 2948, 2953
 - \@resetfont 1204, 1224
 - \@schapter 1, 825, 4030, 4725
 - \@secondoftwo 213
 - \@sect . . 1, 305, 2172, 2179, 2218, 4049, 4728
 - \@sectlof@used@false 102
 - \@sectlof@used@true 2033
 - \@sectlot@used@false 103
 - \@sectlot@used@true 2100
 - \@secttoc@used@false 101
 - \@secttoc@used@true 1967
 - \@spart 1, 272, 1586, 4011, 4722
 - \@ssect 1, 305, 4049, 4728
 - \@svsec 2189
 - \@svsechd 2189
 - \@tempdima 388, 843, 844, 856, 857
 - \@tempskipa 2189
 - \@tocfile 615, 620, 623, 668,
685, 690, 693, 741, 753, 758, 761, 809,
1360, 1367, 1413, 1433, 1440, 1490,
1507, 1515, 1565, 1966, 1973, 2015,
2032, 2039, 2085, 2099, 2106, 2152
 - \@tocrmarg 384, 839, 852,
2893, 2914, 2919, 2924, 2929, 2934,
2939, 2944, 2949, 2954
 - \@topnewpage 1299, 1313, 1327, 5183
 - \@undottedtocline 380, 662, 735, 803, 1413,
1490, 1565, 2015, 2085, 2152
 - \@width 570
 - \@xssect 2189
 - \\ . . 601, 660, 672, 730, 745, 798, 813, 1348
 - \\@mainaux 117
 - \~ 7658, 7662, 7666
 - 2c.tex (old example document) **570, 573**
 - _ . . 5528, 5529, 5531, 5532, 5537, 5538, 5540,
5541, 5546, 5547, 5549, 5550, 5941,
5942, 5945, 5946, 5949, 5950, 6390,
6392, 6394, 6397, 6399, 6401, 6404,
6406, 6408, 6417, 6420, 6423, 6427,
6430, 6433, 6437, 6440, 6443, 7608,
7610, 7614, 7616, 7620, 7622
- A**
- \a@tok 5279
 - ABOLHASSANI, Hassan **235, 459**
 - above (option of placeins) **29, 30, 173**

- abstract (package) **50, 67, 85, 151, 193, 231, 387, 557**
 abstract (environment) **50, 67**
 abstract (environment) 1, 180
 ABU EL-ATA, Nabil **235**
 acadian (language option) **434, 554**
 acadian.mld (file) **223, 434**
 acadien (language option) **36, 435, 554**
 acadien.mld (file) **223, 435**
 \accent 5689
 add.bib (old example document) . . . **572, 573**
 add.tex (old example document) . . . **571, 573**
 ADDABBO, Tommaso **235**
 \addappheadtotoc 804
 \addcoffeeline 3503, 5091
 \addcontentsline 1,
 30, 282, 309–312, 320–323, 388, 443,
 444, 532, 737, 738, 820, 870, 1132,
 1231, 1234, 1237, 1240, 1243, 1588–
 1590, 1936, 2172, 2179, 2189, 2390,
 2393, 3391, 3434, 5058, 5110, 5192,
 5195, 5199, 5202
 addsec.tex (old example document) . **563, 571, 573**
 \addst@rred 532, 551, 830
 \addstarredchapter 1, 830, 1228, 5110
 \addstarredpart 1, 830, 5110
 \addstarredsection 1, 551, 830, 955, 5110
 \addtocontents 1, 825, 1328, 1586, 2218,
 3289, 3303, 3336, 3503
 \addtocounter 269, 564–566, 1059, 1116,
 1127, 1188, 1251–1253, 1783, 1845,
 1907, 1927–1929, 2394, 2455, 2516
 \addtolength 1351, 1354, 1907
 addtotoc (option of abstract) **50, 67, 151, 193**
 \advspace 13, 14
 \adjustmtc 1, 319, 440, 555, 797, 2402, 4868
 \adjustptc 1, 31, 282, 1239, 1605, 4868
 \adjuststc 1, 308, 734, 1920, 4868
 afrikaan (language option) **36, 435**
 afrikaan.mld (file) **223, 435**
 afrikaans (language option) **36, 435**
 afrikaans.mld (file) **223, 435**
 \afterminilof 491, 745, 5017
 \afterminilot 491, 813, 5017
 \afterminitoc 491, 672, 5017
 afterpage (package) **563**
 \afterpartlof 484, 1501, 5008
 \afterpartlot 484, 1576, 5008
 \afterparttoc 484, 1427, 5008
 \aftersectlof 494, 2094, 5026
 \aftersectlot 494, 2162, 5026
 \aftersecttoc 494, 2027, 5026
 AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. **235, 441**
 AJ, Alex **235, 490, 491**
 AKOPIAN, Vardan **194, 235, 438**
 albanian (language option) **36, 436**
 albanian.dtx (file) **436**
 albanian.mld (file) **223, 436**
 \alef 5298–5300, 5302–5304, 5306–
 5308, 5940–5942, 5944–5946, 5948–
 5950, 6393, 6395, 6400, 6402, 6407,
 6409
 \alefhamza 5299, 5303, 5307
 \alloc@ 326
 alnumsec (package) **50, 72, 85, 174, 193, 233, 252, 401, 569**
 \Alph 1455, 1456
 alphanum (package) **50, 71, 85, 160, 193, 383, 566**
 amem.tex (old example document) **570**
 american (language option) **36, 436**
 american.mld (file) **223, 378, 436, 552**
 amsart (class) **50, 63, 85, 160, 193, 194, 386, 555**
 amsart.cls (file) **194**
 amsbook (class) **49, 63, 85, 151, 193, 194, 387, 555**
 amsbook.cls (file) **194**
 amsproc (class) **50, 63, 85, 160, 193, 194, 386, 555**
 amsproc.cls (file) **194**
 ANDRIEUX, Jérôme **235**
 ANGELI, Ralf **235**
 Antomega (package) **194, 434, 467–469, 485, 497, 501, 502, 511, 512**
 app-mem.tex (old example document) **573**
 appendices (environment) **60, 100, 194, 210**
 appendices (environment) 1
 appendix (package) **49, 60–62, 85, 151, 194, 231, 383, 554, 568**
 \appendix 1, 29, 448, 741, 1033, 1297, 2302
 \appendixmtc 4907
 apx.tex (old example document) **573**
 arab (language option) **36, 436–438**
 arab.mld (file) **194, 223, 436, 438, 550**
 arab2 (language option) **36, 437**
 arab2.mld (file) **194, 223, 437, 568**
 ArabTeX (package) **36, 41, 194, 434, 436, 437, 475**
 Aʿabi (package) **36, 41, 194, 437, 460, 571**
 arabi (language option) **36, 437**
 arabi.mld (file) **194, 223, 437, 571**
 arabic (language option) **36, 194, 438**
 \arabic 977, 1086, 1147, 2339, 3289, 3303,
 3336
 arabic.ldf (file) **194**
 arabic.mld (file) **194, 223, 438**
 ARADIAN, Achod André **235**

- Arm \TeX (package) **41, 194, 434, 438, 551**
 armenian (language option) **36, 194, 438**
 armenian.mld (file) **194, 223, 438**
 ÁRNASON, Einar **235, 477**
 ARNOLD, Tim **235**
 ARSENEAU, Donald **29, 49, 85, 214, 230, 235, 249,**
 254, 259, 274, 277, 280, 548, 551, 554,
 566, 574
 article (class) . **24, 56, 58, 68, 94, 100, 121, 138,**
 186, 187, 194, 198, 200, 205, 206, 210,
 211, 216–218, 221, 257, 265, 298, 410
 ASPINALL, David **235**
 ÅSSEN, Ivar **235, 496**
 \AtBeginDocument 111, 137, 154,
 156, 158, 160, 162, 164, 166, 168,
 170, 172, 174, 176, 178, 524, 1233,
 1912, 2883, 3303, 3336, 3507, 3824,
 4011, 4718, 4740, 5041
 \AtEndDocument 117, 3625, 3824, 4093, 4717,
 4718, 5042
 australian (language option) **36, 439**
 australian.mld (file) **223, 439**
 austrian (language option) **36, 439**
 austrian.mld (file) **223, 439**
 \author 1916
 \ayin 6391, 6398, 6405
- B**
- babel (package) **36, 41, 71, 72,**
 194, 195, 200, 228, 434–436, 440, 441,
 444–447, 449, 451–456, 460–466, 475,
 477–480, 484–489, 494–497, 499–501,
 503, 508–513, 515–517, 519, 549, 550,
 558, 567
 BACHMANN, Philipp **235**
 BADENES, Gonvcal **235, 449**
 bahasa (language option) **36, 439**
 bahasa.dtx (file) **440**
 bahasa.mld (file) **223, 439**
 bahasai (language option) . . . **36, 439, 440, 478**
 bahasai.mld (file) **223, 439, 440, 478**
 bahasam (language option) . . . **36, 440, 489, 492**
 bahasam.dtx (file) **440**
 bahasam.mld (file) **223, 440, 489, 492**
 BALGARENSKY, Marin **235**
 Bang \TeX (package) **41, 195, 434, 441, 563**
 bangla (language option) **36, 195, 441, 553**
 bangla.mld (file) **223, 441**
 \baselinestretch 1446
 basque (language option) **36, 441**
 basque.dtx (file) **441**
 basque.mld (file) **223, 441**
 BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves **235**
 BAUSUM, David **235**
- BAYART, Benjamin . . . **46, 231, 235, 346, 554, 556**
 BAYET, Thierry **235**
 \bcg 5417–5419, 5421–5423, 5425–5427
 BECCARI, Claudio **235, 480, 484, 485**
 BEFFARA, Emmanuel **58, 235**
 \beforeminilof 478, 698, 5017
 \beforeminilot 478, 766, 5017
 \beforeminitoc 478, 628, 5017
 \beforepartlof 471, 1446, 5008
 \beforepartlot 471, 1521, 5008
 \beforeparttoc 471, 1373, 5008
 \beforesectlof 481, 2045, 5026
 \beforesectlot 481, 2112, 5026
 \beforesecttoc 481, 1979, 5026
 below (option of placeins) **29, 30, 173**
 BÉRCES, József **235, 488, 489**
 BERRY, Karl **235**
 \bet 6395, 6402, 6409
 BEZOS, Javier **85, 235, 470, 511, 513**
 \bfseries 579, 588, 1264,
 1273, 1277, 1287, 1375, 1377, 1401,
 1404, 1426, 1431, 1435, 1438, 1659,
 1662, 1707, 1710, 1912, 1934, 1942,
 2219–2223, 2225–2228
 Bg5.cap (file) **450**
 Bg5.cpx (file) **450**
 \bibitem 2184, 2192, 2399
 \bibliography 1, 439, 733
 \bibliographystyle 438, 732
 bibtopic (package) **57, 195**
 bibtotoc (option of KOMA) **47, 134**
 bibtotocnumbered (option of KOMA) **47**
 bibunit (environment) **195**
 bibunits (package) **57, 195, 211**
 bicig (language option) **36, 209, 442, 443, 515**
 bicig.mld (file) **223, 442, 515**
 bicig2 (language option) **36, 442, 515**
 bicig2.mld (file) **223, 442, 515, 561**
 bicig3 (language option) **36, 443, 516**
 bicig3.mld (file) **223, 443, 516, 568**
 \bigskipamount 1, 11, 4775
 BILOTTA, Giuseppe **215, 235**
 BÍRÓ, Árpád **235, 488, 489**
 bithe (language option) **36, 209, 444, 492**
 bithe.mld (file) **223, 444, 492, 561**
 BITOUZÉ, Denis **235**
 BLOCH, Laurent **235**
 bo.tex (old example document) **573**
 book (class) . **24, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 73, 106,**
 124, 186, 187, 195, 198, 200, 202, 205,
 210, 217, 218, 221, 257, 258, 265, 298,
 572
 book.cls (file) **67**
 BOSHPAKOV, Georgi **235, 446**

- BOUGETTE, Patrice 235
BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 235
BOYKO, Victor 235, 505
BRAAMS, Johannes 41, 195, 228, 235, 435,
453–455, 465, 479, 495, 496, 519, 549
BRAUN, Felix 85, 193, 204, 235
brazil (language option) 36, 444, 445
brazil.mld (file) 223, 444, 445
brazilian (language option) 36, 445
brazilian.mld (file) 223, 445, 558
breton (language option) 36, 445
breton.dtx (file) 445
breton.mld (file) 223, 445
british (language option) 36, 446
british.mld (file) 223, 446, 558
bulgarian (language option) 36, 446
bulgarian.dtx (file) 446
bulgarian.mld (file) 223, 446, 552
bulgarianb (language option) 36, 447
bulgarianb.mld (file) 41, 223, 447, 556
BURC, Mustafa 235, 515
buryat (language option) 36, 447, 448
buryat.mld (file) 223, 447
buryat2 (language option) 36, 448
buryat2.mld (file) 223, 448, 568
- C**
- \c@lofdepth 524, 730, 1233, 1487, 1488, 1912,
2082, 2083
\c@lotdepth 524, 798, 1233, 1562, 1563, 1912,
2149, 2150
\c@minilofdepth 730
\c@minilotdepth 798
\c@minitocdepth 660, 4775
\c@mtc 532, 4690, 4694, 4707, 4711, 4782
\c@mti 590, 628, 698, 766, 910, 929, 948
\c@page 1890
\c@partlofdepth 1487
\c@partlotdepth 1562
\c@parttocdepth 1411, 4775
\c@ptc 532, 4684, 4688, 4702, 4706, 4782
\c@pti 1289, 1327, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1614,
1633, 1652
\c@secnumdepth 1374, 2189, 2202, 2211, 5171,
5189
\c@sectlofdepth 2079
\c@sectlotdepth 2146
\c@secttocdepth 2013, 4775
\c@stc 532, 4695, 4699, 4712, 4716, 4782
\c@sti 1943, 1981, 2048, 2115, 2241, 2260,
2279
\c@tocdepth 382, 660, 837, 850, 1411, 2013,
2079, 2146
canadian (language option) 36, 448, 554
canadian.mld (file) 223, 448
canadien (language option) 36, 449, 554
canadien.mld (file) 223, 449
captcont (package) 50, 73, 85, 174, 195, 233, 252,
401, 569
caption (package) 51, 69, 85, 161, 162, 196, 232,
252, 402, 560
\caption 69, 72, 75, 78, 87, 90, 93,
96, 105, 108, 111, 114, 133, 136, 139,
142, 149, 152, 157, 160, 167, 170, 173,
176, 357, 360, 378, 381, 422, 425, 431,
434, 459, 462, 468, 471, 483, 486, 492,
495, 568, 571, 588, 591, 627, 630, 636,
639, 654, 657, 676, 679, 716, 719, 725,
728, 748, 751, 757, 760, 770, 773, 779,
782, 936, 949, 991, 1017, 1048, 1204,
1210, 1223, 1264, 1288, 1313, 1748,
1752, 1757, 1761, 1768, 1773, 1777,
1796, 1800, 1805, 1809, 1816, 1821,
1825, 1851, 1859, 1870, 1878, 2250,
2297, 2523
caption2 (package) 51, 69, 85, 162, 196, 232, 252,
402, 560
captions.dn (file) 476
CARDI, Olivier 235
CARELLA, David 235
CARLISLE, David 26, 221, 235, 287, 547
CARMODY, Kevin 235, 452, 476
CARRIBA, Manuel 235, 464
CASPAR, Régis 235
castillan (language option) 36, 449, 511
castillan.mld (file) 223, 449
castillian (language option) 36, 449
castillian.mld (file) 223, 449, 558
catalan (language option) 36, 449, 511
catalan.dtx (file) 449
catalan.mld (file) 223, 449
CATALOG (file) 196, 223, 224, 226, 575
ccaption (package) 51, 69, 85, 162, 196, 232, 253,
402, 560
\centering 1335, 1849, 1857, 1868, 1876, 2238,
2290, 2466, 2487
CervanT_EX (package) 41, 513
\cftpagenumbersoff 218, 401–405, 412–415,
424–429, 431, 433, 435, 437, 439, 441,
1355, 1356
\cftpagenumberon 395–399, 407–410,
417–422, 430, 432, 434, 436, 438, 440
\cftsecfont 219, 2098, 2107
\cftsecindent 1348, 1350
\cftsecnumwidth 1349, 1351
\cftsetrmarg 1908
\cftsubsecfont 2099–2101, 2108–2110
\cftsubsecindent 1350, 1351, 1353, 1907

- `\cftsubsecnumwidth` 1352, 1354
- `\cftsubsubsecindent` 1353, 1354
- `ch0.tex` (old example document) **571, 573**
- `\ch@pt@c` 5152, 5156, 5158, 5164, 5166
- `\chapbegin` 895
- `chapter` **246, 247**
- `\chapter` 1, 15, 22, 37, 44, 65, 80, 98, 129, 144, 163, 180, 194, 196, 199, 204, 221, 224, 244, 251, 261, 270, 289, 306, 307, 310, 311, 316, 316, 317, 317, 348, 383, 398, 412, 449, 471, 473, 484, 540, 551, 612, 682, 750, 798, 805, 812, 830, 977, 1025, 1074, 1122, 1191, 1227, 1249, 1269, 1301, 1316, 1464, 1541, 1569, 1611, 1615, 1621, 1623, 1627, 1634, 1638, 1667, 1709, 1715, 1792, 1812, 1843, 1862, 1924, 2001, 2072, 2082, 2118, 2139, 2232, 2283, 2303, 2318, 2323, 2328, 2334, 2343, 2366, 2368, 2372, 2376, 2380, 2384, 2386, 2480, 3372, 3397, 3415, 3440, 4011, 4030, 4725, 5035
- `\chapter@mtcck` 2707, 2734, 2742, 2748, 2754, 2763, 2770
- `\chapterbegin` . 825, 1059, 1127, 1188, 4881
- `chapterbib` (package) **57, 196, 197, 211**
- `\chapterend` . . 825, 1059, 1127, 1188, 4881
- `\chapterfont` 1912
- `\chaptermark` 5176
- `\chapternumberline` 5193, 5196
- `\chardef` 326
- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme **235**
- `checkfiles` (option) . **28, 31, 57, 144, 163–165, 197, 214, 230, 374, 552**
- `chinese1` (language option) **36, 450**
- `chinese1.mld` (file) **223, 450, 555**
- `chinese1.mlo` (file) **223, 450**
- `chinese2` (language option) **36, 450, 451**
- `chinese2.mld` (file) **223, 450, 555**
- `chinese2.mlo` (file) **223, 450, 451**
- CHLEBIKOVA, Jana **235, 510**
- `\cite` 1, 364, 575, 661, 2173, 2174
- CJK (package) . **36, 41, 197, 198, 219, 220, 434, 450, 470–474, 481–483, 514**
- Classes
 - `amsart` **50, 63, 85, 160, 193, 194, 386, 555**
 - `amsbook` **49, 63, 85, 151, 193, 194, 387, 555**
 - `amsproc` **50, 63, 85, 160, 193, 194, 386, 555**
 - `article` **24, 56, 58, 68, 94, 100, 121, 138, 186, 187, 194, 198, 200, 205, 206, 210, 211, 216–218, 221, 257, 265, 298, 410**
 - `book` **24, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 73, 106, 124, 186, 187, 195, 198, 200, 202, 205, 210, 217, 218, 221, 257, 258, 265, 298, 572**
 - `jura` **50, 71, 85, 160, 193, 204, 383, 387, 566**
 - `letter` **24, 56, 187, 198, 205, 217**
 - `ltxdoc` **24, 198, 206**
 - `ltxnews` **24, 198, 206**
 - `memoir` **49, 62, 69, 85, 100, 128, 129, 147–149, 152, 184, 190, 207, 210, 211, 222, 230, 232, 245, 253, 262, 386, 428, 553, 559–561**
 - `proc` **24, 198, 216, 217**
 - `report` **24, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 71, 73, 106, 122, 186, 187, 198, 200, 202, 205, 210, 217, 218, 221, 257, 258, 265, 298, 572**
 - `scrartcl` . **39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 151, 204, 205, 217, 218**
 - `scrbook` . **39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 123, 151, 204, 205, 210, 217, 218**
 - `scrlttr` **204, 205**
 - `scrlttr2` **204, 205**
 - `scrreprt` . **39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 134, 151, 204, 205, 211, 217, 218**
 - `slides` **198**
- `\cleardoublepage` 475, 488, 1872, 1888
- CLEGG, Marian **235**
- `\closeout` 265, 268, 340, 967–969, 981, 1012, 1059, 1090, 1127, 1151, 1188, 1671–1673, 1691, 1705, 1780, 1804, 1842, 1866, 1904, 2298–2300, 2320, 2339, 2391, 2417, 2452, 2478, 2513, 4676, 4679
- `cmcyralt` (package) **505**
- `cmcyralt.sty` (file) **505**
- COCHRAN, Steven Douglas **31, 50, 73, 85, 235**
- CODOGNO, Maurizio **235, 480**
- `\coffee` 1009, 1709, 2323
- `\coffeefont` 589, 836, 849, 1224, 4951
- `\coffeeline` 3503, 5091
- `color` (package) **112**
- `\colorbox` 1415
- `\columnbreak` 1403, 1420
- `\columnrule` 2129
- `\columnsep` 1411
- `\columnseprule` 1410
- `\columnwidth` . 555, 628, 678, 698, 766, 1257, 1397, 1465, 1544, 1920, 1996, 2062, 2132, 2136, 2564
- `\contentsline` 1, 282, 308, 319, 895, 1059, 1127, 1188, 1204, 1772, 1835, 1897, 2384, 2445, 2506
- COOK, David B. **235**
- `\copy` 331, 335
- CORFF, Oliver **235**
- `\count@` 4775
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash **235**

- Counters
- mtc . **84, 255, 259, 267, 269, 287, 288, 291, 294, 348, 552**
 - ptc . **84, 255, 256, 267, 297, 310, 314, 317, 319**
 - stc . **84, 255, 257, 258, 267, 322, 337, 339, 342, 552**
 - cri.tex (old example document) **571, 573**
 - croatian (language option) **36, 451**
 - croatian.dtx (file) **451**
 - croatian.mld (file) **223, 451**
 - \cyr . 5526, 5528, 5531, 5535, 5537, 5540, 5544, 5546, 5549, 5558, 5560, 5562, 5565, 5567, 5569, 5572, 5574, 5576, 7239, 7242, 7245, 7248, 7252, 7254, 7257, 7261, 7263, 7266, 7395, 7397, 7401, 7403, 7404, 7407, 7409, 7606, 7607, 7609, 7612, 7613, 7615, 7618, 7619, 7621
 - \CYRa 7242, 7246, 7249, 7252, 7255, 7258, 7261, 7264, 7267
 - \cyra 5526, 5529, 5532, 5535, 5538, 5541, 5544, 5547, 5550, 5558, 5562, 5565, 5569, 5572, 5576, 7239, 7395, 7398, 7401, 7404, 7407, 7410, 7608, 7610, 7614, 7616, 7620, 7622
 - \CYRb 7249, 7258, 7267
 - \cyrb 5532, 5541, 5550, 5562, 5569, 5576, 7398, 7404, 7410, 7610, 7616, 7622
 - \CYRc 7246, 7249, 7255, 7258, 7264, 7267
 - \cyrc 5532, 5541, 5550, 5562, 5569, 5576, 7398, 7404, 7410, 7608, 7610, 7614, 7616, 7620, 7622
 - \cyrd 5526, 5535, 5544, 5558, 5565, 5572, 7239, 7395, 7401, 7407
 - \CYRe 7242, 7252, 7261
 - \cyre 5526, 5529, 5532, 5535, 5538, 5541, 5544, 5547, 5550, 5558, 5565, 5572, 7239, 7397, 7398, 7403, 7404, 7409, 7410, 7607, 7609, 7613, 7615, 7619, 7621
 - \CYRF 5560, 5567, 5574
 - \cyrf 5529, 5538, 5547
 - \CYRg 7242, 7252, 7261
 - \cyrg 5529, 5538, 5547, 5560, 5567, 5574
 - \cyrhrdsn 5526, 5528, 5531, 5535, 5537, 5540, 5544, 5546, 5549, 5558, 5565, 5572
 - \CYRi 7242, 7245, 7246, 7248, 7249, 7252, 7254, 7255, 7257, 7258, 7261, 7263, 7264, 7266, 7267
 - \cyri 5526, 5528, 5529, 5531, 5532, 5535, 5537, 5538, 5540, 5541, 5544, 5546, 5547, 5549, 5550, 5558, 5560, 5562, 5565, 5567, 5569, 5572, 5574, 5576, 7239, 7397, 7398, 7403, 7404, 7409, 7410, 7610, 7616, 7622
 - \cyrii 7606–7609, 7612–7615, 7618–7621
 - \CYRishrt 7246, 7255, 7264
 - \cyrishrt 7608, 7614, 7620
 - \cyrje 7395, 7401, 7407
 - \CYRk 7245, 7248, 7254, 7257, 7263, 7266
 - \cyrk 5528, 5531, 5537, 5540, 5546, 5549, 7397, 7403, 7409, 7607, 7609, 7613, 7615, 7619, 7621
 - \CYRl 7242, 7246, 7249, 7252, 7255, 7258, 7261, 7264, 7267
 - \cyrl 5532, 5541, 5550, 5562, 5569, 5576, 7397, 7398, 7403, 7404, 7409, 7410, 7607–7610, 7613–7616, 7619–7622
 - \cyrm 7606, 7612, 7618
 - \CYRn 7242, 7252, 7261
 - \cyrn 5526, 5529, 5532, 5535, 5538, 5541, 5544, 5547, 5550, 5558, 5565, 5572, 7239
 - \CYRO 7242, 7252, 7261
 - \CYRo 7245, 7248, 7254, 7257, 7263, 7266
 - \cyro 7239
 - \CYRP 7607, 7609, 7613, 7615, 7619, 7621
 - \CYRp 7245, 7248, 7254, 7257, 7263, 7266
 - \cyrp 5528, 5531, 5537, 5540, 5546, 5549
 - \CYRr 7246, 7255, 7264
 - \cyrr 5526, 5529, 5535, 5538, 5544, 5547, 5558, 5560, 5565, 5567, 5572, 5574, 7239, 7395, 7401, 7407, 7607–7609, 7613–7615, 7619–7621
 - \CYRS 5526, 5528, 5531, 5535, 5537, 5540, 5544, 5546, 5549, 5558, 5565, 5572, 7239, 7245, 7248, 7254, 7257, 7263, 7266, 7395, 7397, 7401, 7403, 7407, 7409
 - \CYRs 7245, 7246, 7248, 7254, 7255, 7257, 7263, 7264, 7266
 - \cyrs 5528, 5531, 5537, 5540, 5546, 5549, 7606, 7608, 7612, 7614, 7618, 7620
 - \cyrsftsn 7610, 7616, 7622
 - \CYRT 5562, 5569, 5576, 7398, 7404, 7410
 - \CYRt 7246, 7249, 7255, 7258, 7264, 7267
 - \cyrt 5529, 5532, 5538, 5541, 5547, 5550, 7606, 7608, 7610, 7612, 7614, 7616, 7618, 7620, 7622
 - \cyru 5529, 5538, 5547, 5560, 5567, 5574
 - \CYRv 7242, 7252, 7261
 - \CYRyu 7246, 7255, 7264
 - \cyryu 7608, 7614, 7620
 - \CYRZ 7606, 7612, 7618
 - \cyrzh 5526, 5535, 5544, 5558, 5565, 5572, 7239, 7395, 7401, 7407
 - \cz 7141, 7142, 7145, 7146, 7149, 7150
 - czech (language option) **36, 451**
 - czech.dtx (file) **451**

- czech.mld (file) **223, 451**
- D**
- D'ACHIAN, Serguei **194, 235, 438**
- DAERR, Adrian **235**
- \dal . 5300, 5304, 5308, 5940, 5942, 5944, 5946, 5948, 5950
- DALALYAN, Arnak **194, 235, 438**
- DALY, Patrick W. **235**
- danish (language option) **36, 452**
- danish.dtx (file) **452**
- danish.mld (file) **223, 452**
- dblaccnt (package) **565**
- \DeclareOption 3511, 3515, 3517, 3519, 3520, 3523, 3541, 3549, 3595, 3647, 3822
- \decrementmtc 1, 555, 2333, 4868
- \decrementptc 1, 1239, 4868
- \decrementstc 1, 1920, 4868
- DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas **235, 444**
- DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien **235**
- DEPARDIEU, Éric **235**
- Depth counters
- lofdepth **31, 206, 268, 297, 322**
- lotdepth **31, 206, 268, 280, 297, 322**
- minilofdepth **31, 199, 207, 268, 277**
- minilotdepth **31, 199, 207, 280**
- minitocdepth **20, 26, 27, 31, 41, 63, 68, 80, 199, 207, 269, 274, 546**
- partlofdepth **31, 199, 215, 297, 306**
- partlotdepth **31, 199, 216, 297, 309**
- parttocdepth **20, 31, 79, 199, 216, 297, 303**
- secnumdepth **199, 200**
- sectlofdepth **31, 199, 217, 322, 329**
- sectlotdepth **31, 63, 199, 218, 322, 331**
- secttocdepth **28, 31, 81, 199, 218, 322, 326**
- tocdepth **31, 68, 79–81, 199, 220, 269, 274, 277, 367, 546, 557**
- DE RYDT, Ben **235**
- devanagari (language option) **36, 203, 452, 476**
- devanagari.mld (file) **223, 234, 452, 476, 572**
- devanagari.sty (file) **200, 452**
- \df@mtic 628, 698, 766
- \df@mtilf 590, 595, 705, 929
- \df@mtilt 590, 595, 773, 948
- \df@mtitc 590, 595, 635, 910
- \df@pti 1380, 1453, 1528
- \df@ptilf 1342, 1459, 1633
- \df@ptilt 1342, 1534, 1652
- \df@ptitc 1342, 1386, 1614
- \df@sti 1981, 2048, 2115
- \df@stilf 1948, 2054, 2260
- \df@stilt 1948, 2121, 2279
- \df@stitc 1948, 1988, 2241
- \dimen@ 4775
- \divide 2452
- \dn 5730–5732, 5734–5736, 5738–5740, 6461–6463, 6465–6467, 6469–6471
- \do@mtilf 590, 595, 700–705, 707, 717, 721
- \do@mtilt 590, 595, 768–773, 775, 785, 789
- \do@mtitc 590, 595, 628, 698, 766
- \do@ptilf 1342, 1453, 1465
- \do@ptilt 1342, 1528, 1544
- \do@ptitc 1342, 1380, 1397
- \do@stilf 1948, 2048, 2062
- \do@stilt 1948, 2115, 2129
- \do@stitc 1948, 1981, 1996
- \documentclass 2, 55, 119, 181, 208, 231, 286, 321, 322, 533, 788, 823, 1077, 1078, 1335, 1534, 1586, 1645, 1685, 1733, 1783, 1831, 1883, 2058, 2094, 2129, 2203, 2263, 2312, 2355, 2406, 2442
- \dominilof 1, 61, 125, 340, 682, 895, 900, 933, 1108, 1838, 2229, 2477, 2522, 4156, 4240, 4744, 4894
- \dominilof@ 904, 929
- \dominilot 1, 62, 126, 341, 750, 895, 905, 952, 1109, 1789, 2522, 4165, 4249, 4744, 4894
- \dominilot@ 909, 948
- \dominitoc 1, 12, 216, 242, 339, 612, 795, 895, 914, 1107, 1462, 1539, 1601, 1653, 1701, 1837, 1921, 2069, 2115, 2137, 2275, 2317, 2361, 2522, 4147, 4231, 4744, 4894
- \dominitoc@ 895, 899, 910
- \dopartlof 1, 548, 848, 1111, 1599, 1611, 1637, 2522, 4127, 4211, 4741, 4888
- \dopartlof@ 1612, 1633
- \dopartlot 1, 548, 849, 1112, 1599, 1611, 1656, 2522, 4136, 4220, 4741, 4888
- \dopartlot@ 1613, 1652
- \doparttoc 1, 11, 190, 302, 548, 847, 1110, 1599, 1600, 1611, 1618, 1652, 1700, 2522, 4118, 4202, 4741, 4888
- \doparttoc@ 1611, 1614
- Dorj, Dorjpalam **235**
- \dosectlof 1, 38, 549, 845, 2230, 2238, 2264, 2522, 4102, 4185, 4269, 4747, 4900
- \dosectlof@ 2239, 2260
- \dosectlot 1, 38, 549, 846, 1741, 2234, 2238, 2283, 2522, 4104, 4194, 4278, 4747, 4900
- \dosectlot@ 2240, 2279
- \dosecttoc 1, 549, 844, 2226, 2238, 2245, 2419, 2522, 4176, 4260, 4747, 4900

- \dosecttoc@ 2238, 2241
 - \dotfil 332, 334, 541, 543
 - \dotfill 333, 542
 - dotted (option) 44, 77, 229, 374, 551
 - DUDDING, Lyndon 61, 235
 - duplex2v.pro (file) 200, 223, 225, 226
 - dutch (language option) 36, 453
 - dutch.dtx (file) 435, 453
 - dutch.mld (file) 223, 453
- E**
- \e@mti 590, 628, 698, 766, 910, 929, 948
 - \e@pti 1289, 1296, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1614, 1633, 1652
 - \e@sti 1943, 1981, 2048, 2115, 2241, 2260, 2279
 - ËEHAJA, Marko 235, 509
 - EIKHOUT, Victor 235
 - ELS, Danie 235
 - \em 2188, 2195
 - emk (script) 200, 204, 208, 217, 223–226, 561
 - \emph 1963, 1965, 2033, 2044
 - \empty 472–474, 478–483, 485–487, 491–496, 498–500, 504–509, 2098, 2099, 2107, 2108, 3544, 4918, 4953, 4956, 4957, 5008–5034, 5065, 5076, 5087, 5097, 5099, 5101–5107
 - en-bst.bst (file) 200
 - en-mtc.bst (file) 223, 224, 226, 234, 572
 - \endlist 611, 1358, 1964
 - \endmtc@verse 611
 - \endmtchideinmainlof 153
 - \endmtchideinmainlot 161, 1769, 1817
 - \endptc@verse 1348
 - \endstc@verse 1964
 - english (language option) 36, 77, 406, 436, 439, 446, 448, 454, 493, 516, 518, 554
 - english.dtx (file) 454, 455
 - english.mld (file) 35–38, 145, 186, 222, 223, 377, 378, 434, 436, 439, 446, 448, 454, 493, 516, 518, 550, 552, 572, 574
 - english1 (language option) 36, 454
 - english1.mld (file) 223, 454, 567
 - english2 (language option) 36, 455
 - english2.mld (file) 223, 455, 567
 - \enlargethispage 1
 - Environments
 - abstract 50, 67
 - appendices 60, 100, 194, 210
 - bibunit 195
 - figure 196, 218
 - filecontents 41, 202, 372, 434
 - margincap 206
 - minipage 130, 546
 - mtc@verse 271, 274, 277, 278, 280, 281, 356, 357
 - mtchideinmainlof 65, 84, 175, 184, 193, 210, 231, 368, 425, 555, 558, 559, 568, 569
 - mtchideinmainlot 65, 84, 176, 185, 193, 210, 231, 368, 425, 555, 558, 559, 568, 569
 - mtchideinmaintoc 63, 84, 111, 112, 176, 185, 193, 210, 231, 367, 425, 555, 568
 - multicols 87, 114
 - pageUn 114
 - ptc@verse 301, 303, 304, 306, 309, 356, 357
 - quote 562
 - samepage 273, 274, 276, 278, 279, 281, 302, 305, 308, 325, 328, 330, 548
 - stc@verse 324, 326, 329, 331, 356, 357, 557
 - subappendices 194
 - table 196, 218
 - tabular 273, 276, 279, 303, 306, 309, 325, 328, 331
 - verse 33, 271, 301, 324, 546
 - wrapfigure 130, 211, 221
 - wratable 221
 - abstract 1, 180
 - appendices 1
 - filecontents 5207
 - mtc@verse 601, 654, 672, 724, 745, 792, 813, 2917, 2932, 2947
 - mtchideinmainlof 1, 3303, 5096
 - mtchideinmainlot 1, 3336, 5096
 - mtchideinmaintoc 1, 3289, 5096
 - ptc@verse 1348, 1411, 1413, 1484, 1490, 1559, 1565, 2912, 2927, 2942
 - samepage 628, 672, 698, 745, 766, 813, 1380, 1427, 1453, 1501, 1528, 1576, 1981, 2027, 2048, 2094, 2115, 2162
 - stc@verse 1954, 2013, 2015, 2079, 2085, 2146, 2152, 2922, 2937, 2952
 - tabular 628, 698, 766, 1397, 1465, 1544, 1996, 2062, 2129
 - ESFAHBOD, Behdad 235, 459
 - esperant (language option) 36, 455, 456
 - esperant.mld (file) 223, 455, 456
 - esperanto (language option) 36, 456
 - esperanto.dtx (file) 455
 - esperanto.mld (file) 223, 456
 - ESSER, Thomas 235
 - estonian (language option) 36, 456, 552
 - estonian.dtx (file) 456
 - estonian.mld (file) 223, 456

- \eth@doaltchar 5869, 5870, 5872, 5873, 5877,
5878, 5880, 5881, 5885, 5886, 5888,
5889
- ethiop (package) **41, 434, 457, 458**
- ethiopia (language option) **36, 457, 458**
- ethiopia.mld (file) **223, 457, 458**
- ethiopian (language option) **36, 200, 458**
- ethiopian.mld (file) **223**
- ethiopian2 (language option) **36, 458**
- ethiopian2.mld (file) **223, 458, 565**
- ethopian.mld (file) **458**
- EVERITT, Karl F. **235, 552**
- Examples
 - mtc-2c.pdf **226**
 - mtc-2c.tex . . **87, 209, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-2nd.pdf **226**
 - mtc-2nd.tex . **88, 209, 223, 224, 226, 249,**
463, 573
 - mtc-add.bib **209, 223, 573**
 - mtc-add.pdf **226**
 - mtc-add.tex . . **48, 89, 91, 209, 210, 223,**
224, 226, 573
 - mtc-ads.pdf **226**
 - mtc-ads.tex . **48, 94, 209, 210, 223, 224,**
226, 573
 - mtc-amm.pdf **226**
 - mtc-amm.tex **100, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-apx.pdf **226**
 - mtc-apx.tex . **64, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226,**
569, 573
 - mtc-art.pdf **226**
 - mtc-art.tex **100, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-bk.pdf **226**
 - mtc-bk.tex . **106, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-bo.pdf **226**
 - mtc-bo.tex . **112, 210, 223, 224, 226, 570,**
573
 - mtc-ch0.pdf **226**
 - mtc-ch0.tex **117, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-cri.pdf **226**
 - mtc-cri.tex **118, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-fo1.pdf **226**
 - mtc-fo1.tex **119, 120, 210, 223, 224, 226,**
573
 - mtc-fo2.pdf **226**
 - mtc-fo2.tex **120, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-gap.pdf **226**
 - mtc-gap.tex . **73, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226,**
573
 - mtc-hi1.pdf **226**
 - mtc-hi1.tex . **65, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226,**
573
 - mtc-hi2.pdf **226**
 - mtc-hi2.tex . **66, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226,**
573
 - mtc-hia.pdf **226**
 - mtc-hia.tex **121, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-hir.pdf **226**
 - mtc-hir.tex **122, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-hop.pdf **226**
 - mtc-hop.tex **123, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-liv.pdf **226**
 - mtc-liv.tex **124, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-mem.pdf **226**
 - mtc-mem.tex **128, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-mml.pdf **226**
 - mtc-mml.tex **129, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-mu.pdf **226**
 - mtc-mu.tex . **130, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-sbf.pdf **226**
 - mtc-sbf.tex **132, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-scr.pdf **226**
 - mtc-scr.tex **134, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-syn.pdf **226**
 - mtc-syn.tex **135, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-tbi.pdf **226**
 - mtc-tbi.tex **136, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-tlc.pdf **226**
 - mtc-tlc.tex **138, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 - mtc-tlo.pdf **226**
 - mtc-tlo.tex . **75, 86, 211, 223, 224, 226,**
574
 - mtc-tsf.pdf **226**
 - mtc-tsf.tex **138, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
- \ExecuteOptions 4636
- \ext@subfigure 2209
- Extensions
 - .F **51, 191, 275**
 - .G **51, 191, 311**
 - .H **51, 192, 334**
 - .M **51, 192, 272**
 - .P **51, 192, 311**
 - .S **51, 192, 334**
 - .T **51, 193, 279**
 - .U **51, 193, 311**
 - .V **51, 193, 334**
 - .aux **52, 55, 57, 60, 191, 195, 248**
 - .bst **220**
 - .cls **191**
 - .dtx **41, 191, 192, 225, 232, 434, 508, 557**
 - .ins **191, 192, 225, 232**
 - .lan **202**
 - .lof . **26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 142, 169, 170,**
192, 195, 256, 258–260, 285, 292, 311,
318, 334, 341, 425, 552

- .log . . . 29, 31, 48, 49, 52, 54, 77, 136, 141, 142, 153, 159, 190, 192, 203, 243, 245, 260, 382, 405, 406, 434, 554, 575
 - .lot . . . 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 142, 169, 170, 192, 195, 256, 258–260, 285, 294, 295, 311, 321, 334, 343, 425, 550, 552
 - .maf . . . 49, 77, 144, 192, 206, 232, 376, 408, 560
 - .mld 19, 35, 36, 41, 67, 71, 72, 78, 145, 153, 159, 176, 185, 187, 192, 194, 197, 222, 226, 228, 229, 231, 232, 234, 242, 372, 376–378, 430, 433, 434, 463, 550, 552, 554, 558, 559, 564, 567, 574, 575
 - .mlf 26, 51, 192, 275
 - .mlo 19, 36, 41, 67, 145, 154, 159, 177, 192, 197, 198, 202, 222, 226, 232, 234, 242, 372, 376, 378, 430, 434, 490, 559, 567, 574, 575
 - .mlt 26, 51, 192, 279
 - .mtc . . . 26, 48, 51, 55, 56, 58, 192, 272, 408, 546
 - .pdf 224
 - .plf 29, 51, 192, 311
 - .plt 29, 51, 192, 311
 - .ptc 29, 51, 192, 311
 - .slf 28, 51, 192, 334
 - .slt 28, 51, 192, 334
 - .stc 28, 51, 192, 334
 - .sty . . . 193, 215, 222, 224, 225, 228, 550
 - .tar 225
 - .tex 142, 193
 - .tgz 225
 - .toc 26, 47, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 142, 169–171, 193, 195, 228, 256, 258–260, 267, 268, 284, 289, 311, 316, 334, 339, 425, 547, 550, 552
 - .zip 225
- F**
- \f@rhdr 5160, 5166, 5168, 5176, 5204
 - \f@rtoc . . . 5159, 5164, 5193, 5196, 5199, 5202, 5204
 - \fa 5298, 5302, 5306, 5940, 5944, 5948
 - FABIAN, Mike 235
 - FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 235
 - \fake@starttoc 510
 - \fakelistoffigures . . . 510, 851, 1114, 1840, 4082, 4304, 4339, 4374, 4868
 - \fakelistoftables . . . 510, 852, 1115, 4082, 4315, 4350, 4385, 4868
 - \faketableofcontents 191, 303, 510, 850, 1113, 1463, 2420, 4082, 4293, 4328, 4363, 4868
 - farsi (language option) 194, 201
 - farsi.ldf (file) 194, 460
 - farsi.sty (file) 201, 459
 - farsi1 (language option) 36, 459
 - farsi1.mld (file) 223, 459, 559
 - farsi1.mlo (file) 223, 459, 559
 - farsi2 (language option) 36, 459
 - farsi2.mld (file) 223, 459, 559
 - farsi2.mlo (file) 223, 459, 559
 - farsi3 (language option) 36, 460
 - farsi3.mld (file) 194, 223, 460, 571
 - FarsiT_EX (package) 41, 201, 434, 459
 - \fbox 2239, 2244, 2247, 2249, 2461
 - \fboxrule 2459
 - \fboxsep 2459
 - FEAR, Simon 235
 - FENN, Jürgen 235
 - FESSLER, Jeff 235
 - \figbox . . . 2460, 2490, 2495, 2500, 2505, 2510, 2515, 2520
 - figure (environment) 196, 218
 - \figure 1102, 1807, 2420
 - \figure@mtcck . . . 2713, 2719, 2729, 2735, 2749, 2756, 2772
 - filecontents (environment) . 41, 202, 372, 434
 - filecontents (environment) 5207
 - Files
 - /tmp/'whoami'.imk 224, 225
 - /tmp/'whoami'.rmk 225, 226
 - /tmp/'whoami'.tmk 224–226
 - /tmp/'whoami'/OLD 571
 - acadian.mld 223, 434
 - acadien.mld 223, 435
 - afrikaan.mld 223, 435
 - afrikaans.mld 223, 435
 - albanian.dtx 436
 - albanian.mld 223, 436
 - american.mld 223, 378, 436, 552
 - amsart.cls 194
 - amsbook.cls 194
 - amsproc.cls 194
 - arab.mld 194, 223, 436, 438, 550
 - arab2.mld 194, 223, 437, 568
 - arabi.mld 194, 223, 437, 571
 - arabic.ldf 194
 - arabic.mld 194, 223, 438
 - armenian.mld 194, 223, 438
 - australian.mld 223, 439
 - austrian.mld 223, 439
 - bahasa.dtx 440
 - bahasa.mld 223, 439
 - bahasai.mld 223, 439, 440, 478
 - bahasam.dtx 440
 - bahasam.mld 223, 440, 489, 492
 - bangla.mld 223, 441

- basque.dtx 441
 basque.mld 223, 441
 Bg5.cap 450
 Bg5.cpx 450
 bicig.mld 223, 442, 515
 bicig2.mld 223, 442, 515, 561
 bicig3.mld 223, 443, 516, 568
 bithe.mld 223, 444, 492, 561
 book.cls 67
 brazil.mld 223, 444, 445
 brazilian.mld 223, 445, 558
 breton.dtx 445
 breton.mld 223, 445
 british.mld 223, 446, 558
 bulgarian.dtx 446
 bulgarian.mld 223, 446, 552
 bulgarianb.mld 41, 223, 447, 556
 buryat.mld 223, 447
 buryat2.mld 223, 448, 568
 canadian.mld 223, 448
 canadien.mld 223, 449
 captions.dn 476
 castillan.mld 223, 449
 castillian.mld 223, 449, 558
 catalan.dtx 449
 catalan.mld 223, 449
 CATALOG 196, 223, 224, 226, 575
 chinese1.mld 223, 450, 555
 chinese1.mlo 223, 450
 chinese2.mld 223, 450, 555
 chinese2.mlo 223, 450, 451
 cmcyralt.sty 505
 croatian.dtx 451
 croatian.mld 223, 451
 czech.dtx 451
 czech.mld 223, 451
 danish.dtx 452
 danish.mld 223, 452
 devanagari.mld 223, 234, 452, 476, 572
 devanagari.sty 200, 452
 duplex2v.pro 200, 223, 225, 226
 dutch.dtx 435, 453
 dutch.mld 223, 453
 en-bst.bst 200
 en-mtc.bst 223, 224, 226, 234, 572
 english.dtx 454, 455
 english.mld . 35–38, 145, 186, 222, 223,
 377, 378, 434, 436, 439, 446, 448, 454,
 493, 516, 518, 550, 552, 572, 574
 english1.mld 223, 454, 567
 english2.mld 223, 455, 567
 esperanto.mld 223, 455, 456
 esperanto.dtx 455
 esperanto.mld 223, 456
 estonian.dtx 456
 estonian.mld 223, 456
 ethiopia.mld 223, 457, 458
 ethiopian.mld 223
 ethiopian2.mld 223, 458, 565
 ethopian.mld 458
 farsi.ldf 194, 460
 farsi.sty 201, 459
 farsi1.mld 223, 459, 559
 farsi1.mlo 223, 459, 559
 farsi2.mld 223, 459, 559
 farsi2.mlo 223, 459, 559
 farsi3.mld 194, 223, 460, 571
 finnish.dtx 460, 461
 finnish.mld 223, 460
 finnish2.mld 223, 461, 557
 fminitoc.bib .. 202, 223, 224, 226, 554
 fminitoc.dtx 59, 202, 222–226, 412, 558
 fminitoc.ins 224
 fminitoc.ist .. 202, 223, 224, 226, 558
 fminitoc.lan .. 202, 223, 224, 226, 412
 fminitoc.pdf .. 202, 223, 224, 226, 554
 fminitoc.ps 202
 fr-mtc.bst . 203, 223, 224, 226, 234, 572
 franc.sty 223
 francais.mld 223, 461
 frbib.sty 223
 french.mld 35, 37, 38, 223, 434, 435, 449,
 461, 463, 464, 558, 564
 french1.mld 223, 462, 567
 french2.mld . 88, 223, 249, 463, 567, 570
 frenchb.dtx 461–463
 frenchb.mld 223, 463
 frenchle.mld 223, 464
 frenchpro.mld 223, 464
 frnew.sty 223
 frplain1.bst 234, 572
 galician.dtx 464
 galician.mld 223, 464
 german.mld 223, 439, 465
 germanb.dtx 465
 germanb.mld 223, 465
 germanb2.mld 223, 466, 560
 greek-mono.mld 194, 223, 467, 555
 greek-polydemo.mld . 194, 223, 468, 555
 greek-polykatha.mld 194, 223, 469, 555
 greek.dtx 466
 greek.mld 223, 466
 guarani.ldf 203, 470
 guarani.mld 223, 470, 559
 hangul-u8.mld 223, 473
 hangul-u8.mlo 223, 473
 hangul.cap 470
 hangul.cpx 471

- hangul1.mld 223, 470, 555
 hangul1.mlo 223, 470
 hangul2.cap 471
 hangul2.cpx 472
 hangul2.mld 223, 471, 555
 hangul2.mlo 223, 471
 hangul3.mld 223, 471, 555
 hangul3.mlo 223, 471
 hangul4.mld 223, 472, 555
 hangul4.mlo 223, 472
 hanja-u8.mld 223, 474
 hanja-u8.mlo 223, 474
 hanja.cap 474
 hanja.cpx 473
 hanja1.mld 223, 473, 555
 hanja1.mlo 223, 473
 hanja2.mld 223, 474, 555
 hanja2.mlo 223, 474
 hebrew.dtx 475
 hebrew.mld 194, 223, 475, 552
 hebrew2.mld 194, 223, 475
 hide.tex 569
 hide1.tex 569
 hide2.tex 569
 hindi-modern.mld .. 223, 234, 476, 572
 hindi.mld 223, 234, 476, 572
 hungarian.mld 223, 477
 icelandic.dtx 477
 icelandic.mld 223, 477, 552
 indon.mld 223, 478
 indonesian.mld 223, 478
 INSTALL 204, 223, 224, 226, 231, 234, 556,
 569, 575
 interlingua.dtx 478
 interlingua.mld 223, 478
 irish.dtx 479
 irish.mld 223, 479, 566
 italian.dtx 480
 italian.mld 223, 480, 564
 italian2.mld 223, 480
 japanase6.mlo 234
 japanese.mld 41, 223, 481
 japanese.mlo 223, 481
 japanese2.mld 223, 481, 555
 japanese2.mlo 223, 481
 japanese3.mld 223, 482, 555, 564
 japanese3.mlo 223, 482
 japanese4.mld 223, 482, 555
 japanese4.mlo 223, 482
 japanese5.mld 223, 483, 555
 japanese5.mlo 223, 483
 japanese6.mld 223, 234, 483, 574
 japanese6.mlo 223, 483, 574
 JIS.cap 481
 JIS.cpx 482
 kanlel.sty 484
 kannada.mld 223, 484, 566
 khalkha.mld 223, 484, 561
 lamed.eps 223, 224, 226, 568
 lamed.pdf 223, 224, 226, 568
 lamed.tex 223, 224, 226, 568
 latex.fmt 57
 latex.tex 57, 548
 latin.dtx 484, 485
 latin.mld 223, 484, 552
 latin2.mld 223, 485, 557
 latvian.ldf 485
 latvian.mld ... 194, 223, 485, 486, 555
 letton.mld 223, 486, 555
 lhcyralt.sty 506
 lhcyrkoi.sty 507
 lhcyrwin.sty 507
 lithuanian.ldf 486
 lithuanian.mld 223, 486, 564
 lowersorbian.mld 223, 487, 565
 lsorbian.dtx 487
 lsorbian.mld 223, 487, 566
 magyar.dtx 488, 489
 magyar.mld 223, 477, 488, 567
 magyar2.mld 223, 488, 557, 567
 magyar3.mld 223, 489, 564, 567
 malay.mld 223, 489
 malayalam-keli.mld ... 223, 490, 558
 malayalam-omega.mld ... 223, 490, 566
 malayalam-omega.mlo ... 223, 490, 566
 malayalam-rachana.mld . 223, 491, 558
 malayalam-rachana2.mld 223, 491, 558
 manju.mld 223, 492, 561
 memoir.cls 207, 253
 meyalu.mld 223, 492
 minitoc-hyper.sty 207
 minitoc-texmf.zip . 208, 225, 226, 234,
 575
 minitoc-texmk.zip 223
 minitoc.bib ... 207, 223, 224, 226, 554
 minitoc.bug . 49, 54, 207, 223, 224, 226,
 232, 233, 554, 559, 560, 564, 565, 568
 minitoc.dtx . 59, 202, 204, 207, 222–226,
 232, 372, 412, 570
 minitoc.ins 41, 202–204, 208, 211,
 222–224, 226, 372, 412, 434, 558, 570
 minitoc.ist ... 208, 223, 224, 226, 557
 minitoc.l 208, 222–224, 226, 561
 minitoc.lan 202, 208, 223, 224, 226, 412
 minitoc.pdf 208, 223, 224, 226, 226
 minitoc.pre 208, 223, 224, 226, 561, 566
 minitoc.ps 208
 minitoc.sty ... 208, 222, 223, 226, 243

- minitoc.sum 208, 223, 224, 226
- minitoc.tex 550, 554
- mongol.mld 223, 492
- mtc-cri.log 118
- mtcglo.ist 560
- mtcmess.sty 222, 223, 226
- mtcnorsk.sty 550
- mtcnynorsk.sty 550
- mtcoff.sty 222, 223, 226, 556
- mtcpatchmem.sty 222, 223, 226
- mtcswedish.sty 549
- naustrian.mld 223, 493
- newzealand.mld 223, 493
- ngerman.mld 223, 493
- ngermanb.dtx 494
- ngermanb.mld 223, 493, 494
- ngermanb2.mld 223, 494, 560
- norsk.dtx 495, 496
- norsk.mld 223, 495
- norsk2.mld 223, 495, 560
- nynorsk.mld 223, 496
- nynorsk2.mld 223, 496, 560
- OLD 571
- omega-greek.ldf 467–469
- omega-polish.ldf 497
- omega-russian.ldf 502
- omega-spanish.ldf 512
- omega.sty 194
- placeins.sty 29
- placeins.txt 29, 216
- plain.bst 200, 203
- plainurl.bst 234, 572
- polish.dtx 497
- polish.mld 223, 497
- polish2.mld 194, 223, 497, 555
- polski.dtx 498
- polski.mld 223, 498, 566
- portuges.dtx 444, 499
- portuges.mld 223, 498, 557, 558
- portugues.mld 557, 558
- portuguese.mld 223, 498, 499, 558
- rapport.doc 514
- README 223, 224, 226
- romanian.dtx 499, 500
- romanian.mld 223, 499
- romanian2.mld 223, 500, 564, 572
- romanian3.mld 223, 500, 564, 572
- russian-cca.mld 223, 505, 567
- russian-cca.mlo 223, 505
- russian-cca1.mld 223, 505, 567
- russian-cca1.mlo 223, 505
- russian-lh.mld 223, 506, 567
- russian-lh.mlo 223, 506
- russian-lhcyralt.mld 223, 506, 567
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mld 223, 507, 567
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo 223, 507
- russian-lhcyrwin.mld 223, 507, 567
- russian-lhcyrwin.mlo 223, 507
- russian.def 504
- russian.mld 223, 501
- russian.sty 505, 506
- russian2m.ldf 501
- russian2m.mld 194, 223, 501, 555
- russian2o.mld 194, 223, 502, 555
- russianb.dtx 447, 503
- russianb.mld 223, 503, 566
- russianc.mld 223, 504
- samin.dtx 508
- samin.mld 223, 508, 552
- scottish.dtx 508
- scottish.mld 223, 508
- serbian.dtx 509
- serbian.mld 223, 509, 565
- serbianc.mld 41, 223, 509, 555, 565
- SJIS.cap 482
- SJIS.cpx 483
- slovak.dtx 510
- slovak.mld 223, 510
- slovene.dtx 510
- slovene.mld 223, 510
- spanish.dtx 511–513
- spanish.mld 223, 449, 511, 566
- spanish2.mld 223, 512, 557
- spanish3.mld 194, 223, 512, 559
- spanish4.mld 223, 513, 564
- swedish.dtx 513
- swedish.mld 223, 513
- swedish2.mld 223, 514, 568
- thai.ldf 514
- thai.mld 223, 514, 555
- thai.mlo 223, 514
- thaicjk.ldf 514
- titletoc.sty 219
- tocloft.pdf 75
- TODO 220, 223, 224, 226
- turkish.dtx 515
- turkish.mld 223, 515
- u8hangul.mld 566
- u8hangul.mlo 566
- u8hangul.tex 473
- u8hanja.mld 566
- u8hanja.mlo 566
- u8hanja.tex 474
- uighur.mld 223, 515, 569
- uighur2.mld 223, 515, 569
- uighur3.mld 223, 516, 569
- UKenglish.mld 223, 516, 558

- ukraineb.dtx 516
 - ukraineb.mld 223, 516
 - ukrainian.mld 223, 516, 565
 - uppersorbian.mld 223, 517, 518, 565
 - USenglish.mld 223, 518, 558
 - usorbian.dtx 517
 - usorbian.mld 223, 518, 566
 - vietnam.mld 223, 518, 519, 550
 - vietnamese.mld 223, 519
 - welsh.dtx 519
 - welsh.mld 223, 519
 - while.tip 254
 - win-gn.def 470
 - xalx.mld 223, 484, 520, 561
 - xalx2.mld 223, 520, 568
 - xalx3.mld 223, 521, 568
 - \finalmem 6391, 6393, 6398, 6400, 6405, 6407
 - \finalnun 6390, 6397, 6404
 - finnish (language option) 36, 460
 - finnish.dtx (file) 460, 461
 - finnish.mld (file) 223, 460
 - finnish2 (language option) 36, 461
 - finnish2.mld (file) 223, 461, 557
 - \firstchapteris 1, 555, 4614, 4967
 - \firstpartis 1, 1239, 4607, 4967
 - \firstsectionis 1, 1920, 4621, 4967
 - FISCHER, Ulrike 235
 - flafter (package) 29, 216, 407, 568
 - FLIPO, Daniel 235, 461–463
 - float (package) 29
 - \FloatBarrier 1, 938, 951, 993, 1019, 1032, 1050, 1053
 - floatrow (package) 29
 - flsection (option) 230, 553
 - flsectionb (option) 230, 553
 - \flushbottom 838, 1093
 - FLYNN, Peter 235
 - fminitoc.bib (file) 202, 223, 224, 226, 554
 - fminitoc.dtx (file) 59, 202, 222–226, 412, 558
 - fminitoc.ins (file) 224
 - fminitoc.ist (file) 202, 223, 224, 226, 558
 - fminitoc.lan (file) 202, 223, 224, 226, 412
 - fminitoc.pdf (file) 202, 223, 224, 226, 554
 - fminitoc.ps (file) 202
 - fmk (script) 202, 204, 217, 223–226, 561
 - fncychap (package) 50, 72, 85, 173, 202, 233, 250, 399, 569
 - fo1.tex (old example document) 570, 573
 - fo2.tex (old example document) 570, 573
 - \footnotesize 2416
 - Fox, Jim 235
 - \FR 5940–5942, 5944–5946, 5948–5950
 - fr-mtc.bst (file) 203, 223, 224, 226, 234, 572
 - franc (package) 88, 203, 224, 226
 - franc.sty (file) 223
 - francais (language option) 36, 461
 - francais.mld (file) 223, 461
 - frbib (package) 203, 224, 226
 - frbib.sty (file) 223
 - french (language option) 36, 449, 461, 463, 464, 553, 554
 - french.mld (file) 35, 37, 38, 223, 434, 435, 449, 461, 463, 464, 558, 564
 - french1 (language option) 36, 462
 - french1.mld (file) 223, 462, 567
 - french2 (language option) 36, 88, 209, 463
 - french2.mld (file) 88, 223, 249, 463, 567, 570
 - frenchb (language option) 36, 463
 - frenchb.dtx (file) 461–463
 - frenchb.mld (file) 223, 463
 - frenchle (language option) 36, 464, 553
 - frenchle.mld (file) 223, 464
 - frenchpro (language option) 36, 464, 553
 - frenchpro.mld (file) 223, 464
 - frnew (package) 88, 203, 224, 226
 - frnew.sty (file) 223
 - \frontmatter 215
 - frplain1.bst (file) 234, 572
 - \fup 1906, 1930, 1932, 1999
 - FÜRNISS, Danny M. 235
 - \fussy 924, 1190
- G**
- galician (language option) 36, 464, 511
 - galician.dtx (file) 464
 - galician.mld (file) 223, 464
 - gaps 73
 - gaps.tex (old example document) 569, 573
 - GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 235
 - GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 235
 - geometry (package) 112
 - german (language option) 36, 439, 465, 466
 - german.mld (file) 223, 439, 465
 - germanb (language option) 36, 465, 493
 - germanb.dtx (file) 465
 - germanb.mld (file) 223, 465
 - germanb2 (language option) 36, 466
 - germanb2.mld (file) 223, 466, 560
 - GHODSI, Mohammad 235, 434, 459
 - GLEISZNER, Markus 235, 563
 - \gobbleopt@ 4887, 4888–4906
 - GONTSHARUK, Vitali 235
 - \goodap 2213
 - GOOSSENS, Michel 235, 549
 - GOUTELLE, Mathieu 235
 - GRANT, Fraser 235, 479, 508
 - GRAY, Norman 220, 235
 - greek (language option) 36, 466

- greek-mono (language option) **36, 41, 467**
greek-mono.mld (file) **194, 223, 467, 555**
greek-polydemo (language option) . **36, 41, 468**
greek-polydemo.mld (file) . **194, 223, 468, 555**
greek-polykatha (language option) **36, 41, 469**
greek-polykatha.mld (file) **194, 223, 469, 555**
greek.dtx (file) **466**
greek.mld (file) **223, 466**
GRENON, Loïc **235**
GROT, Sébastien **235**
guarani (package) **41, 203, 434, 470**
guarani (language option) **36, 203, 470**
guarani.lfd (file) **203, 470**
guarani.mld (file) **223, 470, 559**
GUIGNARD, Micael **235**
GUNN, Marion **235, 479**
- H**
- HL_AT_EX (package) **203, 434, 473, 474**
\ha 5298, 5302, 5306, 5940, 5944, 5948
HAGEN, Hans **235**
HAMZI, Boumediene **235**
hangcaption (package) **50, 76, 85, 174, 203, 234, 251, 400, 547, 574**
hangul-u8 (language option) **36, 473**
hangul-u8.mld (file) **223, 473**
hangul-u8.mlo (file) **223, 473**
hangul.cap (file) **470**
hangul.cpx (file) **471**
hangul1 (language option) **36, 470**
hangul1.mld (file) **223, 470, 555**
hangul1.mlo (file) **223, 470**
hangul2 (language option) **36, 471**
hangul2.cap (file) **471**
hangul2.cpx (file) **472**
hangul2.mld (file) **223, 471, 555**
hangul2.mlo (file) **223, 471**
hangul3 (language option) **36, 471**
hangul3.mld (file) **223, 471, 555**
hangul3.mlo (file) **223, 471**
hangul4 (language option) **36, 472**
hangul4.mld (file) **223, 472, 555**
hangul4.mlo (file) **223, 472**
hanja-u8 (language option) **36, 474**
hanja-u8.mld (file) **223, 474**
hanja-u8.mlo (file) **223, 474**
hanja.cap (file) **474**
hanja.cpx (file) **473**
hanja1 (language option) **36, 473**
hanja1.mld (file) **223, 473, 555**
hanja1.mlo (file) **223, 473**
hanja2 (language option) **36, 474**
hanja2.mld (file) **223, 474, 555**
hanja2.mlo (file) **223, 474**
- HAPPEL, Patrick **235**
HARALAMBOUS, Yannis **214, 235**
HARIN, Alexander **235, 505**
HARRIS, Russel L. **235**
\hb@xt@ 861
HEAP, Danny **235**
\hebaief 6421, 6424, 6431, 6434, 6441, 6444
\hebayin 6418, 6428, 6438
\hebbet 6424, 6434, 6444
\hebfinaimem 6418, 6421, 6428, 6431, 6438, 6441
\hebfinaimnun 6417, 6427, 6437
\hebkaf 6417, 6427, 6437
\heblamed 6424, 6434, 6444
\hebmeme 6420, 6423, 6430, 6433, 6440, 6443
\hebnum 6418, 6428, 6438
\hebreah 6420, 6421, 6423, 6430, 6431, 6433, 6440, 6441, 6443
hebrew (language option) **36, 194, 475**
hebrew.dtx (file) **475**
hebrew.mld (file) **194, 223, 475, 552**
hebrew2 (language option) **36, 475**
hebrew2.mld (file) **194, 223, 475**
\hebshin 6420, 6423, 6430, 6433, 6440, 6443
\hebtav 6417, 6420, 6423, 6424, 6427, 6430, 6433, 6434, 6437, 6440, 6443, 6444
\hebtet 6424, 6434, 6444
\hebvav 6417, 6421, 6424, 6427, 6431, 6434, 6437, 6441, 6444
\hebyod 6418, 6420, 6421, 6423, 6428, 6430, 6431, 6433, 6438, 6440, 6441, 6443
HEIDER, André **235**
HEIN, Thorsten **235**
HELLMAN, Sten **235, 513**
HELSTRUP, Haavard **235, 495, 496**
HENEL, Yvon **235**
HENNIG, Stephan **51, 69, 85, 235**
HENRY, Florence **235**
HERBORN, Stephen **235**
hia.tex (old example document) **571, 573**
hide.tex (file) **569**
hide1.tex (file) **569**
hide1.tex (old example document) **573**
hide2.tex (file) **569**
hide2.tex (old example document) **573**
hindi (language option) **36, 203, 476**
hindi-modern (language option) . **36, 203, 476**
hindi-modern.mld (file) **223, 234, 476, 572**
hindi.mld (file) **223, 234, 476, 572**
hints (option) **49–51, 54, 67, 69, 71–73, 76, 77, 147, 153, 159, 203, 214, 231, 232, 244, 245, 247, 382, 391, 406, 409, 554, 557, 566**
hir.tex (old example document) **571, 573**

- `\hline` 651, 721, 789, 1397, 1465, 1544, 1996, 2062, 2129
 HØGHOLM, Morten 235
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil 235, 495, 496
 hop.tex (old example document) ... 571, 573
 HOSEK, Don 235, 557
`\hrule` ... 570, 1444, 2567–2569, 2576–2578, 2585–2587
 Hu, Yufan 235, 546
`\Huge` 1375, 1377, 1384
`\huge` 1912
 hungarian (language option) 36, 477, 488
 hungarian.mld (file) 223, 477
 HUSEBY, Dave W. 235
 hyperref (package) 49, 59, 69, 85, 113, 134, 144, 159–161, 163, 203, 207, 220, 221, 226, 230, 232, 249, 287, 388, 551, 561, 564
 hypertex (package) 220
- I**
- icelandic (language option) 36, 477
 icelandic.dtx (file) 477
 icelandic.mld (file) 223, 477, 552
 idxtotoc (option of KOMA) 47
`\if@dominilof@used@` . 95, 929, 4141, 4227
`\if@dominilot@used@` . 95, 948, 4141, 4227
`\if@dominitoc@used@` . 95, 895, 910, 4141, 4227
`\if@dopartlof@used@` 89, 1633, 4112, 4198
`\if@dopartlot@used@` 89, 1652, 4112, 4198
`\if@doparttoc@used@` 89, 1614, 4112, 4198
`\if@dosectlof@used@` 101, 2260, 4094, 4170, 4256
`\if@dosectlot@used@` 101, 2279, 4094, 4170, 4256
`\if@dosecttoc@used@` 101, 2241, 4170, 4256
`\if@filesw` 123, 519
`\if@firstchapteris@used@` . 107, 555, 4610
`\if@firstpartis@used@` ... 107, 1239, 4603
`\if@firstsectionis@used@` 107, 4617
`\if@longextensions` 615
`\if@longextensions@` 340, 615, 685, 753, 981, 1012, 1090, 1151, 1360, 1433, 1507, 1682, 1696, 1795, 1857, 1966, 2032, 2099, 2311, 2339, 2408, 2469, 3520, 4390, 4671, 5035
`\if@mainmatter` 5172, 5190
`\if@minilof@used@` 95, 683, 4141, 4227, 4320
`\if@minilot@used@` 95, 751, 4141, 4227, 4320
`\if@minitoc@used@` 95, 613, 4141, 4227, 4320
`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` 3824
`\if@mtc@alnumsec@loaded@` . . . 39, 168, 4486
`\if@mtc@alnumsec@loaded@a@` . 39, 168, 4486
`\if@mtc@captcont@loaded@` . . . 39, 170, 4495
`\if@mtc@captcont@loaded@a@` . 39, 170, 4495
`\if@mtc@captionII@loaded@` . . 39, 174, 4513
`\if@mtc@captionII@loaded@a@` 39, 174, 4513
`\if@mtc@caption@loaded@` . . . 39, 172, 4504
`\if@mtc@caption@loaded@a@` . . 39, 172, 4504
`\if@mtc@ccaption@loaded@` . . . 39, 176, 4522
`\if@mtc@ccaption@loaded@a@` . 39, 176, 4522
`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` 79, 4141, 4227, 4320, 4390
`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` . . . 85, 1918, 2521
`\if@mtc@checkfiles` 235, 3515
`\if@mtc@empty@minilof@` 68, 690, 4568
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@` 73, 758, 4575
`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` 68, 620, 4561
`\if@mtc@empty@partlof@` 68, 4547
`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` 68, 4554
`\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@` 68, 4540
`\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@` 68, 4589
`\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@` 68, 4596
`\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@` 74, 4582
`\if@mtc@FE` 235, 620, 628, 690, 698, 758, 766, 1367, 1380, 1440, 1453, 1515, 1528, 1973, 1981, 2039, 2048, 2106, 2115
`\if@mtc@fncychap@loaded@` . . . 39, 158, 4441
`\if@mtc@fncychap@loaded@a@` . 39, 158, 4441
`\if@mtc@Hgc@loaded@` 39, 160, 4450
`\if@mtc@Hgc@loaded@a@` 39, 160, 4450
`\if@mtc@Himlof@` 3303
`\if@mtc@Himlot@` 3336
`\if@mtc@Himtoc@` 3288, 3289
`\if@mtc@hints@` 35, 910, 929, 948, 1614, 1633, 1652, 2241, 2260, 2279, 2541, 3822, 4069, 4718
`\if@mtc@hints@giben@` 35
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` 37, 3833, 3841, 3849, 3857, 3881, 3889, 3897, 3957, 3966, 3981, 3990, 4004, 4011, 4030, 4049, 4099, 4112, 4141, 4170, 4198, 4227, 4256, 4285, 4320, 4355, 4423, 4432, 4441, 4450, 4459, 4468, 4477, 4486, 4495, 4504, 4513, 4522, 4531, 4624
`\if@mtc@hints@given@true` 4390
`\if@mtc@hints@w@` 35, 4011, 4030, 4049, 4099
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` 137, 4011, 4030, 4049
`\if@mtc@insellang@` 3455, 3475
`\if@mtc@LI` 235
`\if@mtc@listfiles@` 3541, 4717
`\if@mtc@lof@used@` 3824, 4069, 4073, 4082, 4298, 4333, 4368
`\if@mtc@lot@used@` 3824, 4069, 4073, 4082, 4309, 4344, 4379
`\if@mtc@mcaption@loaded@` . . . 39, 178, 4531
`\if@mtc@mcaption@loaded@a@` . 39, 178, 4531
`\if@mtc@memoir@loaded@` 39, 180, 393

- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ 39, 180
- \if@mtc@misslang 3549, 3595, 3625
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ 132, 3519, 4668
- \if@mtc@part@def@ 77, 4112, 4198, 4285, 4390
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ 83
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ 39, 4099, 4662
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 39, 162, 4459
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 39, 162, 4459
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 39, 164, 4468
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ 39, 164, 4468
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ 38, 4094, 4099
- \if@mtc@section@def@ 81, 1918, 2520, 4094, 4170, 4256, 4355, 4390
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ 87
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ 39, 154, 4423
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 39, 154, 4423
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ 3244, 3246, 3265
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ 3184, 3206, 3225
- \if@mtc@setfont@ 2657, 2659, 2678, 2697, 2775
- \if@mtc@setformat@ 2957, 2996
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 3013, 3055
- \if@mtc@setrules@ 3089, 3110
- \if@mtc@settitle@ 2834, 2836, 2855
- \if@mtc@settitlefont@ 2793, 2795, 2814
- \if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@ 39, 166, 4477
- \if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@ 39, 166, 4477
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ 3013, 3055
- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ 3089, 3131
- \if@mtc@ss@insection@ 3523, 3897, 4662
- \if@mtc@toc@used@ 3824, 4069, 4073, 4082, 4287, 4322, 4357
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ 39, 156, 4432
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ 39, 156, 4432
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ 3391
- \if@mtcfixindex@ 3434
- \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ 180, 203
- \if@partlof@used@ 89, 1433, 4112, 4198, 4285
- \if@partlot@used@ 89, 1507, 4112, 4198, 4285
- \if@parttoc@used@ 89, 1360, 4112, 4198, 4285
- \if@sectlof@used@ 101, 2032, 4094, 4170, 4256, 4355
- \if@sectlot@used@ 101, 2099, 4094, 4170, 4256, 4355
- \if@secttoc@used@ 101, 1966, 4170, 4256, 4355
- \if@setrules@false 3131
- \if@twocolumn 1299, 1313, 1327
- \if@twoside 1889
- \ifanappendix 5191
- \ifartopt 5177
- \ifdim 2196
- \IfFileExists 204, 252, 2522, 3455, 3475, 3549, 3595, 4671
- \ifheadnameref 5204
- \ifktightmtc 1, 135, 601, 1348, 1954, 3511, 5035
- ifmtarg (package) **204, 254**
- \ifmtc@lof@used@ 4285, 4320, 4355
- \ifmtc@lot@used@ 4285, 4320, 4355
- \ifmtc@toc@used@ 4285, 4320, 4355
- \ifmtcwarn@ 5041, 5058, 5110
- \ifmtcsecondpart 110, 111, 117, 296, 5035, 6037
- \ifodd 1890
- \ifscan@allowed 329, 538
- \iftightmtc 1, 135, 601, 1348, 1954, 3511, 5035
- \ifundottedmtc 380, 866, 869, 872, 874, 884, 3517, 5035
- \ignorespaces 820
- imk (script) **200, 202, 204, 217, 223–226, 561, 569**
- \immediate 125, 128, 238, 253, 263–265, 267, 268, 343–348, 365–368, 520, 967–969, 990, 991, 1023, 1024, 1070, 1071, 1099, 1100, 1135, 1136, 1160, 1161, 1196, 1197, 1207, 1225, 1671–1673, 1691, 1692, 1705, 1706, 1780, 1781, 1804, 1805, 1842, 1843, 1866, 1867, 1904, 1905, 2298–2300, 2320, 2321, 2351, 2352, 2391, 2392, 2417, 2418, 2452, 2453, 2478, 2479, 2513, 2514, 4676, 4677, 4679, 4681
- \in 7567, 7571, 7575
- \incrementmtc 1, 555, 4868
- \incrementptc 1, 1239, 4868
- \incrementstc 1, 1920, 4868
- indon (language option) **36, 478**
- indon.mld (file) **223, 478**
- indonesian (language option) **36, 478**
- indonesian.mld (file) **223, 478**
- \input 340, 4766
- \InputIfFileExists 3458, 3477, 4636
- insection (option) **29, 50, 77, 94, 103, 161, 167, 173, 186, 204, 216, 230, 231, 233, 375, 391, 407, 553, 555, 568**
- \insertchapterspace 5181
- INSTALL (file) **204, 223, 224, 226, 231, 234, 556, 569, 575**
- \interlinepenalty 386, 841, 854, 1373, 1383, 2199
- interlingua (language option) **36, 478**
- interlingua.dtx (file) **478**

- interlingua.mld (file) 223, 478
 irish (language option) 36, 479
 irish.dtx (file) 479
 irish.mld (file) 223, 479, 566
 italian (language option) 36, 480
 italian.dtx (file) 480
 italian.mld (file) 223, 480, 564
 italian2 (language option) 36, 480
 italian2.mld (file) 223, 480
 \itemindent 601,
 657, 727, 795, 1348, 1409, 1482, 1557,
 1956, 1957, 2011, 2077, 2144
 \itemsep 601, 1348, 1955
 IVANOV, Dmitry 194, 235, 467–469, 485, 497, 501,
 502
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar 235, 495, 496
 IZAOLA, Zunbeltz 235, 441
- J**
- JABRI, Youssef 194, 235, 437, 460
 JAEHNE, Bernd 59, 207, 230, 235, 287
 JALAM, Radwan 235
 JANICH, Michael 235, 497
 japanese6.mlo (file) 234
 japanese (language option) 36, 481
 japanese.mld (file) 41, 223, 481
 japanese.mlo (file) 223, 481
 japanese2 (language option) 36, 481
 japanese2.mld (file) 223, 481, 555
 japanese2.mlo (file) 223, 481
 japanese3 (language option) 36, 482
 japanese3.mld (file) 223, 482, 555, 564
 japanese3.mlo (file) 223, 482
 japanese4 (language option) 36, 482
 japanese4.mld (file) 223, 482, 555
 japanese4.mlo (file) 223, 482
 japanese5 (language option) 36, 483
 japanese5.mld (file) 223, 483, 555
 japanese5.mlo (file) 223, 483
 japanese6 (language option) 36, 483
 japanese6.mld (file) 223, 234, 483, 574
 japanese6.mlo (file) 223, 483, 574
 \jeem 5300, 5304, 5308, 5940, 5942, 5944, 5946,
 5948, 5950
 JERNSLETTEN, Regnor 235, 508
 JIANG, Zhuhan 235
 JIS.cap (file) 481
 JIS.cpx (file) 482
 \jobname 340, 2522, 4671, 4766
 JOLY, Loïc 235
 JONES, David M. 50, 76, 85, 235
 JORSSSEN, Christophe 235
 JUHASZ, Robert 235, 499
 JUNGE, Stefan 235
- jura (class) . . 50, 71, 85, 160, 193, 204, 383, 387,
 566
 JURAFSKY, Dan 24, 228, 235, 546
- K**
- k-loose (option) 39, 77, 204, 232, 249, 324, 374,
 559
 k-tight (option) 39, 59, 77, 134, 204, 232, 249,
 271, 301, 324, 374, 559
 \kaf . 5299, 5303, 5307, 5941, 5945, 5949, 6390,
 6397, 6404
 KANERVA, Mikko 235, 460, 461
 kanlel (package) 484
 kanlel.sty (file) 484
 kannada (language option) 36, 484
 kannada.mld (file) 223, 484, 566
 Kannadatex (package) 484
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 235, 514
 KASTRUP, David 235
 \kernafterminilof 17, 746, 4787
 \kernafterminilot 17, 814, 4787
 \kernafterminitoc 17, 673, 4787
 \kernafterpartlof 17, 1501, 4787
 \kernafterpartlot 17, 1576, 4787
 \kernafterparttoc 17, 1427, 4787
 \kernaftersectlof . . . 17, 2094, 2162, 4787
 \kernaftersectlot 17, 4787
 \kernaftersecttoc 17, 2027, 4787
 KERYELL, Ronan 203, 235
 khalkha (language option) 36, 484
 khalkha.mld (file) 223, 484, 561
 KIELHORN, Axel 85, 235
 KIM, Ki-Joo 235
 KLEB, Bil 50, 235
 KLEIWEG, Peter 235, 478
 KLEVELAND, Rune 235, 495, 496
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 235, 440, 449, 455
 KNUTH, Donald 198, 212, 214, 219, 235
 KOHM, Markus 85, 235
 KOPKA, Helmut 235
 KOPPANYI, Attila 235, 488
 KORAI, Adamantios 235, 469
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent 235
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 235
 KRYOKOV, Alexej M. 194, 235, 467–469, 485, 497,
 501, 502
 \kttightmtcfalse 1, 136, 3514, 5037
 \kttightmtctrue 1, 3513
 KUHN, Markus G. 235
 KULZER, Florian 235
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 235, 481, 483
 KÜSTER, Frank 50, 72, 85, 235, 509

L

- \l@chapter 319, 818, 1418, 1419, 2556, 2558, 4961
- \l@chapter@SVPN 1418, 1419
- \l@coffee 3503, 5093
- \l@listof 2555, 5035
- \l@mti 590, 595, 628, 698, 766, 910, 929, 948
- \l@paragraph 2562, 4965
- \l@part 282, 2557, 4960
- \l@pchapter 1581
- \l@psect 1581
- \l@pti . . 1289, 1299, 1342, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1614, 1633, 1652
- \l@schapter 2166
- \l@section 308, 2555, 2559, 4962
- \l@starchapter 2555, 4960
- \l@starparagraph 2555, 4960
- \l@starpart 2555, 4960
- \l@starsection 2555, 4960
- \l@starsubparagraph 2555, 4960
- \l@starsubsection 2555, 4960
- \l@starsubsubsection 2555, 4960
- \l@sti . . 1943, 1948, 1981, 2048, 2115, 2241, 2260, 2279
- \l@subfigure 2208
- \l@subparagraph 2563, 4966
- \l@subsection 2560, 4963
- \l@subsubsection 2561, 4964
- \l@xchapter 319, 818, 4907
- \l@xpart 282, 1581, 4907
- \l@xsect 308, 2166, 4907
- \l@xsection 308, 2166
- \label . . . 1925, 2006, 2139, 2248, 2251, 2283, 2287, 2306, 2489, 2494, 2499, 2504, 2509, 2514, 2519, 2524
- \labelitemi 1427, 1432
- \labelsep . . 658, 728, 796, 1410, 1483, 1558, 2012, 2078, 2145
- \labelwidth 657, 727, 795, 1409, 1482, 1557, 2011, 2077, 2144
- LABORDE, Stéphane 235
- LAGALLY, Klaus 36, 194, 235, 436, 437
- \lam . 5298–5300, 5302–5304, 5306–5308, 5941, 5942, 5945, 5946, 5949, 5950
- \lamed 6395, 6402, 6409
- lamed.eps (file) 223, 224, 226, 568
- lamed.pdf (file) 223, 224, 226, 568
- lamed.tex (file) 223, 224, 226, 568
- LAMPORT, Leslie 205, 235
- LANARI, Fabio 235
- \LANG 4750
- LANGE, Robert 235
- LANGMYHR, Dag 235, 495, 496, 550
- \LangSig 2135, 2171
- Language options
 - acadian 434, 554
 - acadien 36, 435, 554
 - afrikaan 36, 435
 - afrikaans 36, 435
 - albanian 36, 436
 - american 36, 436
 - arab 36, 436–438
 - arab2 36, 437
 - arabi 36, 437
 - arabic 36, 194, 438
 - armenian 36, 194, 438
 - australian 36, 439
 - austrian 36, 439
 - bahasa 36, 439
 - bahasai 36, 439, 440, 478
 - bahasam 36, 440, 489, 492
 - bangla 36, 195, 441, 553
 - basque 36, 441
 - bicig 36, 209, 442, 443, 515
 - bicig2 36, 442, 515
 - bicig3 36, 443, 516
 - bithe 36, 209, 444, 492
 - brazil 36, 444, 445
 - brazilian 36, 445
 - breton 36, 445
 - british 36, 446
 - bulgarian 36, 446
 - bulgarianb 36, 447
 - buryat 36, 447, 448
 - buryat2 36, 448
 - canadian 36, 448, 554
 - canadien 36, 449, 554
 - castillan 36, 449, 511
 - castillian 36, 449
 - catalan 36, 449, 511
 - chinese1 36, 450
 - chinese2 36, 450, 451
 - croatian 36, 451
 - czech 36, 451
 - danish 36, 452
 - devanagari 36, 203, 452, 476
 - dutch 36, 453
 - english . 36, 77, 406, 436, 439, 446, 448, 454, 493, 516, 518, 554
 - english1 36, 454
 - english2 36, 455
 - esperant 36, 455, 456
 - esperanto 36, 456
 - estonian 36, 456, 552
 - ethiopia 36, 457, 458
 - ethiopian 36, 200, 458
 - ethiopian2 36, 458
 - farsi 194, 201

- farsi1 36, 459
 farsi2 36, 459
 farsi3 36, 460
 finnish 36, 460
 finnish2 36, 461
 francais 36, 461
 french .. 36, 449, 461, 463, 464, 553, 554
 french1 36, 462
 french2 36, 88, 209, 463
 frenchb 36, 463
 frenchle 36, 464, 553
 frenchpro 36, 464, 553
 galician 36, 464, 511
 german 36, 439, 465, 466
 germanb 36, 465, 493
 germanb2 36, 466
 greek 36, 466
 greek-mono 36, 41, 467
 greek-polydemo 36, 41, 468
 greek-polykatha 36, 41, 469
 guarani 36, 203, 470
 hangul-u8 36, 473
 hangul1 36, 470
 hangul2 36, 471
 hangul3 36, 471
 hangul4 36, 472
 hanja-u8 36, 474
 hanja1 36, 473
 hanja2 36, 474
 hebrew 36, 194, 475
 hebrew2 36, 475
 hindi 36, 203, 476
 hindi-modern 36, 203, 476
 hungarian 36, 477, 488
 icelandic 36, 477
 indon 36, 478
 indonesian 36, 478
 interlingua 36, 478
 irish 36, 479
 italian 36, 480
 italian2 36, 480
 japanese 36, 481
 japanese2 36, 481
 japanese3 36, 482
 japanese4 36, 482
 japanese5 36, 483
 japanese6 36, 483
 kannada 36, 484
 khalkha 36, 484
 latin 36, 484
 latin2 36, 485
 latvian 36, 485, 486
 letton 36, 485, 486
 lithuanian 36, 486
 lowersorbian 36, 487
 lsorbian 36, 487
 magyar 36, 477, 488
 magyar2 36, 488
 magyar3 36, 489
 malay 36, 489
 malayalam-keli 36, 490
 malayalam-omega 36, 41, 434, 490
 malayalam-rachana 36, 491
 malayalam-rachana2 36, 491
 manju 36, 444, 492
 meyalu 36, 492
 mongol 36, 492
 naustrian 36, 493, 554
 newzealand 36, 493
 ngerman 36, 493, 554
 ngermanb 36, 493, 494, 554
 ngermanb2 36, 494
 norsk 36, 495
 norsk2 36, 495
 nynorsk 36, 496
 nynorsk2 36, 496
 polish 36, 497
 polish2 36, 41, 497
 polski 36, 216, 498
 portuges 36, 498
 portuguese 36, 498, 499
 romanian 36, 499
 romanian2 36, 500
 romanian3 36, 500
 russian 36, 501–504
 russian-cca 36, 505
 russian-ccal 36, 505
 russian-lh 36, 506
 russian-lhcyralt 36, 506
 russian-lhcyrkoi 36, 507
 russian-lhcyrwin 36, 507
 russian2m 36, 41, 501
 russian2o 36, 41, 502
 russianb 36, 503
 russianc 36, 504
 samin 36, 508
 scottish 36, 508
 serbian 36, 509
 serbianc 36, 509
 slovak 36, 510
 slovene 36, 510
 spanish 36, 449, 511
 spanish2 36, 511, 512
 spanish3 36, 41, 511, 512
 spanish4 36, 511, 513
 swedish 36, 513
 swedish2 36, 514
 thai 36, 514

- turkish **36, 515**
- uighur **36, 515**
- uighur2 **36, 515**
- uighur3 **36, 516**
- UKenglish **36, 516**
- ukraineb **36, 516**
- ukrainian **36, 516**
- upporsorbian **36, 517, 518**
- USenglish **36, 518**
- usorbian **36, 517, 518**
- vietnam **36, 518, 519**
- vietnamese **36, 519**
- welsh **36, 519**
- xalx **36, 484, 520, 521**
- xalx2 **36, 520**
- xalx3 **36, 521**
- LAPKO, Olga G. **236, 447, 503, 516**
- \LARGE 1287
- \Large 1273, 1914, 2111
- \large 588, 1401, 1426, 1431, 1435, 1438, 1942
- LARSEN, Henning **236, 452**
- LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc **236**
- latex.fmt (file) **57**
- latex.tex (file) **57, 548**
- latin (language option) **36, 484**
- latin.dtx (file) **484, 485**
- latin.mld (file) **223, 484, 552**
- latin2 (language option) **36, 485**
- latin2.mld (file) **223, 485, 557**
- latvian (language option) **36, 485, 486**
- latvian.lfd (file) **485**
- latvian.mld (file) **194, 223, 485, 486, 555**
- LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe **236**
- LAUNAY, Arnaud **236**
- LAUVERNET, Claire **236**
- LAVVA, Boris **236, 475**
- \ldots 1609, 1613, 1617, 2429, 2438
- LEBACQ, André **236**
- \leftmargin 609, 610, 655, 725, 793, 1356, 1357, 1407, 1480, 1555, 1962, 1963, 2009, 2075, 2142
- LEMBERG, Werner **197, 236, 447, 450, 470–474, 481–483, 503, 514**
- LEONHARDT, Thomas **236, 553**
- LE PENNEC, Erwan **236**
- LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane **236**
- LE THUAUT, Julien **236**
- letter (class) **24, 56, 187, 198, 205, 217**
- letton (language option) **36, 485, 486**
- letton.mld (file) **223, 486, 555**
- LEWENBERG, Adam **236**
- LH (package) **506**
- lhcyr (package) **506, 507**
- lhcyralt.sty (file) **506**
- lhcyrkoi.sty (file) **507**
- lhcyrwin.sty (file) **507**
- LICKERT, Knut **208, 236, 373**
- LINDGREN, Ulf A. **50, 72, 85, 236**
- \linewidth 1399, 1408, 1416, 2140, 2141
- LINGNAU, Anselm **236**
- lipsum (package) **206, 570**
- \lipsum 19, 21, 26, 28, 41, 43, 48, 50, 247, 249, 254, 256, 258, 264, 266, 268, 274, 276, 278, 800, 802, 807, 810, 815, 862, 864, 866, 868, 871, 873, 875, 877, 879, 881, 883, 885, 887, 889, 891, 893, 895, 897, 899, 901, 903, 905, 907, 909, 911, 913, 915, 917, 919, 921, 923, 929, 931, 940, 942, 944, 953, 958, 960, 962, 964, 966, 968, 978, 980, 982, 984, 986, 994, 996, 1006, 1008, 1010, 1012, 1022, 1024, 1035, 1039, 1041, 1043, 1052, 1058, 1060, 1062, 1064, 1066, 1124, 1126, 1128, 1130, 1133, 1135, 1137, 1139, 1141, 1143, 1145, 1147, 1149, 1151, 1153, 1155, 1157, 1159, 1161, 1163, 1165, 1167, 1169, 1171, 1173, 1175, 1177, 1179, 1181, 1183, 1185, 1187, 1189, 1197, 1199, 1214, 1216, 1218, 1226, 1229, 1232, 1235, 1238, 1241, 1244, 1251, 1253, 1255, 1257, 1259, 1266, 1268, 1277, 1279, 1281, 1283, 1290, 1292, 1294, 1296, 1304, 1306, 1308, 1321, 1323, 1325, 1331, 1669, 1671, 1673, 1675, 1677, 1679, 1681, 1717, 1719, 1721, 1723, 1725, 1727, 1729, 1746, 1750, 1754, 1759, 1763, 1766, 1771, 1775, 1779, 1794, 1798, 1802, 1807, 1811, 1814, 1819, 1823, 1827, 1847, 1855, 1866, 1874, 2074, 2076, 2078, 2080, 2084, 2086, 2088, 2090, 2121, 2123, 2125
- \list 601, 1348, 1955
- listfiles (option) **49, 57, 77, 144, 192, 206, 214, 232, 234, 376, 408, 560, 573**
- \listoffigures 1, 63, 127, 299, 344, 555, 1114, 2231, 2395, 2478, 4073, 4302, 4337, 4372
- \listoftables 1, 64, 128, 299, 346, 557, 1115, 1743, 1791, 2277, 4073, 4313, 4348, 4383
- \listparindent 601, 658, 728, 796, 1348, 1410, 1483, 1558, 1957, 2012, 2078, 2145
- liststotoc (option of KOMA) **47, 134**
- liststotocnumbered (option of KOMA) **47**
- lithuanian (language option) **36, 486**
- lithuanian.lfd (file) **486**

- lithuanian.mld (file) **223, 486, 564**
 livre.tex (old example document) . . **571, 573**
 LOBEL, Pierre **236**
 \localgreek . . . 6164, 6167, 6171, 6175, 6178,
 6182, 6186, 6189, 6193, 6204, 6207,
 6211, 6215, 6218, 6222, 6226, 6229,
 6233, 6244, 6247, 6251, 6255, 6258,
 6262, 6266, 6269, 6273
 \locallatvian 6701–6703, 6705–6707,
 6709–6711
 \localpolish 7033–7035, 7037–7039,
 7041–7043
 \localrussian . 7159, 7162, 7166, 7170, 7173,
 7177, 7181, 7184, 7188, 7199, 7202,
 7206, 7210, 7213, 7217, 7221, 7224,
 7228
 \localspanish 7486–7488, 7490–7492,
 7494–7496
 lofdepth (depth counter) **31, 206, 268, 297, 322**
 LOKAJICEK, Milos **236, 451**
 loose (option) . **39, 77, 204, 206, 219, 229, 249,**
 324, 374, 551, 553
 LORETI, Maurizio **50, 72, 85, 236**
 LORINO, Tristan **236**
 lotdepth (depth counter) **31, 206, 268, 280, 297,**
 322
 LOVE, Tim **236**
 lowersorbian (language option) **36, 487**
 lowersorbian.mld (file) **223, 487, 565**
 LOZANO, Vincent **236**
 Isorbian (language option) **36, 487**
 Isorbian.dtx (file) **487**
 Isorbian.mld (file) **223, 487, 566**
 ltxdoc (class) **24, 198, 206**
 ltxnews (class) **24, 198, 206**
 LUECKING, Dan **236**
 LUNDE, Ken **198, 236**
 LYHNE, Anders **236**
- M**
- \M@getttitle 5204
 MACKAY, Pierre **236, 515**
 MADSEN, Lars **236**
 magyar (language option) **36, 477, 488**
 magyar.dtx (file) **488, 489**
 magyar.mld (file) **223, 477, 488, 567**
 magyar2 (language option) **36, 488**
 magyar2.mld (file) **223, 488, 557, 567**
 magyar3 (language option) **36, 489**
 magyar3.mld (file) **223, 489, 564, 567**
 MAHONEY, Richard **236, 452, 477**
 \mainmatter 220
 \maketitle 1919
 \MakeUppercase . . . 627, 697, 765, 1374, 1447,
 1522, 1981, 2046, 2113
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. **236**
 malay (language option) **36, 489**
 malay.mld (file) **223, 489**
 malayalam (package) **41, 434, 490, 491**
 malayalam-keli (language option) . . . **36, 490**
 malayalam-keli.mld (file) **223, 490, 558**
 malayalam-omega (language option) **36, 41, 434,**
 490
 malayalam-omega.mld (file) . . . **223, 490, 566**
 malayalam-omega.mlo (file) . . . **223, 490, 566**
 malayalam-rachana (language option) **36, 491**
 malayalam-rachana.mld (file) . **223, 491, 558**
 malayalam-rachana2 (language option) **36, 491**
 malayalam-rachana2.mld (file) **223, 491, 558**
 manju (language option) **36, 444, 492**
 manju.mld (file) **223, 492, 561**
 margincap (environment) **206**
 MARGOLIS, Bob **236, 440**
 MARKEY, Nicolas **236**
 MARR, Marcus **236**
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise **236**
 MART, Terry **236, 440**
 MASLOV, Vadim **236, 505**
 MASSIAS, Henri **63, 236**
 MATTHIAS, Andreas **236**
 MATTISSON, Sven **236, 514**
 mcaption (package) . . . **51, 69, 85, 162, 206, 232,**
 253, 403, 560
 McDONNELL, Rowland **50, 67, 85, 236**
 McKAY, Ben **236**
 \mdseries . . . 578, 589, 833, 1263, 1276, 1278,
 1665, 1713, 1933
 \meem 5299, 5300, 5303, 5304, 5307, 5308, 5940,
 5944, 5948
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant **236, 514**
 \mem 6392, 6394, 6399, 6401, 6406, 6408
 mem.tex (old example document) . . . **570, 573**
 mem1.tex (old example document) . . **570, 573**
 memoir (class) . . . **49, 62, 69, 85, 100, 128, 129,**
 147–149, 152, 184, 190, 207, 210, 211,
 222, 230, 232, 245, 253, 262, 386, 428,
 553, 559–561
 memoir.cls (file) **207, 253**
 MENGIN, Sébastien **236**
 \MessageBreak 3544, 3625, 5132
 meyalu (language option) **36, 492**
 meyalu.mld (file) **223, 492**
 MICHOU, Yanick **236**
 mini-art.tex (old example document) . . **573**
 \minilof 1, 66, 81, 102, 130, 145, 164,
 351, 416, 453, 478, 682, 1194, 1318,

- 1845, 1863, 2233, 2236, 2481, 2484,
4154, 4242, 4335, 4758, 4894
- \minilof@ 682, 683, 864
- \minilof@mtcck 2701, 2740
- minilofdepth (depth counter) **31, 199, 207, 268, 277**
- \minilot 1, 67, 82, 103, 131, 146, 165, 353, 418,
455, 480, 750, 1196, 1319, 1793, 1813,
4163, 4251, 4346, 4758, 4894
- \minilot@ 750, 751, 864
- \minilot@mtcck 2704, 2746
- minilotdepth (depth counter) **31, 199, 207, 280**
- minipage (environment) **130, 546**
- minitoc (package) **23**
- \minitoc 1, 16, 23, 38, 45,
225, 245, 252, 262, 272, 349, 414, 451,
476, 612, 799, 806, 813, 1123, 1192,
1249, 1250, 1273, 1302, 1317, 1418,
1465, 1543, 1570, 1624, 1628, 1635,
1639, 1668, 1716, 1844, 1863, 1926,
2002, 2073, 2083, 2119, 2143, 2304,
2335, 2344, 2369, 2373, 2377, 2381,
2388, 4145, 4233, 4324, 4758, 4894
- minitoc-ex.tex (old example document) . **573**
- minitoc-hyper (package) **59, 207**
- minitoc-hyper.sty (file) **207**
- minitoc-texmf.zip (file) . **208, 225, 226, 234, 575**
- minitoc-texmk.zip (file) **223**
- minitoc.bib (file) . . . **207, 223, 224, 226, 554**
- minitoc.bug (file) . **49, 54, 207, 223, 224, 226, 232, 233, 554, 559, 560, 564, 565, 568**
- minitoc.dtx (file) . **59, 202, 204, 207, 222–226, 232, 372, 412, 570**
- minitoc.ins (file) **41, 202–204, 208, 211, 222–224, 226, 372, 412, 434, 558, 570**
- minitoc.ist (file) . . . **208, 223, 224, 226, 557**
- minitoc.l (file) **208, 222–224, 226, 561**
- minitoc.lan (file) **202, 208, 223, 224, 226, 412**
- minitoc.pdf (file) **208, 223, 224, 226**
- minitoc.pre (file) **208, 223, 224, 226, 561, 566**
- minitoc.ps (file) **208**
- minitoc.sty (file) . . . **208, 222, 223, 226, 243**
- minitoc.sum (file) **208, 223, 224, 226**
- minitoc.tex (file) **550, 554**
- \minitoc@ 612, 613, 864
- \minitoc@mtcck 2698, 2732
- minitocdepth (depth counter) **20, 26, 27, 31, 41, 63, 68, 80, 199, 207, 269, 274, 546**
- minitocoff (package) **228, 229, 550**
- minutes (package) **208, 270, 373**
- MITTELBACH, Frank . **205, 228, 236, 270, 299, 323, 549, 552, 553**
- \MLF@ 1125, 1127
- \MLF@contentsline 1086, 1127
- \MLF@explist 1084, 1111
- \MLF@line 1124, 1125
- \MLF@list 1081, 1084, 1111, 1127
- \MLF@lof 1084, 1112, 1127
- \MLF@loop 1081, 1112
- \MLF@next 900, 1081, 1111
- \mlf@pgno 449, 450
- \MLF@read 1112, 1123, 1127
- \mlf@rule 555, 698, 747, 2574, 2577, 2580
- \mlf@setform 735, 2932
- \MLF@test 1125, 1127
- \mlf@dotsep 2902, 2935
- \mlffont 1, 578, 698, 4930
- \mlf@lofmarg 2893
- \mlfname 1090
- \mlfpagenumbers 430, 443, 449, 462, 4990
- \mlfpnumwidth 2884, 2933
- \mlfrule 2564, 4972
- \mlfSfont 1, 578, 4930
- \mlftitle 1, 697, 707, 717, 721,
3615, 4638, 5207, 5225, 5246, 5267,
5285, 5303, 5325, 5354, 5371, 5388,
5406, 5422, 5438, 5454, 5470, 5487,
5508, 5536, 5566, 5587, 5603, 5638,
5676, 5695, 5712, 5735, 5752, 5769,
5792, 5818, 5835, 5856, 5876, 5907,
5945, 5962, 5979, 6000, 6023, 6056,
6085, 6100, 6117, 6132, 6150, 6178,
6182, 6218, 6258, 6288, 6399, 6429,
6466, 6488, 6513, 6530, 6548, 6566,
6649, 6650, 6670, 6687, 6706, 6728,
6745, 6769, 6786, 6803, 6824, 6847,
6864, 6888, 6917, 6932, 6951, 6967,
6982, 6998, 7019, 7038, 7056, 7077,
7094, 7112, 7145, 7173, 7213, 7253,
7278, 7346, 7363, 7380, 7402, 7422,
7439, 7460, 7475, 7491, 7512, 7529,
7546, 7570, 7607, 7635, 7662, 7683,
7698, 7713, 7728
- \mlftocrmarg 2897, 2934
- \MLT@ 1186, 1188
- \MLT@contentsline 1147, 1188
- \MLT@explist 1145, 1172
- \MLT@line 1185, 1186
- \MLT@list 1142, 1145, 1172, 1188
- \MLT@loop 1142, 1173
- \MLT@lot 1145, 1173, 1188
- \MLT@next 905, 1142, 1172
- \mlt@pgno 455, 456
- \MLT@read 1173, 1184, 1188
- \mlt@rule 555, 766, 815, 2583, 2586, 2589
- \mlt@setform 803, 2947
- \MLT@test 1186, 1188

- `\mltdotsep` 2902
- `\mltfont` 1, 578, 766, 4930
- `\mlttitle` 5247
- `\mltlofrmargin` 2893
- `\mltname` 1151
- `\mltpagenumbers` . . 436, 443, 449, 455, 462, 4990
- `\mltpnumwidth` 2884
- `\mltrule` 2564, 4972
- `\mltfont` 1, 578, 4930
- `\mltttitle` 1, 765, 775, 785, 789, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5226, 5268, 5286, 5304, 5326, 5355, 5372, 5389, 5407, 5423, 5439, 5455, 5471, 5488, 5509, 5539, 5568, 5588, 5604, 5639, 5677, 5696, 5713, 5736, 5753, 5770, 5793, 5819, 5836, 5857, 5879, 5909, 5946, 5963, 5980, 6001, 6024, 6057, 6086, 6101, 6118, 6133, 6151, 6222, 6262, 6289, 6401, 6432, 6467, 6489, 6514, 6531, 6549, 6567, 6671, 6688, 6707, 6729, 6746, 6770, 6787, 6804, 6825, 6848, 6865, 6889, 6918, 6933, 6952, 6968, 6983, 6999, 7020, 7039, 7057, 7078, 7095, 7113, 7130, 7131, 7146, 7177, 7217, 7256, 7279, 7347, 7364, 7381, 7404, 7423, 7440, 7461, 7476, 7492, 7513, 7530, 7547, 7571, 7609, 7636, 7663, 7684, 7699, 7714, 7729
- `\mlttocmargin` 2900
- `\mm` 6819–6821, 6823–6825, 6827–6829, 6842–6844, 6846–6848, 6850–6852, 6859–6861, 6863–6865, 6867–6869
- `\mnr` 5582–5584, 5586–5588, 5590–5592, 5598–5600, 5602–5604, 5606–5608, 6883–6885, 6887–6889, 6891–6893, 7693–7695, 7697–7699, 7701–7703, 7708–7710, 7712–7714, 7716–7718
- MonTeX (package) . 41, 208, 434, 442–444, 447, 448, 492, 504, 520, 521, 569
- mongol (language option) 36, 492
- mongol.mld (file) 223, 492
- MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 85, 236
- morefloats (package) 557
- MORI, Lapo Filippo 236
- MORRISON, Michael A. 236
- mtc (counter) . 84, 255, 259, 267, 269, 287, 288, 291, 294, 348, 552
- mtc-2c.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-2c.tex (example document) . 87, 209, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-2nd.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-2nd.tex (example document) 88, 209, 223, 224, 226, 249, 463, 573
- mtc-add.bib (example document) 209, 223, 573
- mtc-add.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-add.tex (example document) . 48, 89, 91, 209, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-adds.tex (old example document) . . . 575
- mtc-ads.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-ads.tex (example document) 48, 94, 209, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-amem.tex (old example document) . . . 575
- mtc-amm.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-amm.tex (example document) 100, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-apx.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-apx.tex (example document) 64, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226, 569, 573
- mtc-art.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-art.tex (example document) 100, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-bk.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-bk.tex (example document) 106, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-bo.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-bo.tex (example document) 112, 210, 223, 224, 226, 570, 573
- mtc-book.tex (old example document) . . . 575
- mtc-ch0.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-ch0.tex (example document) 117, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-cri.log (file) 118
- mtc-cri.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-cri.tex (example document) 118, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-fo1.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-fo1.tex (example document) 119, 120, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-fo2.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-fo2.tex (example document) 120, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-gap.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-gap.tex (example document) 73, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-gaps.tex (old example document) . . . 575
- mtc-hi1.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-hi1.tex (example document) 65, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-hi2.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-hi2.tex (example document) 66, 86, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-hia.pdf (example document) 226
- mtc-hia.tex (example document) 121, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573
- mtc-hir.pdf (example document) 226

- mtc-hir.tex (example document) **122, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-hop.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-hop.tex (example document) **123, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-liv.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-liv.tex (example document) **124, 210, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-mem.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-mem.tex (example document) **128, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-mem1.tex (old example document) . . . **575**
 mtc-mm1.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-mm1.tex (example document) **129, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-mu.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-mu.tex (example document) **130, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-sbf.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-sbf.tex (example document) **132, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-scr.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-scr.tex (example document) **134, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-subf.tex (old example document) . . . **575**
 mtc-syn.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-syn.tex (example document) **135, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-tbi.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-tbi.tex (example document) **136, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-tlc.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-tlc.tex (example document) **138, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-tlo.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-tlo.tex (example document) **75, 86, 211, 223, 224, 226, 574**
 mtc-tsf.pdf (example document) **226**
 mtc-tsf.tex (example document) **138, 211, 223, 224, 226, 573**
 mtc-tsfc.tex (old example document) . . . **575**
 \MTC@ 1057, 1061
 \mtc@While 221, 223, 228
 \mtc@admisslanguage . . . 3544, 3549, 3595
 \mtc@addtomaf 4671
 \mtc@arg@dotinterval 2876
 \mtc@arg@numwidth 2882
 \mtc@arg@pagenumwidth 2880
 \mtc@arg@tocrightmargin 2878
 \mtc@BBR . 326, 654, 660, 724, 730, 792, 798, 1406, 1411, 1479, 1484, 1554, 1559, 2008, 2013, 2074, 2079, 2141, 2146
 \mtc@Body 235
 \mtc@bottom@rule 672, 678, 745, 813
 \mtc@ck 5058
 \mtc@CkFile 235, 620, 690, 758, 1367, 1440, 1515, 1973, 2039, 2106
 \mtc@CkStr . 235, 628, 698, 766, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1981, 2048, 2115
 \mtc@classck 4731
 \MTC@contentsline 977, 1059
 \mtc@dot 1204
 \mtc@EndWhile 210, 235
 \MTC@explist 974, 1042
 \mtc@featparam@abbrev . . 3186, 3206, 3225
 \mtc@featparam@third 3206, 3225
 \mtc@featureparam@after 3177
 \mtc@featureparam@before 3175
 \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle 3179
 \mtc@fparam@abbrev 2959, 2979, 2996
 \mtc@glofix@level . 3369, 3392, 3401–3403, 3409
 \mtc@hints@@chapter 4030, 4725
 \mtc@hints@@part 4011, 4722
 \mtc@hints@@schapter 4030, 4725
 \mtc@hints@@sect 4049, 4728
 \mtc@hints@@spart 4011, 4722
 \mtc@hints@@ssect 4049, 4728
 \mtc@hints@begindoc . . . 3824, 4092, 4718
 \mtc@hints@chapter 4011, 4030, 4725
 \mtc@hints@checklongext 4390
 \mtc@hints@enddoc . 3824, 4093, 4624, 4718
 \mtc@hints@part 4011, 4722
 \mtc@hints@section 4011, 4049, 4728
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile 132, 662, 735, 803, 1413, 1490, 1565, 2015, 2085, 2152
 \mtc@hstrut . . . 326, 1476, 1551, 2070, 2137
 \mtc@hstrutbox 326
 \mtc@ifmtarg 210, 245, 282, 308, 319
 \mtc@ixfix@level . . 3412, 3435, 3444–3446, 3452
 \mtc@level@abbrev 2678, 2696, 2775
 \MTC@line 1055, 1057
 \MTC@list 970, 974, 1042, 1059
 \mtc@listmisslanguages 3544, 3625
 \mtc@LML 3544
 \MTC@loop 970, 1043
 \mtc@ltypetable@minilof 3169
 \mtc@ltypetable@minilot 3170
 \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc 3168
 \mtc@ltypetable@partlof 3166
 \mtc@ltypetable@partlot 3167
 \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc 3165
 \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof 3172
 \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot 3173
 \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc 3171
 \mtc@maf 4671, 4717

- \mtc@maf@long 4671
- \mtc@maf@short 4671
- \mtc@markboth 530, 627, 697, 765, 1374, 1447,
1522, 1981, 2046, 2113
- \mtc@mta@abbrev 2659, 2696, 2775
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev 3246, 3265
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev 2795, 2814
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev 2836, 2855
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev 2959, 2996
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev 3186, 3225
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev 3034, 3055
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev 3110, 3131
- \MTC@next 895, 970, 1042
- \mtc@noX 3074, 3076, 3131
- \mtc@onebackchap 270
- \mtc@onebackchapter 269
- \mtc@onebackpart 269
- \mtc@onebacksect 271, 299
- \mtc@onebacksection 269
- \mtc@param 1204
- \mtc@pgno 443, 444, 662, 735, 803
- \mtc@pns@abbrev 3034, 3055
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX 3073
- \MTC@read 1043, 1055, 1059
- \mtc@restorelofdepth 3323, 5102
- \mtc@restorelotdepth 3356, 3368, 5102
- \mtc@restoretocdepth 3289, 3319, 3335,
3352, 5102
- \mtc@Rline 235
- \mtc@rule 555, 628, 678, 2565, 2568, 2571
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev 3110, 3131
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX 3148
- \mtc@savelofdepth 3322, 3329, 5102
- \mtc@savelotdepth 3355, 3362, 5102
- \mtc@savetocdepth 3289, 3313, 3346, 5102
- \mtc@schapter 825
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter 2646
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure 2653
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph 2650
- \mtc@sectlevel@section 2647
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure 2655
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph 2651
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection 2648
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection 2649
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable 2656
- \mtc@sectlevel@table 2654
- \mtc@setform 662, 2917
- \mtc@setlangopt 3549, 3647
- \mtc@setlangoptm 3595, 3647
- \mtc@setlangopto 3549, 3647
- \mtc@string 326, 1059, 1127, 1188, 1204,
1224, 1771, 1834, 1896, 2383, 2444,
2505, 4907
- \mtc@strut 326, 662, 735, 803, 1413, 1490,
1565, 2015, 2085, 2152
- \mtc@strutbox 326
- \mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 4082
- \mtc@sv@fklistoftables 4082
- \mtc@sv@fktableofcontents 4082
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures 4073
- \mtc@sv@listoftables 4073
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth 3303
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth 3336
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents 4073
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth 3289, 3303, 3336
- \mtc@svchapter 317
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth 3303
- \mtc@svpart 272, 1586
- \mtc@svsection 305
- \mtc@svspart 272
- \mtc@svss 305
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth 3336
- \MTC@test 1057, 1059
- \mtc@tmp@name 2696, 2775
- \mtc@tmpde@name 3265
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name 3225
- \mtc@tmpfm@name 2996
- \mtc@tmppn@name 3055, 3131
- \mtc@tmptf@name 2814
- \mtc@tmpti@name 2855
- \MTC@toc 974, 1043, 1059
- \mtc@toks 326, 993, 1102, 1163, 1204, 1224,
1708, 1807, 1869, 2323, 2420, 2481,
2775, 2814, 2855, 3265
- \mtc@typetable@minilof 2595
- \mtc@typetable@minilot 2596
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc 2594
- \mtc@typetable@partlof 2592
- \mtc@typetable@partlot 2593
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc 2591
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof 2598
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot 2599
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc 2597
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof 2604
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot 2605
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc 2603
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof 2601
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot 2602
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc 2600
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof 2607
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot 2608
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc 2606
- \mtc@v 326, 647, 651, 717, 721, 785, 789, 1397,
1465, 1544, 1996, 2062, 2129
- mtc@verse (environment) 271, 274, 277, 278,
280, 281, 356, 357
- \mtc@verse 601

- `mtc@verse` (environment) . 601, 654, 672, 724,
 745, 792, 813, 2917, 2932, 2947
`\mtc@While` 210, 235
`\mtc@WhileBody` 210
`\mtc@WhileCondition` 210
`\mtc@WhileNext` 210
`\mtc@WhilePreCondition` 210
`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` . . . 1009, 1224, 1719,
 2323
`\MTC@WriteContentsLine` . 1679, 2306, 2403,
 2464
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` . . 994, 1026, 1102,
 1163, 1204, 1709, 1733, 1807, 1869,
 2323, 2354, 2420, 2481
`\mtc@xifmtarg` 210
`\mtc@YN@F` 2620
`\mtc@YN@f` 2619
`\mtc@YN@FALSE` 2616
`\mtc@YN@false` 2615
`\mtc@YN@FAUX` 2618
`\mtc@YN@faux` 2617
`\mtc@YN@N` 2614
`\mtc@YN@n` 2613
`\mtc@YN@NO` 2612
`\mtc@YN@no` 2611
`\mtc@YN@NON` 2621
`\mtc@YN@non` 2622
`\mtc@YN@O` 2642
`\mtc@YN@o` 2643
`\mtc@YN@OFF` 2610
`\mtc@YN@off` 2609
`\mtc@YN@ON` 2627
`\mtc@YN@on` 2626
`\mtc@YN@OUI` 2640
`\mtc@YN@oui` 2641
`\mtc@YN@T` 2635
`\mtc@YN@t` 2634
`\mtc@YN@TRUE` 2633
`\mtc@YN@true` 2632
`\mtc@YN@V` 2639
`\mtc@YN@v` 2638
`\mtc@YN@VRAI` 2637
`\mtc@YN@vrai` 2636
`\mtc@YN@Y` 2631
`\mtc@YN@y` 2630
`\mtc@YN@YES` 2629
`\mtc@YN@yes` 2628
`\mtc@zrule` 326, 654, 675, 724, 748, 792, 816,
 1406, 1427, 1479, 1501, 1554, 1576,
 2008, 2027, 2074, 2094, 2141, 2162
`\mtcaddchapter` 1, 14,
 180, 319, 343, 345, 347, 386, 387, 390,
 391, 396, 397, 445, 1542, 1612, 1616,
 1622, 2278, 2319, 2324, 2329, 2365,
 2367, 2385, 2387, 2397, 5058
`\mtcaddpart` 1, 282, 1604, 1842, 5058
`\mtcaddsection` . . . 1, 180, 308, 554, 556, 558,
 596–599, 604, 605, 685–688, 693, 694,
 739, 956, 5058
`\mtcArabTok` 5279–5282, 5284–5286,
 5288–5290
`\mtcdotsep` 2902, 2920
`\mtcEnglishIIpart` 5804, 5813–5815
`\mtcfixglossary` . 1, 3374, 3380, 3382, 3391,
 5108
`\mtcfixindex` . . 1, 442, 736, 3417, 3423, 3425,
 3434, 5109
`\mtcfont` 1, 578, 628, 1088, 4930
`\mtcFrenchIIpart` . . 6035, 6047, 6050, 6053
`\mtcgapafterheads` 15, 197, 202, 1299, 1313,
 1327, 4785
`\mtcgapbeforeheads` 15, 196, 201, 1299, 1313,
 1327, 4785
`mtcglo.ist` (file) **560**
`mtchideinmainlof` (environment) **65, 84, 175,**
184, 193, 210, 231, 368, 425, 555, 558,
559, 568, 569
`\mtchideinmainlof` 148
`mtchideinmainlof` (environment) 1, 3303, 5096
`mtchideinmainlot` (environment) **65, 84, 176,**
185, 193, 210, 231, 368, 425, 555, 558,
559, 568, 569
`\mtchideinmainlot` 156, 1756, 1804
`mtchideinmainlot` (environment) 1, 3336, 5096
`mtchideinmaintoc` (environment) **63, 84, 111,**
112, 176, 185, 193, 210, 231, 367, 425,
555, 568
`mtchideinmaintoc` (environment) 1, 3289, 5096
`\mtcindent` . . 9, 240, 555, 601, 654, 724, 792,
 1087, 1359, 2133, 4775
`\mtcloadmlo` . . 3475, 4971, 5653, 5664, 5925,
 5934, 6305, 6318, 6330, 6342, 6351,
 6363, 6375, 6384, 6580, 6592, 6604,
 6616, 6629, 6638, 6834, 7292, 7302,
 7310, 7318, 7326, 7334, 7558
`\mtclofrmarg` 2893
`mtcmess` (package) **142, 211, 233, 414, 427, 567**
`mtcmess.sty` (file) **222, 223, 226**
`\mtcname` 981, 1012
`mtcnorsk.sty` (file) **550**
`mtcnynorsk.sty` (file) **550**
`mtcuff` (package) . . **32, 52, 55, 89, 141, 188–190,**
211, 228, 229, 413, 414, 425–427, 547,
550, 558, 559
`mtcuff.sty` (file) **222, 223, 226, 556**
`\mtcuffwarn@false` 5041

- \mtcoffwarn@true . . . 4789, 4797, 4805, 4817, 4825, 4833, 4844, 4852, 4860, 5058, 5069, 5080, 5110, 5117, 5124
- \mtcPackageError 206, 2664, 2682, 2784, 2800, 2825, 2841, 2866, 2965, 2982, 3004, 3041, 3062, 3117, 3137, 3192, 3210, 3236, 3251, 3268, 3282, 3292, 3298, 3307, 3315, 3325, 3331, 3340, 3348, 3358, 3364, 3378, 3405, 3421, 3448, 3462, 3481, 3495, 3526, 3595, 4638, 4731, 5132
- \mtcPackageInfo 2, 137, 182, 189, 191, 193, 276, 289, 291, 297, 316, 340, 351, 353, 622, 692, 760, 913, 932, 951, 982, 986, 1015, 1019, 1051, 1091, 1095, 1120, 1152, 1156, 1181, 1369, 1442, 1517, 1617, 1636, 1655, 1683, 1687, 1697, 1701, 1762, 1796, 1800, 1825, 1858, 1862, 1887, 1975, 2041, 2108, 2244, 2263, 2282, 2312, 2316, 2343, 2347, 2376, 2409, 2413, 2437, 2470, 2474, 2498, 2522, 2778, 2817, 2858, 2998, 3077, 3082, 3152, 3157, 3228, 3276, 3459, 3478, 3555, 3571, 3584, 3829, 3843, 3851, 3859, 3867, 3875, 3883, 3959, 3983, 3994, 4630, 4672, 5132, 5149
- \mtcPackageWarning . . . 557, 1045, 1114, 1175, 1244, 1756, 1819, 1881, 1921, 2370, 2431, 2492, 4790, 4798, 4806, 4818, 4826, 4834, 4845, 4853, 4861, 5059, 5070, 5081, 5111, 5118, 5125, 5132
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine 273, 293, 358, 370, 375, 3371, 3381, 3414, 3424, 3521, 3549, 3625, 3835, 3891, 3901, 3918, 3933, 3949, 3968, 3976, 4006, 4019, 4024, 4038, 4043, 4058, 4063, 4101, 4115, 4124, 4133, 4144, 4153, 4162, 4173, 4182, 4191, 4201, 4210, 4219, 4230, 4239, 4248, 4259, 4268, 4277, 4288, 4299, 4310, 4323, 4334, 4345, 4358, 4369, 4380, 4396, 4405, 4414, 4425, 4434, 4443, 4452, 4461, 4470, 4479, 4488, 4497, 4506, 4515, 4524, 4533, 4541, 4548, 4555, 4562, 4569, 4576, 4583, 4590, 4597, 4604, 4611, 4618, 4625, 5043, 5132
- \mtcpagenumbers . . . 394, 443, 462, 1101, 4990
- mtcpatchmem (package) **141, 190, 211, 222, 428**
- mtcpatchmem.sty (file) **222, 223, 226**
- \mtcPfont 1, 578, 1091, 4930
- \mtcpnumwidth 2884, 2918
- \mtcprepare 1, 2522, 4906
- \mtcprepare@ 2522
- \mtcrrule 2564, 4972
- \mtcsecondpartfalse 110, 115, 121, 129, 5039
- \mtcsecondparttrue 113, 119, 126
- \mtcselectlanguage 1, 180, 3455, 3552, 3597, 4970, 5207, 5209, 5213, 5234, 5255, 5313, 5334, 5338, 5342, 5496, 5517, 5612, 5616, 5621, 5626, 5844, 5894, 5988, 6065, 6069, 6073, 6448, 6475, 6497, 6501, 6658, 6715, 6812, 6873, 6877, 6897, 6901, 6905, 7065, 7579, 7583, 7587, 7591, 7644, 7671
- \mtcsetdepth 1, 1597, 2218, 2235, 2417, 2483, 3245, 3252, 3269, 3277, 3283, 3287, 4952
- \mtcsetfeature . . . 1, 510, 3184, 3193, 3211, 3229, 3237, 4952
- \mtcsetfont 1, 214, 1659, 1662, 1665, 1707, 1710, 1713, 2105, 2106, 2219–2223, 2225–2228, 2415, 2657, 2658, 2665, 2683, 2779, 2785, 4952
- \mtcsetformat . . . 1, 662, 735, 803, 2912, 2957, 2966, 2983, 2999, 3005, 4952
- \mtcsetpagenumber@ 3033
- \mtcsetpagenumbers . . . 1, 3015, 3042, 3063, 4952
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ 3015, 3033
- \mtcsetrules 1, 3091, 3118, 3138, 4952
- \mtcsetrules@ 3091, 3109
- \mtcsettitle 1, 180, 2113, 2834, 2835, 2842, 2859, 2867, 4952
- \mtcsettitlefont 1, 2111, 2793, 2794, 2801, 2818, 4952
- \mtcSfont 1, 578, 1089, 4930
- \mtcskip 1, 9, 350, 352, 415, 417, 452, 454, 477, 479, 560, 564, 623, 646, 650, 712, 744, 766, 861, 927, 957, 976, 1002, 1028, 1030, 1037, 1193, 1195, 1422, 2234, 2482, 4868
- \mtcskipamount 1, 9, 4775
- \mtcSPfont 1, 578, 1091, 4930
- \mtcSSfont 1, 578, 1090, 4930
- \mtcSSSfont 1, 578, 1091, 4930
- \mtcsv@listoffigures 299
- \mtcsv@listoftables 299
- \mtcsv@tableofcontents 299
- mtcswedish.sty (file) **549**
- \mtctitle 1, 627, 628, 698, 766, 1363, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5224, 5245, 5266, 5284, 5302, 5324, 5353, 5370, 5387, 5405, 5421, 5437, 5453, 5469, 5486, 5507, 5534, 5564, 5586, 5602, 5637, 5675, 5694, 5711, 5734, 5751, 5768, 5791, 5817, 5834, 5855, 5875, 5906, 5944, 5961,

- 5978, 5999, 6022, 6055, 6084, 6099,
6116, 6131, 6149, 6175, 6215, 6255,
6287, 6397, 6426, 6465, 6487, 6512,
6529, 6547, 6565, 6648, 6669, 6686,
6705, 6727, 6744, 6768, 6785, 6802,
6823, 6846, 6863, 6887, 6916, 6931,
6950, 6966, 6981, 6997, 7018, 7037,
7055, 7076, 7093, 7111, 7129, 7144,
7170, 7210, 7251, 7277, 7345, 7362,
7379, 7400, 7421, 7438, 7459, 7474,
7490, 7511, 7528, 7545, 7569, 7606,
7634, 7661, 7682, 7697, 7712, 7727
- `\mtctocmarg` 2894, 2919
- `\mtifont` 1, 578, 628, 698, 766, 4930
- `mu.tex` (old example document) **571, 573**
- MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan **236, 509**
- multibib (package) **57, 211**
- multicol (package) **87, 112, 554**
- multicols (environment) **87, 114**
- mypatches (package) **88**
- `\mz` 7141, 7142, 7145, 7146, 7149, 7150
- N**
- `\n@mti` 590, 628, 698, 766, 910, 929, 948
- `\n@pti` 1289, 1296, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1614,
1633, 1652
- `\n@sti` 1943, 1981, 2048, 2115, 2241, 2260,
2279
- natbib (package) **195**
- NAUMOV, Sergei O. **236, 506**
- naustrian (language option) **36, 493, 554**
- naustrian.mld (file) **223, 493**
- needspace (package) **54, 211**
- `\NeedsTeXFormat` 2, 4771, 5134, 5145
- NEUKAM, Frank **85, 236**
- `\newblock` 2186, 2188, 2194, 2195
- `\newbox` 329, 333
- `\newcommand` 282,
308, 319, 564, 1251, 1927, 2135, 2213,
2449, 2460, 2658, 2794, 2835, 2958,
3015, 3033, 3091, 3109, 3185, 3245,
3289, 3290, 3322, 3323, 3355, 3356,
3392, 3435, 3506, 3550, 3566, 3595,
4872–4874, 5058, 5069, 5080, 5108,
5109, 5135, 5137, 5139, 5141
- `\newcounter` 526, 528, 562, 568, 1233, 1239,
1912, 1926, 1930
- `\newenvironment` 1397, 3291, 3306, 3324,
3339, 3357, 5096, 5098, 5100
- `\newif` 35–77, 79,
81, 83, 85, 87, 89–110, 132, 135, 136,
138, 180, 235–237, 329, 342, 380, 538,
2657, 2793, 2834, 2957, 3013, 3014,
3089, 3090, 3184, 3244, 3288, 3303,
3336, 3391, 3434, 3455, 3523, 3541,
3549, 3824–3827, 5035–5039, 5041
- `\newlength` 9, 1260, 1932
- `\newread` 326, 373
- `\newtoks` 326
- `\newwrite` 8, 519
- newzealand (language option) **36, 493**
- newzealand.mld (file) **223, 493**
- ngerman (language option) **36, 493, 554**
- ngerman.mld (file) **223, 493**
- ngermanb (language option) **36, 493, 494, 554**
- ngermanb.dtx (file) **494**
- ngermanb.mld (file) **223, 493, 494**
- ngermanb2 (language option) **36, 494**
- ngermanb2.mld (file) **223, 494, 560**
- NGUYEN, Cuong **236**
- NICOLAS, Julien **236**
- NIEPRASCHK, Rolf **236**
- nocheckfiles (option) **31, 51, 163–165, 197,
214, 230, 374, 552**
- `\nocite` 436, 730
- nohints (option) **49, 77, 203, 214, 382**
- `\noindent` 644, 714, 782, 1395, 1468, 1543,
1997, 2063, 2130
- NOIREL, Josselin **236**
- nolistfiles (option) **49, 77, 214, 376, 560**
- `\nomlfpagenumbers` 430, 443, 449, 1105, 4990
- `\nomlfrule` 2564, 4972
- `\nomltpagenumbers` 436, 443, 449, 455, 1106,
4990
- `\nomltrule` 2564, 4972
- `\nomtcpagenumbers` 394, 443, 1104, 1361,
4990
- `\nomtcrule` 1103, 1360, 2564, 4972
- `\noopsort` 437, 731
- `\noplfpagenumbers` 430, 454, 4990
- `\noplfrule` 2564, 4972
- `\nopltpagenumbers` 436, 460, 4990
- `\nopltrule` 2564, 4972
- `\noptcpagenumbers` 416, 448, 4990
- `\noptcrule` 1102, 2564, 4972
- `\normalcolor` 861
- `\normalfont` 214, 219, 861, 1372, 1382
- `\normalsize` 1276–1278, 1659, 1662, 1665,
1707, 1710, 1713, 2100, 2101, 2105,
2106, 2109, 2110
- norsk (language option) **36, 495**
- norsk.dtx (file) **495, 496**
- norsk.mld (file) **223, 495**
- norsk2 (language option) **36, 495**
- norsk2.mld (file) **223, 495, 560**
- `\noslfpagenumbers` 430, 452, 4990
- `\noslfrule` 2564, 4972
- `\nosltpagenumbers` 436, 458, 4990

- `\nosltrule` 2564, 4972
 - `\nostcpagenumbers` 406, 446, 4990
 - `\nostcrule` 2564, 4972
 - notoccite (package) . 49, 85, 214, 230, 249, 274,
277, 280, 375, 408, 554
 - notoccite (option) 49, 77, 214, 249, 375, 408,
554
 - nottoc (option of tocbibind) 137
 - `\numberline` 1132, 2189
 - `\nun` 5940, 5944, 5948, 6391, 6398, 6405
 - nynorsk (language option) 36, 496
 - nynorsk.mld (file) 223, 496
 - nynorsk2 (language option) 36, 496
 - nynorsk2.mld (file) 223, 496, 560
- O**
- OBERDIEK, Heiko 59, 85, 207, 230, 236, 287, 296,
551
 - `\oe` 1997, 2027
 - OLD (file) 571
 - Old Examples
 - 2c.tex 570, 573
 - add.bib 572, 573
 - add.tex 571, 573
 - addsec.tex 563, 571, 573
 - amem.tex 570
 - app-mem.tex 573
 - apx.tex 573
 - bo.tex 573
 - ch0.tex 571, 573
 - cri.tex 571, 573
 - fo1.tex 570, 573
 - fo2.tex 570, 573
 - gaps.tex 569, 573
 - hia.tex 571, 573
 - hide1.tex 573
 - hide2.tex 573
 - hir.tex 571, 573
 - hop.tex 571, 573
 - livre.tex 571, 573
 - mem.tex 570, 573
 - mem1.tex 570, 573
 - mini-art.tex 573
 - minitoc-ex.tex 573
 - mtc-adds.tex 575
 - mtc-amem.tex 575
 - mtc-book.tex 575
 - mtc-gaps.tex 575
 - mtc-mem1.tex 575
 - mtc-subf.tex 575
 - mtc-tsfc.tex 575
 - mu.tex 571, 573
 - scr.tex 570, 573
 - second.tex 570, 573
 - subf.tex 570, 573
 - tbi.tex 570, 573
 - tlc.tex 571, 573
 - tsfc.tex 570, 573
 - OLKO, Mariusz 236, 498
 - omal (package) 41, 434, 490
 - omega-greek.ldf (file) 467–469
 - omega-polish.ldf (file) 497
 - omega-russian.ldf (file) 502
 - omega-spanish.ldf (file) 512
 - omega.sty (file) 194
 - oneside (option) 557
 - `\openin` 1043, 1112, 1173
 - `\openout` 263,
267, 340, 520, 981, 1012, 1059, 1090,
1127, 1151, 1188, 1692, 1706, 1781,
1805, 1843, 1867, 1905, 2321, 2339,
2392, 2418, 2453, 2479, 2514, 4677
 - Options
 - above (placeins) 29, 30, 173
 - addtotoc (abstract) 50, 67, 151, 193
 - below (placeins) 29, 30, 173
 - bibtotoc (KOMA) 47, 134
 - bibtotocnumbered (KOMA) 47
 - checkfiles 28, 31, 57, 144, 163–165, 197,
214, 230, 374, 552
 - dotted 44, 77, 229, 374, 551
 - flsection 230, 553
 - flsectionb 230, 553
 - hints 49–51, 54, 67, 69, 71–73, 76, 77, 147,
153, 159, 203, 214, 231, 232, 244, 245,
247, 382, 391, 406, 409, 554, 557, 566
 - idxtotoc (KOMA) 47
 - insection . . 29, 50, 77, 94, 103, 161, 167,
173, 186, 204, 216, 230, 231, 233, 375,
391, 407, 553, 555, 568
 - k-loose . 39, 77, 204, 232, 249, 324, 374,
559
 - k-tight . . 39, 59, 77, 134, 204, 232, 249,
271, 301, 324, 374, 559
 - listfiles . 49, 57, 77, 144, 192, 206, 214,
232, 234, 376, 408, 560, 573
 - liststotoc (KOMA) 47, 134
 - liststotocnumbered (KOMA) 47
 - loose 39, 77, 204, 206, 219, 229, 249, 324,
374, 551, 553
 - nocheckfiles 31, 51, 163–165, 197, 214,
230, 374, 552
 - nohints 49, 77, 203, 214, 382
 - nolistfiles 49, 77, 214, 376, 560
 - notoccite 49, 77, 214, 249, 375, 408, 554
 - nottoc (tocbibind) 137
 - oneside 557
 - parindent (KOMA) 39

- parskip (KOMA) 39
 section (placeins) . . 29, 30, 50, 161, 407
 shorttext . 50, 56, 77, 158, 195, 218, 229,
 375, 551
 tight . 39, 59, 77, 134, 204, 206, 219, 229,
 249, 271, 301, 324, 374, 551, 553
 undotted 44, 59, 77, 229, 374, 551
 verbose (placeins) 29, 407
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 236, 513
 OTT, Jörg 236
 overcite (package) 195
- P**
- \pack 7485
 \PackageError 5132
 \PackageInfo 5132
 Packages
 abstract 50, 67, 85, 151, 193, 231, 387, 557
 afterpage 563
 alnumsec . . 50, 72, 85, 174, 193, 233, 252,
 401, 569
 alphanum . 50, 71, 85, 160, 193, 383, 566
 Antomega . . 194, 434, 467–469, 485, 497,
 501, 502, 511, 512
 appendix 49, 60–62, 85, 151, 194, 231, 383,
 554, 568
 ArabT_EX . 36, 41, 194, 434, 436, 437, 475
 Aṛabi 36, 41, 194, 437, 460, 571
 ArmT_EX 41, 194, 434, 438, 551
 babel 36, 41, 71, 72,
 194, 195, 200, 228, 434–436, 440, 441,
 444–447, 449, 451–456, 460–466, 475,
 477–480, 484–489, 494–497, 499–501,
 503, 508–513, 515–517, 519, 549, 550,
 558, 567
 BangT_EX 41, 195, 434, 441, 563
 bibtopic 57, 195
 bibunits 57, 195, 211
 captcont 50, 73, 85, 174, 195, 233, 252, 401,
 569
 caption 51, 69, 85, 161, 162, 196, 232, 252,
 402, 560
 caption2 51, 69, 85, 162, 196, 232, 252, 402,
 560
 ccaption 51, 69, 85, 162, 196, 232, 253, 402,
 560
 CervanT_EX 41, 513
 chapterbib 57, 196, 197, 211
 CJK . 36, 41, 197, 198, 219, 220, 434, 450,
 470–474, 481–483, 514
 cmcyralt 505
 color 112
 dblaccnt 565
 ethiop 41, 434, 457, 458
 FarsiT_EX 41, 201, 434, 459
 flafter 29, 216, 407, 568
 float 29
 floatrow 29
 fncychap . . 50, 72, 85, 173, 202, 233, 250,
 399, 569
 franc 88, 203, 224, 226
 frbib 203, 224, 226
 frnew 88, 203, 224, 226
 geometry 112
 guarani 41, 203, 434, 470
 H_AT_EX 203, 434, 473, 474
 hangcaption 50, 76, 85, 174, 203, 234, 251,
 400, 547, 574
 hyperref . . . 49, 59, 69, 85, 113, 134, 144,
 159–161, 163, 203, 207, 220, 221, 226,
 230, 232, 249, 287, 388, 551, 561, 564
 hypertex 220
 ifmtarg 204, 254
 kanlel 484
 Kannadatex 484
 LH 506
 lhcyr 506, 507
 lipsum 206, 570
 malayalam 41, 434, 490, 491
 mcaption . . 51, 69, 85, 162, 206, 232, 253,
 403, 560
 minitoc 23
 minitoc-hyper 59, 207
 minitocoff 228, 229, 550
 minutes 208, 270, 373
 MonT_EX . 41, 208, 434, 442–444, 447, 448,
 492, 504, 520, 521, 569
 morefloats 557
 mtcmess . . . 142, 211, 233, 414, 427, 567
 mtcoff . 32, 52, 55, 89, 141, 188–190, 211,
 228, 229, 413, 414, 425–427, 547, 550,
 558, 559
 mtcpatchmem . . 141, 190, 211, 222, 428
 multibib 57, 211
 multicol 87, 112, 554
 mypatches 88
 natbib 195
 needspace 54, 211
 notoccite . 49, 85, 214, 230, 249, 274, 277,
 280, 375, 408, 554
 omal 41, 434, 490
 overcite 195
 placeins 29, 49, 50, 85, 161, 173, 202, 204,
 216, 230, 245, 385, 391, 407, 559, 568
 P_AT_EX 41, 216, 498
 P_AT_EX 2_ε 216
 quotchap . . 50, 72, 85, 173, 217, 233, 251,
 400, 569

- RomanianT_EX 500
romannum . 50, 72, 85, 174, 217, 233, 251,
400, 569
sectsty 50, 67, 85, 125, 162, 218, 232, 245,
250, 399, 557, 568
sfheaders . 50, 72, 85, 174, 218, 233, 251,
401, 569
shorttoc 19, 218, 547
S_LT_EX 41, 218, 514
splitbib 57, 218
stdclsdv 217, 218
subfig 31, 85, 138, 195, 211, 218, 219, 366
subfigure 31, 85, 132, 211, 219
thailatex 219, 514, 570
titlesec 50, 85, 219
titletoc 50, 85, 163, 219, 384
tocbibind 47, 49, 62, 85, 89, 90, 92,
94, 95, 98, 99, 134, 136, 137, 152, 210,
211, 219, 230, 383, 552
toch 547
tocloft . 49, 61, 62, 68, 74, 75, 85, 112, 113,
125, 152, 210, 211, 220, 384
txfonts 34
varioref 132
varsect 50, 69, 85, 162, 220, 232, 245, 250,
399, 562
vietnam 41, 518
wrapfig 130, 211, 221
xr 26, 221, 287, 547, 562
xr-hyper 221
\PackageWarning 5132
\PackageWarningNoLine 5132
\pagebreak . 677, 749, 817, 1430, 1504, 1579,
2030, 2097, 2165
\pagenumbering 2274, 2280
\pageref 2527
\pagestyle 1448
pageUn (environment) 114
Paić, Alan 236, 451
PAKIN, Scott 236
PAL, Palash Baran 236, 441
PANDEY, Anshuman 236, 452, 476
\paragraph . . 941, 963, 983, 994, 1011, 1217,
1239, 1258, 1291, 1709, 2323
\paragraph@mtcck 2711
\parbox 1416, 2465
parindent (option of KOMA) 39
\parsep 601, 1348, 1959
parskip (option of KOMA) 39
\parskip . . 9, 1348, 1389, 1462, 1537, 1991,
2057, 2124
part 246, 247
\part 1, 192, 195,
200, 272, 304, 308, 314, 535, 559, 645,
830, 853, 969, 1026, 1117, 1245, 1298,
1603, 1619, 1632, 1655, 1679, 1703,
1792, 1841, 1854, 3379, 3395, 3422,
3438, 4011, 4722
\part@mtcck . . 2706, 2733, 2741, 2747, 2753,
2762, 2769
\partbegin . 1, 1328, 1586, 1782, 1844, 1906,
4881
\partend 1586, 1771, 1834, 1896, 4881
\partlof . . 1, 560, 646, 855, 971, 1029, 1119,
1247, 1289, 1359, 1432, 4125, 4213,
4300, 4750, 4888
\partlof@ 874, 1432, 1433
\partlof@mtcck 2700, 2724
partlofdepth (depth counter) 31, 199, 215, 297,
306
\partlot 1, 560,
646, 856, 972, 1031, 1120, 1289, 1359,
1506, 4134, 4222, 4311, 4750, 4888
\partlot@ 874, 1506, 1507
\partlot@mtcck 2703, 2728
partlotdepth (depth counter) 31, 199, 216, 297,
309
\partopsep 605, 1348, 1958
\parttoc . 1, 32, 193, 198, 203, 305, 309, 315,
560, 646, 854, 970, 1027, 1118, 1246,
1289, 1299, 1359, 1606, 1620, 1633,
1657, 1660, 1663, 1666, 1705, 1708,
1711, 1714, 4116, 4204, 4289, 4750,
4888
\parttoc@ 874, 1359, 1360
\parttoc@mtcck 2697, 2718
parttocdepth (depth counter) . 20, 31, 79, 199,
216, 297, 303
PATASHNIK, Oren 195, 236
\pchapter 1581, 1709, 4907
PELGER, Matthias 236
People
ABOLHASSANI, Hassan 235, 459
ABU EL-ATA, Nabil 235
ADDABBO, Tommaso 235
AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. 235, 441
AJ, Alex 235, 490, 491
AKOPIAN, Vardan 194, 235, 438
ANDRIEUX, Jérôme 235
ANGELI, Ralf 235
ARADIAN, Achod André 235
ÁRNASON, Einar 235, 477
ARNOLD, Tim 235
ARSENEAU, Donald 29, 49, 85, 214, 230, 235,
249, 254, 259, 274, 277, 280, 548, 551,
554, 566, 574
ASPINALL, David 235
ÅSSEN, Ivar 235, 496

- BACHMANN, Philipp 235
 BADENES, Gonvcal 235, 449
 BALGARENSKY, Marin 235
 BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves 235
 BAUSUM, David 235
 BAYART, Benjamin . 46, 231, 235, 346, 554,
 556
 BAYET, Thierry 235
 BECCARI, Claudio 235, 480, 484, 485
 BEFFARA, Emmanuel 58, 235
 BÉRCES, József 235, 488, 489
 BERRY, Karl 235
 BEZOS, Javier 85, 235, 470, 511, 513
 BILOTTA, Giuseppe 215, 235
 BÍRÓ, Árpád 235, 488, 489
 BITOUZÉ, Denis 235
 BLOCH, Laurent 235
 BOSNAKOV, Georgi 235, 446
 BOUGETTE, Patrice 235
 BOURBONNAIS, Daniel 235
 BOYKO, Victor 235, 505
 BRAAMS, Johannes . 41, 195, 228, 235, 435,
 453–455, 465, 479, 495, 496, 519, 549
 BRAUN, Felix 85, 193, 204, 235
 BURC, Mustafa 235, 515
 CARDI, Olivier 235
 CARELLA, David 235
 CARLISLE, David . . . 26, 221, 235, 287, 547
 CARMODY, Kevin 235, 452, 476
 CARRIBA, Manuel 235, 464
 CASPAR, Régis 235
 CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme 235
 CHLEBIKOVA, Jana 235, 510
 CLEGG, Marian 235
 COCHRAN, Steven Douglas 31, 50, 73, 85, 235
 CODOGNO, Maurizio 235, 480
 COOK, David B. 235
 CORFF, Oliver 235
 COUNTCHAM, Prakash 235
 D'ACHIAN, Serguei 194, 235, 438
 DAERR, Adrian 235
 DALALYAN, Arnak 194, 235, 438
 DALY, Patrick W. 235
 DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas 235, 444
 DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien 235
 DEPARDIEU, Éric 235
 DE RYDT, Ben 235
 DORJ, Dorjpalam 235
 DUDDING, Lyndon 61, 235
 ÈEHAJA, Marko 235, 509
 EIJKHOUT, Victor 235
 ELS, Danie 235
 ESFAHBOD, Behdad 235, 459
 ESSER, Thomas 235
 EVERITT, Karl F. 235, 552
 FABIAN, Mike 235
 FAIRBAIRNS, Robin 235
 FEAR, Simon 235
 FENN, Jürgen 235
 FESSLER, Jeff 235
 FISCHER, Ulrike 235
 FLIPO, Daniel 235, 461–463
 FLYNN, Peter 235
 FOX, Jim 235
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. 235
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego 235
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert 235
 GHODSI, Mohammad 235, 434, 459
 GLEISZNER, Markus 235, 563
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali 235
 GOOSSENS, Michel 235, 549
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu 235
 GRANT, Fraser 235, 479, 508
 GRAY, Norman 220, 235
 GRENON, Loïc 235
 GROT, Sébastien 235
 GUIGNARD, Micael 235
 GUNN, Marion 235, 479
 HAGEN, Hans 235
 HAMZI, Boumediene 235
 HAPPEL, Patrick 235
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis 214, 235
 HARIN, Alexander 235, 505
 HARRIS, Russel L. 235
 HEAP, Danny 235
 HEIDER, André 235
 HEIN, Thorsten 235
 HELLMAN, Sten 235, 513
 HELSTRUP, Haavard 235, 495, 496
 HENEL, Yvon 235
 HENNIG, Stephan 51, 69, 85, 235
 HENRY, Florence 235
 HERBORN, Stephen 235
 HØGHOLM, Morten 235
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil 235, 495, 496
 HOSEK, Don 235, 557
 HU, Yufan 235, 546
 HUSEBY, Dave W. 235
 IVANOV, Dmitry 194, 235, 467–469, 485, 497,
 501, 502
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar 235, 495, 496
 IZAOLA, Zunbeltz 235, 441
 JABRI, Youssef 194, 235, 437, 460
 JAEHNE, Bernd 59, 207, 230, 235, 287
 JALAM, Radwan 235
 JANICH, Michael 235, 497
 JERNSLETTEN, Regnor 235, 508
 JIANG, Zhuhan 235

- JOLY, Loïc 235
 JONES, David M. 50, 76, 85, 235
 JORSSEN, Christophe 235
 JUHASZ, Robert 235, 499
 JUNGE, Stefan 235
 JURAFSKY, Dan 24, 228, 235, 546
 KANERVA, Mikko 235, 460, 461
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak 235, 514
 KASTRUP, David 235
 KERYELL, Ronan 203, 235
 KIELHORN, Axel 85, 235
 KIM, Ki-Joo 235
 KLEB, Bil 50, 235
 KLEIWEG, Peter 235, 478
 KLEVELAND, Rune 235, 495, 496
 KNAPPEN, Jörg 235, 440, 449, 455
 KNUTH, Donald 198, 212, 214, 219, 235
 KOHM, Markus 85, 235
 KOPKA, Helmut 235
 KOPPANYI, Attila 235, 488
 KORAI, Adamantios 235, 469
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent 235
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar 235
 KRYOKOV, Alexej M. 194, 235, 467–469,
 485, 497, 501, 502
 KUHN, Markus G. 235
 KULZER, Florian 235
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiki 235, 481, 483
 KÜSTER, Frank 50, 72, 85, 235, 509
 LABORDE, Stéphane 235
 LAGALLY, Klaus 36, 194, 235, 436, 437
 LAMPORT, Leslie 205, 235
 LANARI, Fabio 235
 LANGE, Robert 235
 LANGMYHR, Dag 235, 495, 496, 550
 LAPKO, Olga G. 236, 447, 503, 516
 LARSEN, Henning 236, 452
 LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc 236
 LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe 236
 LAUNAY, Arnaud 236
 LAUVERNET, Claire 236
 LAVVA, Boris 236, 475
 LEBACQ, André 236
 LEMBERG, Werner 197, 236, 447, 450,
 470–474, 481–483, 503, 514
 LEONHARDT, Thomas 236, 553
 LE PENNEC, Erwan 236
 LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane 236
 LE THUAUT, Julien 236
 LEWENBERG, Adam 236
 LICKERT, Knut 208, 236, 373
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. 50, 72, 85, 236
 LINGNAU, Anselm 236
 LOBEL, Pierre 236
 LOKAJICEK, Milos 236, 451
 LORETI, Maurizio 50, 72, 85, 236
 LORINO, Tristan 236
 LOVE, Tim 236
 LOZANO, Vincent 236
 LUECKING, Dan 236
 LUNDE, Ken 198, 236
 LYHNE, Anders 236
 MACKAY, Pierre 236, 515
 MADSEN, Lars 236
 MAHONEY, Richard 236, 452, 477
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 236
 MARGOLIS, Bob 236, 440
 MARKEY, Nicolas 236
 MARR, Marcus 236
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise 236
 MART, Terry 236, 440
 MASLOV, Vadim 236, 505
 MASSIAS, Henri 63, 236
 MATTHIAS, Andreas 236
 MATTISSON, Sven 236, 514
 McDONNELL, Rowland 50, 67, 85, 236
 MCKAY, Ben 236
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant 236, 514
 MENGIN, Sébastien 236
 MICHOU, Yanick 236
 MITTELBACH, Frank 205, 228, 236, 270, 299,
 323, 549, 552, 553
 MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 85, 236
 MORI, Lapo Filippo 236
 MORRISON, Michael A. 236
 MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan 236, 509
 NAUMOV, Sergei O. 236, 506
 NEUKAM, Frank 85, 236
 NGUYEN, Cuong 236
 NICOLAS, Julien 236
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf 236
 NOIREL, Josselin 236
 OBERDIEK, Heiko 59, 85, 207, 230, 236, 287,
 296, 551
 OLKO, Mariusz 236, 498
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik 236, 513
 OTT, Jörg 236
 PAIĆ, Alan 236, 451
 PAKIN, Scott 236
 PAL, Palash Baran 236, 441
 PANDEY, Anshuman 236, 452, 476
 PATASHNIK, Oren 195, 236
 PELGER, Matthias 236
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset 236, 495, 496
 PIGUET, Bruno 236
 PLAICE, John 214, 236
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 236, 514
 POPPELIER, Nico 236

- PORRAT, Rama 236
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 236
 POURNADER, Roozbeh 236, 459
 RADHAKRISHNAN, CV 236, 452, 476
 RAHTZ, Sebastian 85, 236
 RAICHLÉ, Bernd 236, 465, 494, 500
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro 236, 444, 499
 REINO, Keranen 236, 460, 461
 REZUŞ, Adrian 236, 500
 ROBERTS, A.J. “Tony” 236, 290
 ROEGEL, Denis B. 228, 236, 549, 550
 ROLLAND, Christian 236
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti 236, 455
 RYNNING, Jan Michel 236, 513, 549
 RYU, Young 236
 SAAR, Enn 236, 456
 SAMSOEN, David 236
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio 236, 441, 511
 SANGEUX, Morgan 236
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie 236
 SCHALUECK, Elmar 236, 497
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias 236, 510
 SCHMIDT, Walter 494
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe 236
 SCHRÖDER, Martin 236
 SHIN, Jungshik 236
 SHOUKAT, Ali 236
 SHVAIKA, Andriy M. 236, 516
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop 236, 514
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic 236, 509
 SMITH, John 236, 452, 476
 SOCHA, Robin S. 236
 SOMMERFELDT, Axel 51, 69, 85, 196, 236
 STEINER, Arjen 236
 STORY, D.P. 236
 STREIT, Éric 236
 STUBNER, Ralf 236
 SWOYER, Chris 236
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos 236, 466
 TA QUANG, Dung 236
 TAUPIN, Daniel 50, 69, 85, 236
 THÀNH, Hàn Thé 236, 565
 THUREAU, Aurélien 236
 TINNEFELD, Karsten 50, 72, 85, 236
 ’T LAM, Ton 236
 TOLUSIS, Sigitas 236, 486
 TORDELLA, Laurent 236
 TRETIN, Mark 236
 TRUU, Ahto 236
 ULRICH, Stefan 33, 236, 551
 UMSTATTER, Horst 236, 499
 UN, Koaunghi 203, 236, 473, 474
 UYAR, Turgut 236, 515
 VAARIO, Jari 236
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet 236
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas 236
 VAQUIN, Vincent 236
 VERNA, Didier 59, 207, 230, 236, 287
 VESCO, Sylvain 236
 VIAL, Alexandre 236
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir 236, 447, 503
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. 236, 254, 552
 VOSS, Herbert 236
 WAGNER, Zdeněk 236, 452, 476
 WARD, Nigel 24, 228, 236, 546
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek 236
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. 236
 WERNER, Eduard 236, 487, 517
 WILSON, Peter R. 47, 50, 51, 60–62, 67, 69,
 72, 85, 193, 194, 207, 236, 254
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin 236, 498
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth 236
 WRIGHT, Tim 236
 WUJASTYK, Dominik 236, 452, 477
 WYART, Damien 236
 YOGANANDA, C.S. 236, 484
 ZAIMI, Adi 236, 436
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig 236, 456
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo 236, 510
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad 236, 484,
 485
 ZENDER, Charlie S. 236
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. 236, 505–507
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe 236
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon 236, 510
 PETERST, Terje Engeset 236, 495, 496
 \pfill 333, 542
 PIGUET, Bruno 236
 placeins (package) 29, 49, 50, 85, 161, 173, 202,
 204, 216, 230, 245, 385, 391, 407, 559,
 568
 placeins.sty (file) 29
 placeins.txt (file) 29, 216
 PLAICE, John 214, 236
 plain.bst (file) 200, 203
 plainurl.bst (file) 234, 572
 L^AT_EX (package) 41, 216, 498
 L^AT_EX 2_ε (package) 216
 \PLF@ 1830, 1834
 \PLF@contentsline 1792, 1833, 1834
 \PLF@explist 1790, 1816
 \PLF@line 1828, 1830
 \PLF@list 1787, 1790, 1816, 1834
 \PLF@lof 1790, 1817, 1834
 \PLF@loop 1787, 1817
 \PLF@next 1603, 1787, 1816
 \plf@pgno 453, 454, 1490
 \PLF@read 1817, 1828, 1834

- \plf@rule 555, 1465, 1501, 2573, 2576, 2579
- \plf@setform 1490, 2927
- \PLF@test 1830, 1832, 1834
- \PLF@WriteContentsLine 1792
- \plfdotsep 2902, 2930, 2950, 2955
- \plffont ... 1, 1262, 1275, 1462, 1695, 4918
- \plfname 1792, 1795
- \plfpagenumbers 430, 453, 462, 4990
- \plfpnumwidth 2884, 2928, 2948, 2953
- \plfrule 2564, 4972
- \plfSfont 1, 1262, 1275, 1696, 4918
- \plftitle 1, 1447, 1453, 1465, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5221, 5242, 5263, 5281, 5299, 5321, 5350, 5367, 5384, 5402, 5418, 5434, 5450, 5466, 5483, 5504, 5527, 5559, 5583, 5599, 5634, 5672, 5691, 5708, 5731, 5748, 5765, 5784, 5814, 5831, 5852, 5868, 5901, 5941, 5958, 5975, 5996, 6015, 6048, 6081, 6096, 6113, 6128, 6146, 6167, 6171, 6207, 6247, 6284, 6392, 6419, 6462, 6484, 6509, 6526, 6544, 6562, 6645, 6646, 6666, 6683, 6702, 6724, 6741, 6765, 6782, 6799, 6820, 6843, 6860, 6884, 6913, 6928, 6947, 6963, 6986, 7002, 7015, 7034, 7052, 7073, 7090, 7108, 7141, 7162, 7202, 7244, 7274, 7342, 7359, 7376, 7396, 7418, 7435, 7456, 7471, 7487, 7508, 7525, 7542, 7566, 7613, 7631, 7658, 7679, 7694, 7709, 7724
- \plftocrmarg 2893, 2929, 2949, 2954
- \PLT@ 1892, 1896
- \PLT@contentsline 1854, 1895, 1896
- \PLT@explist 1852, 1878
- \PLT@line 1890, 1892
- \PLT@list 1849, 1852, 1878, 1896
- \PLT@loop 1849, 1879
- \PLT@lot 1852, 1879, 1896
- \PLT@next 1607, 1849, 1878, 2234
- \plt@pgno 459, 460, 1565
- \PLT@read 1879, 1890, 1896
- \plt@rule .555, 1544, 1577, 2582, 2585, 2588
- \plt@setform 1565, 2942
- \PLT@test 1892, 1894, 1896
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine 1854
- \pltdotsep 2902, 2945
- \pltfont ... 1, 1262, 1275, 1537, 1697, 4918
- \pltname 1854, 1857
- \pltpagenumbers 436, 459, 462, 4990
- \pltpnumwidth 2884, 2943
- \pltrule 2564, 4972
- \pltSfont 1, 1262, 1275, 1698, 4918
- \plttitle 1, 1522, 1528, 1544, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5222, 5243, 5264, 5282, 5300, 5322, 5351, 5368, 5385, 5403, 5419, 5435, 5451, 5467, 5484, 5505, 5530, 5561, 5584, 5600, 5635, 5673, 5692, 5709, 5732, 5749, 5766, 5787, 5815, 5832, 5853, 5871, 5903, 5942, 5959, 5976, 5997, 6018, 6051, 6082, 6097, 6114, 6129, 6147, 6211, 6251, 6285, 6394, 6422, 6463, 6485, 6510, 6527, 6545, 6563, 6667, 6684, 6703, 6725, 6742, 6766, 6783, 6800, 6821, 6844, 6861, 6885, 6914, 6929, 6948, 6964, 6987, 7003, 7016, 7035, 7053, 7074, 7091, 7109, 7126, 7127, 7142, 7166, 7206, 7247, 7275, 7343, 7360, 7377, 7398, 7419, 7436, 7457, 7472, 7488, 7509, 7526, 7543, 7567, 7615, 7632, 7659, 7680, 7695, 7710, 7725
- \plttocrmarg 2893, 2944
- pmk (script) 202, 208, 216, 223–226
- polish (language option) 36, 497
- polish.dtx (file) 497
- polish.mld (file) 223, 497
- polish2 (language option) 36, 41, 497
- polish2.mld (file) 194, 223, 497, 555
- polski (language option) 36, 216, 498
- polski.dtx (file) 498
- polski.mld (file) 223, 498, 566
- POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 236, 514
- POPPELIER, Nico 236
- PORRAT, Rama 236
- portuges (language option) 36, 498
- portuges.dtx (file) 444, 499
- portuges.mld (file) 223, 498, 557, 558
- portuges.mld (file) 557, 558
- portuguese (language option) ... 36, 498, 499
- portuguese.mld (file) ... 223, 498, 499, 558
- POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé 236
- POURNADER, Roozbeh 236, 459
- \printindex 1, 441, 735
- proc (class) 24, 198, 216, 217
- \ProcessOptions 4661
- \ProcessOptions* 4661
- \protect 1
- \providecommand ... 1906, 2098, 2099, 2107, 2108, 3615, 4638, 4741
- \ProvidesFile . 3, 56, 120, 182, 209, 233, 287, 323, 534, 789, 824, 1079, 1336, 1535, 1588, 1646, 1686, 1735, 1784, 1832, 1884, 2060, 2095, 2130, 2204, 2264, 2313, 2356, 2407, 2443, 4767, 5208, 5212, 5216, 5233, 5237, 5254, 5258, 5275, 5293, 5312, 5316, 5333, 5337,

- 5341, 5345, 5362, 5379, 5396, 5414,
5430, 5446, 5462, 5478, 5495, 5499,
5516, 5520, 5553, 5579, 5595, 5611,
5615, 5619, 5624, 5629, 5646, 5656,
5667, 5684, 5703, 5720, 5743, 5760,
5777, 5800, 5826, 5843, 5847, 5864,
5892, 5897, 5919, 5928, 5937, 5953,
5970, 5987, 5991, 6008, 6031, 6064,
6068, 6072, 6076, 6093, 6108, 6125,
6140, 6158, 6198, 6238, 6278, 6296,
6308, 6321, 6333, 6345, 6354, 6366,
6378, 6387, 6412, 6447, 6451, 6474,
6478, 6496, 6500, 6504, 6521, 6538,
6556, 6574, 6583, 6595, 6607, 6619,
6632, 6641, 6657, 6661, 6678, 6695,
6714, 6718, 6736, 6753, 6760, 6777,
6794, 6811, 6815, 6832, 6838, 6855,
6872, 6876, 6880, 6896, 6900, 6904,
6908, 6925, 6940, 6959, 6975, 6994,
7010, 7027, 7046, 7064, 7068, 7085,
7102, 7120, 7138, 7153, 7193, 7233,
7270, 7286, 7295, 7305, 7313, 7321,
7329, 7337, 7354, 7371, 7388, 7413,
7430, 7447, 7468, 7483, 7499, 7520,
7537, 7554, 7561, 7578, 7582, 7586,
7590, 7594, 7601, 7625, 7643, 7647,
7654, 7670, 7674, 7691, 7706, 7721
- `\ProvidesPackage` 2, 4771, 5133, 5146
- `\ps@chapterverso` 1887, 1896
- `\ps@empty` 1887, 1896
- `\psect` 1581, 4907
- `ptc` (counter) . **84, 255, 256, 267, 297, 310, 314, 317, 319**
- `\PTC@` 1767, 1771
- `\PTC@contentsline` 1679, 1770, 1771
- `\PTC@explist` 1677, 1753
- `\PTC@line` 1765, 1767
- `\PTC@list` 1674, 1677, 1753, 1771
- `\PTC@loop` 1674, 1754
- `\PTC@next` 1599, 1674, 1753
- `\ptc@pgno` 447, 448, 1413
- `\PTC@read` 1754, 1765, 1771
- `\ptc@rule` 1257, 1397, 1427, 1576, 2564, 2567, 2570
- `\ptc@setform` 1413, 2912
- `\ptc@spart` 1586
- `\PTC@test` 1767, 1769
- `\PTC@toc` 1677, 1754, 1771
- `ptc@verse` (environment) . **301, 303, 304, 306, 309, 356, 357**
- `\ptc@verse` 1348
- `ptc@verse` (environment) . . 1348, 1411, 1413, 1484, 1490, 1559, 1565, 2912, 2927, 2942
- `\ptcCfont` 1, 1275, 4918
- `\ptcdotsep` 2902, 2915
- `\ptcfont` . . . 1, 1262, 1275, 1389, 1691–1698, 4918
- `\ptcindent` . . 1260, 1348, 1406, 1479, 1554, 4779
- `\ptcname` 1679, 1696
- `\ptcpagenumbers` 416, 447, 462, 4990
- `\ptcPfont` 1, 1262, 1275, 1693, 4918
- `\ptcnumwidth` 2884, 2913
- `\ptcrule` 2564, 4972
- `\ptcSfont` 1, 1262, 1275, 4918
- `\ptcSPfont` 1, 1262, 1275, 1694, 4918
- `\ptcSSfont` 1, 1262, 1275, 1691, 4918
- `\ptcSSSfont` 1, 1262, 1275, 1692, 4918
- `\ptctitle` 1, 1374, 1380, 1397, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5220, 5241, 5262, 5280, 5298, 5320, 5349, 5366, 5383, 5401, 5417, 5433, 5449, 5465, 5482, 5503, 5525, 5557, 5582, 5598, 5633, 5671, 5690, 5707, 5730, 5747, 5764, 5781, 5813, 5830, 5851, 5867, 5900, 5940, 5957, 5974, 5995, 6012, 6045, 6080, 6095, 6112, 6127, 6145, 6164, 6204, 6244, 6283, 6390, 6416, 6461, 6483, 6508, 6525, 6543, 6561, 6644, 6665, 6682, 6701, 6723, 6740, 6764, 6781, 6798, 6819, 6842, 6859, 6883, 6912, 6927, 6946, 6962, 6985, 7001, 7014, 7033, 7051, 7072, 7089, 7107, 7125, 7140, 7159, 7199, 7238, 7241, 7273, 7341, 7358, 7375, 7394, 7417, 7434, 7452, 7454, 7470, 7486, 7504, 7506, 7524, 7541, 7565, 7612, 7630, 7657, 7678, 7693, 7708, 7723
- `\ptctocmarg` 2893, 2914
- `\ptifont` . . 1, 1262, 1275, 1299, 1313, 1327, 1397, 1465, 1544, 4918
- ### Q
- `\qaf` 5299, 5300, 5303, 5304, 5307, 5308
- `\quad` 1375, 2492, 2502, 2507, 2517
- `quotchap` (package) . . **50, 72, 85, 173, 217, 233, 251, 400, 569**
- `quote` (environment) **562**
- `\qva` 5731, 5735, 5739, 6462, 6466, 6470
- ### R
- `\r@mti` 590, 628, 698, 766, 910, 929, 948
- `\r@pti` . . 1289, 1313, 1380, 1453, 1528, 1614, 1633, 1652
- `\r@sti` . . 1943, 1981, 2048, 2115, 2241, 2260, 2279
- `\ra` 5298, 5302, 5306, 5940, 5944, 5948

- RADHAKRISHNAN, CV **236, 452, 476**
 \raggedbottom 838, 1093
 \raggedright 638, 708, 776, 1307, 1382, 1389,
 1462, 1537, 1914, 1991, 2057, 2124,
 2241
 RAHTZ, Sebastian **85, 236**
 RAICHLÉ, Bernd **236, 465, 494, 500**
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro **236, 444, 499**
 rapport.doc (file) **514**
 \re 5730, 5734, 5738, 6461, 6465, 6469
 \read . 238, 326, 1055, 1123, 1184, 1766, 1829,
 1891, 2380, 2441, 2502
 README (file) **223, 224, 226**
 \ref 1996, 2255, 2527–2531, 2534, 2537
 \refstepcounter 2189, 5173
 REINO, Keranen **236, 460, 461**
 \removeastskip 12
 \renewcommand 196, 197, 201,
 202, 219, 833, 835, 1088–1090, 1363,
 1427, 1432, 1446, 1455, 1456, 1913,
 2100, 2101, 2109, 2110, 2208, 5151
 report (class) . **24, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 71, 73,**
106, 122, 186, 187, 198, 200, 202, 205,
210, 217, 218, 221, 257, 258, 265, 298,
572
 \RequirePackage . . 2, 205, 4662, 4668, 4774,
 5148
 \reset@font 369, 640, 647, 651, 710, 717, 721,
 778, 785, 789, 1208, 1213, 1226, 1228,
 1391, 1399, 1403, 1464, 1471, 1475,
 1539, 1546, 1550, 1993, 2001, 2005,
 2059, 2066, 2071, 2126, 2133, 2138
 \resh 6392–6394, 6399–6401, 6406–6408
 REZUŞ, Adrian **236, 500**
 \rightmargin . 610, 656, 726, 794, 1357, 1408,
 1481, 1556, 1963, 2010, 2076, 2143
 \rmfamily 578, 579, 588, 589, 833, 1263,
 1264, 1273, 1276–1278, 1287, 1659,
 1707, 1933, 1934, 1942, 2109, 2110,
 2219–2223, 2225–2228
 rmk (script) **217, 223–226**
 ROBERTS, A.J. “Tony” **236, 290**
 ROEGEL, Denis B. **228, 236, 549, 550**
 ROLLAND, Christian **236**
 \Roman . . . 5783, 5786, 5789, 5812, 6014, 6017,
 6020, 6044
 romanian (language option) **36, 499**
 romanian.dtx (file) **499, 500**
 romanian.mld (file) **223, 499**
 romanian2 (language option) **36, 500**
 romanian2.mld (file) **223, 500, 564, 572**
 romanian3 (language option) **36, 500**
 romanian3.mld (file) **223, 500, 564, 572**
 RomanianT_EX (package) **500**
 romannum (package) . **50, 72, 85, 174, 217, 233,**
251, 400, 569
 \rs 5730, 5734, 5738, 6461, 6465, 6469
 \ru 2449, 2473
 rubber (tool) **58, 217, 559**
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti **236, 455**
 \rule 330,
 334, 338, 681, 1258, 1399, 1408, 1931,
 2570–2572, 2579–2581, 2588–2590
 russian (language option) **36, 501–504**
 russian-cca (language option) **36, 505**
 russian-cca.mld (file) **223, 505, 567**
 russian-cca.mlo (file) **223, 505**
 russian-cca1 (language option) **36, 505**
 russian-cca1.mld (file) **223, 505, 567**
 russian-cca1.mlo (file) **223, 505**
 russian-lh (language option) **36, 506**
 russian-lh.mld (file) **223, 506, 567**
 russian-lh.mlo (file) **223, 506**
 russian-lhcyralt (language option) . **36, 506**
 russian-lhcyralt.mld (file) . . **223, 506, 567**
 russian-lhcyralt.mlo (file) **223, 506**
 russian-lhcyrkoi (language option) . **36, 507**
 russian-lhcyrkoi.mld (file) . . **223, 507, 567**
 russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo (file) **223, 507**
 russian-lhcyrwin (language option) . **36, 507**
 russian-lhcyrwin.mld (file) . . **223, 507, 567**
 russian-lhcyrwin.mlo (file) **223, 507**
 russian.def (file) **504**
 russian.mld (file) **223, 501**
 russian.sty (file) **505, 506**
 russian2m (language option) **36, 41, 501**
 russian2m.ldf (file) **501**
 russian2m.mld (file) **194, 223, 501, 555**
 russian2o (language option) **36, 41, 502**
 russian2o.mld (file) **194, 223, 502, 555**
 russianb (language option) **36, 503**
 russianb.dtx (file) **447, 503**
 russianb.mld (file) **223, 503, 566**
 russianc (language option) **36, 504**
 russianc.mld (file) **223, 504**
 RYNNING, Jan Michel **236, 513, 549**
 RYU, Young **236**
- S**
- SAAR, Enn **236, 456**
 samepage (environment) **273, 274, 276, 278, 279,**
281, 302, 305, 308, 325, 328, 330, 548
 samepage (environment) 628, 672,
 698, 745, 766, 813, 1380, 1427, 1453,
 1501, 1528, 1576, 1981, 2027, 2048,
 2094, 2115, 2162
 samin (language option) **36, 508**
 samin.dtx (file) **508**

- samin.mld (file) **223, 508, 552**
- SAMSOEN, David **236**
- SÁNCHEZ, Julio **236, 441, 511**
- SANGEUX, Morgan **236**
- SAUDRAIS, Eddie **236**
- \scan@allowedtrue 330, 539
- SCHALUECK, Elmar **236, 497**
- \schapter 1, 2166
- SCHLEMMER, Tobias **236, 510**
- SCHMIDT, Walter **494**
- SCHNEIDER, Uwe **236**
- SCHRÖDER, Martin **236**
- scottish (language option) **36, 508**
- scottish.dtx (file) **508**
- scottish.mld (file) **223, 508**
- scr.tex (old example document) **570, 573**
- scrartcl (class) **39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 151, 204, 205, 217, 218**
- scrbook (class) **39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 123, 151, 204, 205, 210, 217, 218**
- Scripts
- emk **200, 204, 208, 217, 223–226, 561**
- fmk **202, 204, 217, 223–226, 561**
- imk **200, 202, 204, 217, 223–226, 561, 569**
- pmk **202, 208, 216, 223–226**
- rmk **217, 223–226**
- tmk **219, 223–226, 234, 575**
- xmk **221, 223–226, 571**
- scrlettr (class) **204, 205**
- scrlettr2 (class) **204, 205**
- scrreprt (class) **39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 134, 151, 204, 205, 211, 217, 218**
- \scshape . 2100, 2101, 2105, 2106, 2109–2111
- secnumdepth (depth counter) **199, 200**
- second.tex (old example document) **570, 573**
- \sectbegin . . 2218, 2383, 2444, 2505, 4881
- \sectend 2218, 2383, 2444, 2505, 4881
- section **246, 247**
- section (option of placeins) **29, 30, 50, 161, 407**
- \section . 1, 289, 305, 830, 994, 1709, 2179, 2306, 2403, 2464, 4011, 4049, 4728
- \section@mtcck 2708, 2755, 2764, 2771
- \sectionfont 1914
- \sectlof . 1, 564, 623, 650, 712, 744, 766, 861, 928, 957, 976, 1002, 1037, 1056, 2031, 4104, 4183, 4271, 4370, 4761, 4900
- \sectlof@ 884, 2031, 2032
- \sectlof@mtcck 2702, 2761
- sectlofdepth (depth counter) **31, 199, 217, 322, 329**
- \sectlot 1, 564, 623, 650, 712, 744, 766, 1057, 1745, 1765, 2098, 4104, 4192, 4280, 4381, 4761, 4900
- \sectlot@ 884, 2098, 2099
- \sectlot@mtcck 2705, 2768
- sectlotdepth (depth counter) **31, 63, 199, 218, 322, 331**
- sectsty (package) **50, 67, 85, 125, 162, 218, 232, 245, 250, 399, 557, 568**
- \secttoc . 1, 564, 623, 650, 712, 744, 766, 860, 926, 957, 974, 975, 1001, 1036, 1055, 1965, 2423, 2432, 4174, 4262, 4359, 4761, 4900
- \secttoc@ 884, 1965, 1966
- \secttoc@mtcck 2699, 2752
- secttocdepth (depth counter) . **28, 31, 81, 199, 218, 322, 326**
- \seen 5298, 5302, 5306, 5940–5942, 5944–5946, 5948–5950
- \selectlanguage 6757, 7598, 7651
- serbian (language option) **36, 509**
- serbian.dtx (file) **509**
- serbian.mld (file) **223, 509, 565**
- serbianc (language option) **36, 509**
- serbianc.mld (file) **41, 223, 509, 555, 565**
- \setcounter 1, 1233, 1239, 1599, 1603, 1607, 1912, 3265, 3289, 3303, 3336, 3507
- \setvruler 189
- \sf 835, 1090
- \sffamily 1375, 1377, 1384, 1912
- sfheaders (package) . **50, 72, 85, 174, 218, 233, 251, 401, 569**
- \sh 5582, 5586, 5590
- \sheen . . . 5299, 5303, 5307, 5941, 5945, 5949
- \shin 6392, 6394, 6399, 6401, 6406, 6408
- SHIN, Jungshik **236**
- shorttext (option) **50, 56, 77, 158, 195, 218, 229, 375, 551**
- shorttoc (package) **19, 218, 547**
- SHOUKAT, Ali **236**
- SHVAIKA, Andriy M. **236, 516**
- SILPA-ANAN, Chanop **236, 514**
- \sixt@n 326
- SJIS.cap (file) **482**
- SJIS.cpx (file) **483**
- SL^AT_EX (package) **41, 218, 514**
- \SLF@ 2442, 2444
- \SLF@contentsline 2403, 2444
- \SLF@explist 2401, 2428
- \SLF@line 2440
- \SLF@list 2398, 2401, 2428, 2444
- \SLF@lof 2401, 2429, 2444
- \SLF@loop 2398, 2429
- \SLF@next 2230, 2398, 2428
- \slf@pgno 451, 452, 2085
- \SLF@read 2429, 2440, 2444
- \slf@rule . 555, 2062, 2095, 2575, 2578, 2581
- \slf@setform 2085, 2937

- \SLF@test 2440, 2444
- \slfdotsep 2902, 2940
- \slffont 1, 1933, 2057, 4941
- \slflotrmarg 2893
- \slfname 2403, 2408
- \slfpagenumbers 430, 451, 462, 4990
- \slfpnumwidth 2884, 2938
- \slfrule 2564, 4972
- \slfSfont 1, 1933, 4941
- \slftitle 1, 2046, 2048, 2062, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5229, 5250, 5271, 5289, 5307, 5329, 5358, 5375, 5392, 5410, 5426, 5442, 5458, 5474, 5491, 5512, 5545, 5573, 5591, 5607, 5642, 5680, 5699, 5716, 5739, 5756, 5773, 5796, 5822, 5839, 5860, 5884, 5913, 5949, 5966, 5983, 6004, 6027, 6060, 6089, 6104, 6121, 6136, 6154, 6189, 6193, 6229, 6269, 6292, 6406, 6439, 6470, 6492, 6517, 6534, 6552, 6570, 6653, 6654, 6674, 6691, 6710, 6732, 6749, 6773, 6790, 6807, 6828, 6851, 6868, 6892, 6921, 6936, 6955, 6971, 6990, 7006, 7023, 7042, 7060, 7081, 7098, 7116, 7149, 7184, 7224, 7262, 7282, 7350, 7367, 7384, 7408, 7426, 7443, 7464, 7479, 7495, 7516, 7533, 7550, 7574, 7619, 7639, 7666, 7687, 7702, 7717, 7732
- \slftocrmarg 2898, 2939
- slides (class) **198**
- SLOBODAN, Jankovic **236, 509**
- \sloppy 857, 1121
- slovak (language option) **36, 510**
- slovak.dtx (file) **510**
- slovak.mld (file) **223, 510**
- slovene (language option) **36, 510**
- slovene.dtx (file) **510**
- slovene.mld (file) **223, 510**
- \slshape 589, 2220, 2222, 2225, 2227
- \SLT@ 2503, 2505
- \SLT@contentsline 2464, 2505
- \SLT@explist 2462, 2489
- \SLT@line 2501
- \SLT@list 2459, 2462, 2489, 2505
- \SLT@loop 2459, 2490
- \SLT@lot 2462, 2490, 2505
- \SLT@next 2237, 2459, 2489
- \slt@pgno 457, 458, 2152
- \SLT@read 2490, 2501, 2505
- \slt@rule . 555, 2131, 2163, 2584, 2587, 2590
- \slt@setform 2152, 2952
- \SLT@test 2501, 2505
- \sltdotsep 2902
- \sltfont 1, 1933, 2124, 4941
- \sltlotrmarg 2893
- \sltname 2464, 2469
- \sltpagenumbers 436, 457, 462, 4990
- \sltpnumwidth 2884
- \sltrule 2564, 4972
- \sltSfont 1, 1933, 4941
- \sltttitle 1, 2113, 2115, 2129, 3615, 4638, 5207, 5230, 5251, 5272, 5290, 5308, 5330, 5359, 5376, 5393, 5411, 5427, 5443, 5459, 5475, 5492, 5513, 5548, 5575, 5592, 5608, 5643, 5681, 5700, 5717, 5740, 5757, 5774, 5797, 5823, 5840, 5861, 5887, 5915, 5950, 5967, 5984, 6005, 6028, 6061, 6090, 6105, 6122, 6137, 6155, 6233, 6273, 6293, 6408, 6442, 6471, 6493, 6518, 6535, 6553, 6571, 6675, 6692, 6711, 6733, 6750, 6774, 6791, 6808, 6829, 6852, 6869, 6893, 6922, 6937, 6956, 6972, 6991, 7007, 7024, 7043, 7061, 7082, 7099, 7117, 7134, 7135, 7150, 7188, 7228, 7265, 7283, 7351, 7368, 7385, 7410, 7427, 7444, 7465, 7480, 7496, 7517, 7534, 7551, 7575, 7621, 7640, 7667, 7688, 7703, 7718, 7733
- \slttocrmarg 2901
- SMITH, John **236, 452, 476**
- SOCHA, Robin S. **236**
- SOMMERFELDT, Axel **51, 69, 85, 196, 236**
- spanish (language option) **36, 449, 511**
- spanish.dtx (file) **511–513**
- spanish.mld (file) **223, 449, 511, 566**
- spanish2 (language option) **36, 511, 512**
- spanish2.mld (file) **223, 512, 557**
- spanish3 (language option) .. **36, 41, 511, 512**
- spanish3.mld (file) **194, 223, 512, 559**
- spanish4 (language option) **36, 511, 513**
- spanish4.mld (file) **223, 513, 564**
- \spart 1
- splitbib (package) **57, 218**
- \star 1427, 1432
- \starchapter 895, 1012, 1733
- \starparagraph 1026, 1733, 2354
- \starpart 1694
- \starsection 1026, 1733, 2179, 2339
- \starsubparagraph 1026, 1733, 2354
- \starsubsection 1026, 1733, 2354
- \starsubsubsection 1026, 1733, 2354
- stc **258**
- stc (counter) . **84, 255, 257, 258, 267, 322, 337, 339, 342, 552**
- \STC@ 2381, 2383
- \STC@contentsline 2306, 2383

- \STC@explist 2304, 2367
- \STC@line 2379, 2381
- \STC@list 2301, 2304, 2367, 2383
- \STC@loop 2301, 2368
- \STC@next 2226, 2301, 2367
- \stc@pgno 445, 446, 2015
- \STC@read 2368, 2379, 2383
- \stc@rule . . . 1920, 1996, 2027, 2094, 2129,
2162, 2566, 2569, 2572
- \stc@sect 2218
- \stc@setform 2015, 2922
- \STC@test 2381, 2383
- \STC@toc 2304, 2368, 2383
- stc@verse (environment) . **324, 326, 329, 331,**
356, 357, 557
- \stc@verse 1954
- stc@verse (environment) . . 1954, 2013, 2015,
2079, 2085, 2146, 2152, 2922, 2937,
2952
- \stcdotsep 2902, 2925
- \stcfont 1, 833, 1933, 1991, 4941
- \stcindent 831, 1920, 1962, 2008, 2074, 2141,
2414, 4775
- \stclotrmarg 2893
- \stcname 2306, 2311, 2339
- \stcpagenumbers 406, 445, 462, 4990
- \stcPfont 1, 836, 1933, 4941
- \stcnumwidth 2884, 2923
- \stcPSfont 1
- \stcrule 2564, 4972
- \stcSPfont 836, 1933, 4941
- \stcSSfont 1, 835, 1933, 4941
- \stcSSSfont 1, 836, 1933, 4941
- \stctitle 1, 1981, 1996, 3615, 4638,
5207, 5228, 5249, 5270, 5288, 5306,
5328, 5357, 5374, 5391, 5409, 5425,
5441, 5457, 5473, 5490, 5511, 5543,
5571, 5590, 5606, 5641, 5679, 5698,
5715, 5738, 5755, 5772, 5795, 5821,
5838, 5859, 5883, 5912, 5948, 5965,
5982, 6003, 6026, 6059, 6088, 6103,
6120, 6135, 6153, 6186, 6226, 6266,
6291, 6404, 6436, 6469, 6491, 6516,
6533, 6551, 6569, 6652, 6673, 6690,
6709, 6731, 6748, 6772, 6789, 6806,
6827, 6850, 6867, 6891, 6920, 6935,
6954, 6970, 6989, 7005, 7022, 7041,
7059, 7080, 7097, 7115, 7133, 7148,
7181, 7221, 7260, 7281, 7349, 7366,
7383, 7406, 7425, 7442, 7463, 7478,
7494, 7515, 7532, 7549, 7573, 7618,
7638, 7665, 7686, 7701, 7716, 7731
- \stctocmarg 2895, 2924
- stdclsdv (package) **217, 218**
- STEINER, Arjen **236**
- \stepcounter 272, 305, 317, 532, 980,
1012, 1089, 1150, 1586, 1681, 1695,
1734, 1794, 1856, 2309, 2339, 2406,
2467
- \stifont . . . 1, 1933, 1996, 2062, 2129, 4941
- STORY, D.P. **236**
- STREIT, Éric **236**
- STUBNER, Ralf **236**
- subappendices (environment) **194**
- subf.tex (old example document) . . **570, 573**
- subfig (package) **31, 85, 138, 195, 211, 218, 219,**
366
- \subfigbottomskip 2215, 2245
- \subfigcapskip 2535
- \subfigtopskip 2214, 2245
- subfigure (package) **31, 85, 132, 211, 219**
- \subfigure 1102,
1807, 2243, 2246, 2248, 2420, 2488,
2493, 2498, 2503, 2508, 2513, 2518
- \subfigure@mtcqk . . 2715, 2720, 2730, 2736,
2750, 2757, 2773
- \subparagraph 943, 965, 985, 994, 1021, 1293,
1709, 2323
- \subparagraph@mtcqk 2712
- \subref 2528–2531
- \subsection . . . 565, 574, 624, 633, 651, 660,
713, 722, 745, 754, 767, 776, 863, 865,
867, 869, 872, 874, 876, 878, 880, 882,
884, 886, 888, 890, 892, 894, 896, 898,
900, 902, 904, 906, 908, 910, 912, 914,
916, 918, 920, 922, 930, 952, 959, 967,
979, 994, 995, 1007, 1023, 1038, 1040,
1042, 1051, 1059, 1061, 1063, 1065,
1186, 1213, 1233, 1254, 1280, 1498,
1503, 1515, 1520, 1557, 1672, 1674,
1678, 1680, 1709, 1720, 1722, 1726,
1728, 1935, 1954, 1973, 1980, 1990,
1994, 2006, 2012, 2023, 2030, 2036,
2323, 2424, 2429, 2433, 2438
- \subsection@mtcqk 2709
- \subsubsection 642,
643, 939, 961, 981, 994, 1009, 1215,
1236, 1256, 1282, 1709, 1958, 1963,
1968, 2017, 2041, 2047, 2052, 2323,
2425, 2427, 2434, 2436
- \subsubsection@mtcqk 2710
- \subtable 1163, 1869, 2481
- \subtable@mtcqk . . . 2716, 2722, 2726, 2738,
2744, 2759, 2766
- \sv@chapter 820
- \sv@minilof@ 864
- \sv@minilot@ 864
- \sv@minitoc@ 864

- \sv@part 1586
 - \sv@partlof@ 874
 - \sv@partlot@ 874
 - \sv@parttoc@ 874
 - \sv@sect 2172, 2178
 - \sv@sectlof@ 884
 - \sv@sectlot@ 884
 - \sv@secttoc@ 884
 - \sv@spart 1586
 - swedish (language option) **36, 513**
 - swedish.dtx (file) **513**
 - swedish.mld (file) **223, 513**
 - swedish2 (language option) **36, 514**
 - swedish2.mld (file) **223, 514, 568**
 - SWOYER, Chris **236**
 - SYROPOULOS, Apostolos **236, 466**
- T**
- \taa 5940–5942, 5944–5946, 5948–5950
 - table (environment) **196, 218**
 - \table 1163, 1869, 2481
 - \table@mtcck . . . 2714, 2721, 2725, 2737, 2743, 2758, 2765
 - \tableofcontents 1, 13, 217, 243, 299, 342, 553, 796, 850, 1113, 1540, 1602, 1654, 1702, 1839, 1922, 2070, 2116, 2138, 2230, 2276, 2332, 2362, 4073, 4291, 4326, 4361
 - tabular (environment) **273, 276, 279, 303, 306, 309, 325, 328, 331**
 - tabular (environment) . . 628, 698, 766, 1397, 1465, 1544, 1996, 2062, 2129
 - TA QUANG, Dung **236**
 - TAUPIN, Daniel **50, 69, 85, 236**
 - \tav . 6390, 6392, 6394, 6395, 6397, 6399, 6401, 6402, 6404, 6406, 6408, 6409
 - tbi.tex (old example document) . . . **570, 573**
 - TDS **208, 219, 225, 226, 234, 575**
 - \testtemp 2448, 2450–2453, 2456
 - \tet 6395, 6402, 6409
 - \textheight 2411
 - \textit 1402
 - \textsc . . . 374, 1916, 1930, 1932, 1987, 1999, 2135
 - \textsf 371
 - \textsl 374, 584, 671
 - \textsuperscript 1906
 - \texttt 398, 502, 504, 510, 512, 518, 520, 606, 695
 - \textwidth 2409
 - \tf@mtc 8, 235, 340, 967, 977, 981, 1012, 1059, 1090, 1127, 1151, 1188, 1204, 1224, 1671, 1679, 1705, 1706, 1780, 1781, 1792, 1804, 1805, 1842, 1843, 1854, 1866, 1867, 1904, 1905, 2298, 2306, 2320, 2321, 2351, 2352, 2391, 2392, 2403, 2417, 2418, 2452, 2453, 2464, 2478, 2479, 2513, 2514, 4671, 4907
 - thai (language option) **36, 514**
 - thai.ldf (file) **514**
 - thai.mld (file) **223, 514, 555**
 - thai.mlo (file) **223, 514**
 - thaicjk.ldf (file) **514**
 - thailatex (package) **219, 514, 570**
 - THÀNH, Hàn Thê **236, 565**
 - \The@mtc . . . 555, 616, 618, 686, 688, 754, 756
 - \thechapter 1375, 1456, 5193, 5196
 - \themtc 555, 977, 981, 1012, 1087, 1090, 1148, 1151
 - \Thepart 1239, 1360, 1433, 1507
 - \thepctc . 1239, 1679, 1698, 1699, 1702, 1703, 1792, 1797, 1798, 1801, 1802, 1854, 1859, 1860, 1863, 1864
 - \thesection 1455, 1456, 1913
 - \thestc 1966, 2032, 2099, 2156, 2306, 2313, 2314, 2317, 2318, 2339, 2403, 2410, 2411, 2414, 2415, 2464, 2471, 2472, 2475, 2476
 - \thispageminilofstyle 497, 696, 5017
 - \thispageminilotstyle 497, 764, 5017
 - \thispageminitocstyle 497, 626, 5017
 - \thispagepartlofstyle 497, 1447, 5008
 - \thispagepartlotstyle 497, 1522, 5008
 - \thispageparttocstyle 497, 1374, 5008
 - \thispagesectlofstyle 497, 2045, 5026
 - \thispagesectlotstyle 497, 2112, 5026
 - \thispagesecttocstyle 497, 1979, 5026
 - \thispagestyle 497
 - THUREAU, Aurélien **236**
 - tight (option) . . **39, 59, 77, 134, 204, 206, 219, 229, 249, 271, 301, 324, 374, 551, 553**
 - \tightmtcfalse 1, 135, 3512, 5036
 - \tightmtctrue 1, 3511
 - TINNEFELD, Karsten **50, 72, 85, 236**
 - \title 1915
 - titlesec (package) **50, 85, 219**
 - titletoc (package) **50, 85, 163, 219, 384**
 - titletoc.sty (file) **219**
 - 'T LAM, Ton **236**
 - tlc.tex (old example document) . . . **571, 573**
 - tmk (script) **219, 223–226, 234, 575**
 - tocbibind (package) . . **47, 49, 62, 85, 89, 90, 92, 94, 95, 98, 99, 134, 136, 137, 152, 210, 211, 219, 230, 383, 552**
 - tocdepth (depth counter) . **31, 68, 79–81, 199, 220, 269, 274, 277, 367, 546, 557**
 - toch (package) **547**
 - \toclevel@chapter 147

- \toclevel@paragraph 151
 - \toclevel@part 146
 - \toclevel@section 148
 - \toclevel@starchapter 147
 - \toclevel@starparagraph 151
 - \toclevel@startpart 146
 - \toclevel@starsection 148
 - \toclevel@starsubparagraph 152
 - \toclevel@starsubsubsection 149
 - \toclevel@starsubsubsection 150
 - \toclevel@subparagraph 152
 - \toclevel@subsection 149
 - \toclevel@subsubsection 150
 - \toclevel@xchapter 143
 - \toclevel@xpart 142
 - \toclevel@xssect 144
 - \toclevel@xsection 145
 - tocloft (package) . **49, 61, 62, 68, 74, 75, 85, 112,**
113, 125, 152, 210, 211, 220, 384
 - tocloft.pdf (file) 75
 - TODO (file) **220, 223, 224, 226**
 - TOLUIS, Sigitas **236, 486**
 - Tools
 - rubber **58, 217, 559**
 - urlbst **200, 203, 220, 233, 567**
 - xargs **560**
 - \topsep 601, 1348
 - TORDELLA, Laurent **236**
 - TRETTIN, Mark **236**
 - TRUU, Ahto **236**
 - tsfc.tex (old example document) . . **570, 573**
 - \ttfamily 1662, 1665, 1710, 1713
 - turkish (language option) **36, 515**
 - turkish.dtx (file) **515**
 - turkish.mld (file) **223, 515**
 - txfonts (package) **34**
- U**
- u8hangul.mld (file) **566**
 - u8hangul.mlo (file) **566**
 - u8hangul.tex (file) **473**
 - u8hanja.mld (file) **566**
 - u8hanja.mlo (file) **566**
 - u8hanja.tex (file) **474**
 - uighur (language option) **36, 515**
 - uighur.mld (file) **223, 515, 569**
 - uighur2 (language option) **36, 515**
 - uighur2.mld (file) **223, 515, 569**
 - uighur3 (language option) **36, 516**
 - uighur3.mld (file) **223, 516, 569**
 - UKenglish (language option) **36, 516**
 - UKenglish.mld (file) **223, 516, 558**
 - ukraineb (language option) **36, 516**
 - ukraineb.dtx (file) **516**
 - ukraineb.mld (file) **223, 516**
 - ukrainian (language option) **36, 516**
 - ukrainian.mld (file) **223, 516, 565**
 - ULRICH, Stefan **33, 236, 551**
 - UMSTATTER, Horst **236, 499**
 - UN, Koaunghi **203, 236, 473, 474**
 - undotted (option) . . . **44, 59, 77, 229, 374, 551**
 - \undotteddmtcfalse 380, 3518, 5038
 - \undotteddmtctrue 3517
 - \unhcopy 332, 336
 - \unitlength 933, 946, 988, 1014, 1045, 1201,
1207, 1220, 1261, 1285, 1310
 - \unpenalty 339
 - unsrt **49**
 - uppersorbian (language option) . **36, 517, 518**
 - uppersorbian.mld (file) . . **223, 517, 518, 565**
 - \upshape 578,
579, 588, 833, 1263, 1264, 1273, 1276–
1278, 1287, 1659, 1662, 1665, 1707,
1710, 1713, 1933, 1934, 1942, 2219,
2221, 2223, 2226, 2228
 - \url 505, 513, 521
 - urlbst (tool) **200, 203, 220, 233, 567**
 - USenglish (language option) **36, 518**
 - USenglish.mld (file) **223, 518, 558**
 - \usepackage 1, 5–7, 58, 122, 184,
186, 187, 211, 212, 235–237, 239, 289–
294, 325–327, 335, 336, 536, 544, 545,
791, 792, 826–828, 1081–1084, 1338,
1340–1347, 1357, 1358, 1537, 1590–
1593, 1648–1650, 1688–1690, 1737,
1738, 1786, 1787, 1834, 1835, 1898–
1905, 2062–2065, 2067, 2097, 2103,
2104, 2132, 2134, 2206, 2211, 2212,
2268–2272, 2315, 2358, 2359, 2413,
2445–2447, 5054
 - usorbian (language option) **36, 517, 518**
 - usorbian.dtx (file) **517**
 - usorbian.mld (file) **223, 518, 566**
 - UYAR, Turgut **236, 515**
- V**
- VAARIO, Jari **236**
 - \value 118, 4390, 5781, 5784, 5787, 5804, 6012,
6015, 6018, 6035, 6045, 6048, 6051
 - VAN OOSTRUM, Piet **236**
 - VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas **236**
 - V AQUIN, Vincent **236**
 - varioref (package) **132**
 - varesects (package) **50, 69, 85, 162, 220, 232, 245,**
250, 399, 562
 - \vav .6390, 6393, 6395, 6397, 6400, 6402, 6404,
6407, 6409
 - \vbox 2244, 2247, 2249, 2462, 2469

- verbose (option of placeins) **29, 407**
 VERNA, Didier **59, 207, 230, 236, 287**
 verse (environment) . . . **33, 271, 301, 324, 546**
 VESCO, Sylvain **236**
 \vfil 2244, 2247, 2249, 2463, 2468
 \vfill 1403, 1420
 VIAL, Alexandre **236**
 vietnam (package) **41, 518**
 vietnam (language option) **36, 518, 519**
 vietnam.mld (file) **223, 518, 519, 550**
 vietnamese (language option) **36, 519**
 vietnamese.mld (file) **223, 519**
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir **236, 447, 503**
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. **236, 254, 552**
 Voss, Herbert **236**
 \vref 2258, 2259
 \vrule 2454, 2455, 2457
- W**
- WAGNER, Zdeněk **236, 452, 476**
 WARD, Nigel **24, 228, 236, 546**
 \waw 5300, 5304, 5308, 5942, 5946, 5950
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek **236**
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. **236**
 welsh (language option) **36, 519**
 welsh.dtx (file) **519**
 welsh.mld (file) **223, 519**
 WERNER, Eduard **236, 487, 517**
 while.tip (file) **254**
 WILSON, Peter R. **47, 50, 51, 60–62, 67, 69, 72, 85,**
 193, 194, 207, 236, 254
 win-gn.def (file) **470**
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin **236, 498**
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth **236**
 wrapfig (package) **130, 211, 221**
 wrapfigure (environment) **130, 211, 221**
 wrappable (environment) **221**
 WRIGHT, Tim **236**
 \write . . . 125, 128, 264, 340, 1204, 1224, 4681
 WUJASTYK, Dominik **236, 452, 477**
 WYART, Damien **236**
- X**
- xalx (language option) **36, 484, 520, 521**
 \xalx 7273–7275, 7277–7279, 7281–7283,
 7723–7725, 7727–7729, 7731–7733
 xalx.mld (file) **223, 484, 520, 561**
 xalx2 (language option) **36, 520**
 xalx2.mld (file) **223, 520, 568**
 xalx3 (language option) **36, 521**
 xalx3.mld (file) **223, 521, 568**
 xargs (tool) **560**
 xchapter **259**
 \xchapter 818, 1086, 1147, 4907
- xmk (script) **221, 223–226, 571**
 xpart **256**
 \xpart 1239, 1793, 1855, 4907
 xr (package) **26, 221, 287, 547, 562**
 xr-hyper (package) **221**
 xsect **258**
 \xsect 2166, 2405, 2466, 4907
 \xsection 2166
- Y**
- \ya 5941, 5942, 5945, 5946, 5949, 5950
 \yahamza . . . 5299, 5300, 5303, 5304, 5307, 5308
 \yod 6391–6394, 6398–6401, 6405–6408
 YOGANANDA, C.S. **236, 484**
- Z**
- ZAIMI, Adi **236, 436**
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig **236, 456**
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo **236, 510**
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad **236, 484, 485**
 ZENDER, Charlie S. **236**
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. **236, 505–507**
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe **236**
 ŻLAJPAH, Leon **236, 510**